

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses



2015

Effective Date: April 1, 2014

Alabama State Department of Education
Division of Administrative and Financial Services
Pupil Transportation Section
Montgomery, Alabama
334-242-9730

Thomas R. Bice
State Superintendent of Education

Dennis Coe
Division Director
Office of Supporting Programs

Joe Lightsey
Director
Pupil Transportation



INTRODUCTION

Alabama law (32-5-8) requires the Alabama State Board of Education to adopt minimum standards to govern the specifications for all new school buses and the overall operation of all school buses in the state of Alabama. This responsibility also extends to the inspection of school buses being sold and operated in the state of Alabama. The primary reason for the development of specifications and the inspection of school buses is to enhance the safety of Alabama's school buses. Every effort must be made to ensure that Alabama school buses continue to provide the safest transportation available for our most precious cargo—our students.

On behalf of the Alabama State Department of Education (ALSDE), I want to express great appreciation to each member of the Alabama School Bus Specifications Committee for their service, hard work, and commitment to the task. Special thanks are also extended to Specifications Committee Chairperson, Greg Ray and Co-Chair, Jeff Duke. Their many years of experience, leadership, and dedication helped to ensure a successful committee meeting resulted in another set exceptional specifications.

Special thanks must also be expressed to Alabama's school bus dealers, their school bus manufacturers and the many vendors and others in the school bus industry that assisted in the development of these standards. Without their participation, the specifications process would be significantly weakened.

School bus specifications always begin as a product of many individual thoughts and ideas. However, they culminate in standards, which help assure the safest school buses possible as well as vehicles, which provide a true value for Alabama's taxpayers.

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses become effective on April 1, 2014. If you have questions or recommendations regarding any of the specifications in this document, please contact Mr. Jeff Duke at the ALSDE or any member of the specifications committee. Committee members are listed on the following page.

Joe Lightsey, Director
Pupil Transportation
Alabama State Department of Education
Montgomery, Alabama 36130
334-242-9730

Alabama State Department of Education (SDE)
School Bus Specifications Committee
January 1, 2014

Greg Ray, Chairman
gwrays@mcpss.com
Mobile County Schools
3274 International Drive
Mobile, AL 36606
251-221-5260

Joe Lightsey
joel@alsde.edu
State Department of Education
888-307-7830

Chris Bible
cbible@ftpayk12.org
Ft. Payne City Schools
231 38th Street NE
Ft. Payne, AL 35968
256-845-9288

Glenn Brown
rgbrown@bcbe.org
Baldwin County Schools
2600-A Hand Avenue
Bay Minette, AL 36507
251-580-1894

Richard Cash
cashr@bibbed.org
Bibb County Schools
721 Walnut Street
Centreville, AL 35042
205-926-9611

Keith Clark
khclark@morgank12.org
Morgan County Schools
1325 Point Mallard Parkway SE
Decatur, AL 35601
256-353-6442

David Gibson
dgibson@pcboe.net
Phenix City Schools
P. O. Box 460
Phenix City, AL 36867
334-298-2823

Don Ingram, ASTA President
dingram@auburnschools.org
Auburn City Schools
P. O. Box 3270
Auburn, AL 36831-3270
334-887-4915

Lee Lindsay
lindsay.lee@lee.k12.al.us
Lee County Schools
614 Magazine Avenue
Opelika, AL 36801
334-745-4351

Bobby Martin
blmartin@chilton.k12.al.us
Chilton County Schools
1705 Lay Dam Road
Clanton, AL 35045
205-280-2950

Leslie Mathison
Mathison.leslie@aidb.state.al.us
AIDB
P.O. Box 698
Talladega, AL 35160
256-761-3443

Turner Oliver
olivert@pcboe.org
Pickens County Schools
P. O. Box 32
Carrollton, AL 35447
205-367-8244

Fay Parker
fay.parker@lcschools.org
Lauderdale County Schools
P. O. Box 278
Florence, AL 35631
256-760-1338

Brian Stovall
brian.stovall@lcsk12.org
Limestone County Schools
300 South Jefferson Street
Athens, AL 35611
256-232-5130

Tony Morris
morristrn@yahoo.com
Pell City Schools
1000 Bruce Etheredge Parkway
Pell City, AL 35128-3213
205-884-4800

Jerome Cook
cook8500@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education
251-581-0236

Jeff Duke
papajd@charter.net
State Department of Education
256-264-3726

Obie Fuller
obeyonly1@yahoo.com
State Department of Education
334-321-1620

Jerry Harper
jharper@alsde.edu
State Department of Education
205-354-9075

Brad Holley
bholley@alsde.edu
State Department of Education
334-444-7616

Jerry Lassiter
jlassiter@alsde.edu
State Department of Education
888-393-0510

Jeff Snider
jeffsnider2010@yahoo.com
State Department of Education
205-259-0099

Cathy Staggs
ctstaggs@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education
205-410-1721

Joe Beams
joebeams@aol.com
State Department of Education
256-260-5242

Jerry Davidson
lindacd50@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education
205-601-0513

Ray Jones
dLjo55@charter.net
State Department of Education
706-586-1050

ALABAMA
SCHOOL BUS INSPECTION
HANDBOOK



PREPARED BY
ALABAMA STATE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
DIVISION OF ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL SERVICES
TRANSPORTATION SECTION
MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA

The **Alabama School Bus Inspection Handbook** was developed by the Alabama State Department of Education (ALSDE) Pupil Transportation Section as a standard for school bus safety inspections at the local school system level. This handbook is provided as a guideline for local school system school bus inspectors, shop foremen, technicians, maintenance supervisors, and transportation directors in conducting the monthly inspections required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

The goal of this handbook is to provide uniform standards for state and local school bus inspections. The manual also identifies the critical items to be inspected on Alabama school buses, how they are to be inspected, and which items should remove a school bus from service until the item is repaired (“out of service” items).

Copies of the handbook have been distributed to all local school systems. Additional copies of the document are available from the ALSDE, Pupil Transportation Section at 334-242-9730 or on the ALSDE website at www.alsde.edu under Department Offices/Division of Policy and Budget/Office of Supporting Programs/Pupil Transportation/ Publications.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<u>SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS</u>	1
<u>SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS</u>	3
Air Cleaner.....	3
Axles.....	3
Brakes.....	3
Bumper (Front).....	5
Certification.....	5
Color.....	5
Directional Lights.....	6
Drive Shaft.....	6
Electrical System.....	6
Engine.....	7
Exhaust System.....	8
Fenders, Hoods.....	8
Frame.....	9
Fuel Tank.....	9
Governor.....	10
Heating System, Provision for.....	10
Horn.....	10
Instruments & Instrument Panel.....	10
Oil Filter.....	11
Openings.....	11
Passenger Load.....	11
Retarder System (Optional).....	11
Road Speed Control	11
Shock Absorbers.....	12
Springs/Suspension Systems	12
Steering Gear.....	12
Tires and Rims.....	12
Transmission.....	13
Turning Radius.....	13
Undercoating.....	13
Weight Distribution.....	13

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

PAGE

Air Conditioning.....	14
Aisle.....	14
Back-up Warning Alarm.....	14
Battery/Batteries.....	15
Bumper (Front).....	15
Bumper (Rear).....	15
Ceiling.....	15
Certification.....	15
Chains (Tire).....	15
Color.....	16
Communication Systems	16
Construction.....	16
Crossing Control Arm.....	17
Defrosters.....	18
Doors.....	18
Emergency Exits.....	19
Emergency Equipment.....	20
Fire Extinguishers.....	20
First-Aid Kit.....	21
Body Fluid Clean-up Kit.....	21
Warning Devices.....	21
Fire Suppression	21
Floor and Floor Coverings.....	21
Handrail(s)	22
Heaters.....	22
Hinges	23
Identification.....	23
Inside Height.....	25
Insulation.....	25
Interior.....	25
Lamps and Signals.....	25
Metal Treatment.....	27
Mirrors.....	28
Mounting.....	28

<u>SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS (Continued)</u>	PAGE
Noise Suppression Switch.....	29
Overall Length.....	29
Overall Width.....	29
Public Address System	29
Retro reflective Material.....	29
Rub Rails.....	29
Seat Belt for Driver.....	30
Seat and Crash Barriers.....	31
Steering Wheel (See Chassis Standards).....	32
Steps.....	32
Step Treads.....	32
Stirrup Step.....	33
Stop Arm Signal.....	33
Stop Arm Signal-Rear (Optional)	33
Storage Compartment.....	33
Sun Shield.....	33
Tailpipe.....	33
Traction-Assisting Devices.....	34
Trash Container and Holding Device.....	34
Undercoating.....	34
Ventilation.....	35
Video Surveillance Equipment.....	35
Wheel Housing.....	35
Windshield and Windows.....	36
Windshield Washers.....	36
Windshield Wipers.....	36
Wiring.....	37

SECTION IV - SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction.....	39
Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus	39
General Requirements.....	39
Air Conditioning.....	40
Aisles.....	40

Communication System	40
Crash Barriers	40
Evacuation Blanket.....	40
Glazing.....	41
Identification	41
Passenger Capacity Rating.....	41
Power Lift.....	41
Ramp.....	44
Regular Service Entrance.....	44
Restraining Devices.....	45
Seating Arrangements.....	45
Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant.....	45
Special Light.....	49
Special Service Entrance.....	49
Support Equipment and Accessories.....	50
Technology and Equipment New.....	51
<u>SECTION V - ALTERNATE FUEL SOURCE STANDARDS</u>	52
<u>SECTION VI - OPTIONS</u>	52
Locking Fuel Compartment Door	52
Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment.....	52
<u>SECTION VII – MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS</u>	53
Definition	53
Identification	53
Color	53
Seating	53
Lighting and Warning Devices.....	53
Inspections	54
Regulations	54
<u>DISPOSAL OF USED SCHOOL BUSES</u>	55
<u>SECTION VIII – QUICK REFERENCE CHART</u>	56

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS FOR SCHOOL BUSES
EFFECTIVE April 1, 2014

SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Standards

1. All school buses ordered by local education agencies beginning **April 1, 2014**, shall (1) meet the applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS), and (2) meet Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of an applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard, as referred to in this section, and the Alabama minimum specifications, the requirements of the FMVSS shall control. **School buses not meeting minimum specifications will not be certified by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE). Under unusual circumstances and with adequate justification, exceptions to these specifications may be granted by the SDE Director of Pupil Transportation.**

Certification

2. All school buses shall display a **durable, legible** certification data plate mounted in the driver's compartment of the vehicle. On this data plate, the manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and the local education agency that the school bus meets or exceeds all standards as specified herein, is in compliance with the applicable FMVSS, and is manufactured from all new components. All chassis and body information shall appear on this certification data plate. The bus body data plate shall specify the maximum design capacity of the body. The maximum design capacity of any bus body size shall be the number of passengers the bus can transport before special needs modifications.

Used School Buses

3. Used school buses purchased for use by a school system in Alabama shall meet all of the legal Federal and Alabama requirements for school buses that were in effect on the date the vehicle was manufactured. It is recommended that school systems contact the SDE Pupil Transportation Office prior to the purchase of any used school bus.

Bid Requirements

4. In order to be in compliance with the State Bid Law, school bus purchases shall be by competitive bidding. Bid forms to the body manufacturer shall contain certain options required by the chassis manufacturer, which may result in changes in normal Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or alterations to the body. For special needs buses, the school system shall provide the dealers with detailed information regarding desired floor plan. The school bus body manufacturer shall submit floor plans which include dimensions at the time bid quotations are submitted showing:
 1. Location of the emergency door, emergency windows and roof hatches.
 2. Aisle and staging areas and seat spacing.

3. Track locations and/or wheelchair securement positions.
 4. Location of air conditioning evaporator(s) **for all buses** ordered with air conditioning.
 5. Extended warranties may not be included in initial bus bid and cannot be used to determine low bidder.
5. **Service Manual/Diagnostic Equipment**
Body and/or chassis suppliers, including integral (forward control) suppliers, shall provide each school district purchasing school buses with one complete set of the most current service manuals, as specified by the school system, available to include both body and chassis at no additional cost upon delivery of bus. Provisions for manuals and diagnostic equipment, including, but not limited to code books, software, and training, etc., shall be agreed upon during the pre-bid process. Diagnostic equipment shall not be included as a part of the bus bid and cannot be used to determine low bidder.
6. **New Technology**
New technology not in the present specifications shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.
7. **School Bus Definitions**
School bus capacity is determined based on body size before modifications are made.
- TYPE A:** A Type A school bus is a conversion or body constructed upon a van-type or cutaway front-section vehicle with a left side driver's door designed for carrying more than 10 persons. This definition shall include two classifications: Type A-I with a GVWR of 10,000 or under; and Type A-II, with a GVWR over 10,000 pounds. All Type A buses shall have dual rear wheels. **Type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.**
Type A buses exceeding a GVWR of 14,500 pounds shall have air brakes.
- TYPE B:** A Type B school bus is a conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section vehicle chassis, or stripped chassis, with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels. All Type B buses 14,500 pounds or under shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
- TYPE C:** A Type C school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The entire engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.
Type C buses may not exceed 72-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C1 A Type C1 school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and a maximum of 19,000 pounds and designed for carrying a maximum of 36 persons. This is a special category of a Type C school bus designed to be an alternate to a Type A1, Type A2. **This bus shall not exceed a maximum capacity of 36 persons.**

TYPE D: A Type D school bus is a body installed upon a chassis, with the engine mounted in the front, midship, or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or midship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels. **Type D buses may not exceed 84-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.**

SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS

Air Cleaner

1. The engine intake air cleaner shall be furnished and properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

The intake air system for diesel engines shall have an air cleaner restriction indicator properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

Axles

1. The front and rear axles and suspension systems shall have a gross axle weight rating (GAWR) at ground commensurate with the respective front and rear weight loads of the bus loaded to the rated passenger capacity.
2. Vehicle minimum axle capacities at ground when loaded shall meet the body manufacturer's GVWR specified by the FMVSS. Axle assemblies shall have minimum capacities at ground as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
3. Front wheel bearings must be oil filled on all Type C and D buses.

Brakes

1. A braking system, including service brake and parking brake, shall be provided and shall comply with all CDL pre-trip inspection requirements. All Type A-1 and A-II school buses below 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications. Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
2. Buses using air in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals located within the interior of the driver compartment and clearly audible and visible to the driver, that will give a continuous warning when the air pressure available

in the system for braking is 60 psi (pounds per square inch) or less. An air pressure gauge shall be provided in the instrument panel capable of complying with CDL pre-trip inspection requirements.

3. Antilock brake systems for either air or hydraulic brakes shall include control of all axles in compliance with FMVSS 105 or 121.
 - A. Air brakes shall be installed on **all** chassis exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR. As an option, air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses. **Exception:** Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

All air-operated brake systems shall:

- (1) Meet all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for air brakes.
 - (2) Be S-cam or four-wheel-disc-type brakes. Air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses with approval from the SDE. If S-cam-type, the camshaft, when applying brakes, shall rotate in the same direction as the wheels. Automatic slack adjusters shall be the same design on all wheels. Dust covers shall be installed on all wheels unless deleted through local option at the time of the bid.
 - (3) Have at least a 12 CFM air compressor.
 - (4) Be equipped with a parking and emergency brake. A manual control, clearly identified, shall be within easy reach of the driver. The parking brake valve shall comply with CDL pre-trip inspection requirements.
 - (5) Have brake lining sizes as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet(S-cam air brakes)
 - (6) Have a reservoir capacity, which is equal to or greater than two (2) times total volume of all brake activators at full travel.
 - (7) Be equipped with air dryers with a heated automatic drain valve (Bendix AD-9 or AD/IP) or prior approved equal. Air dryers shall be serviceable at the local level.
- B. Buses using a hydraulic assist-booster in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals, readily audible and visible to the driver, that will provide continuous warning in the event of a loss of fluid flow from the primary source, or loss of electric source powering the back-up system.

- (1) The system shall be equipped with a source of hydraulic pressure, automatically initiated upon loss of power from primary source, and operating independently of the primary power source.
- (2) All brake systems shall be designed to permit visual inspection of brake lining wear without the removal of any chassis components.

Bumper, Front

1. The front bumper shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer for all school bus types, unless there is specific agreement between the chassis manufacturer and the body manufacturer. When Type D chassis are supplied to a body company by a chassis manufacturer, the body company shall supply the front bumper as part of the body installation.
2. The front bumper shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material at least 3/16 inch thick, not less than 8 inches wide (high) and shall extend beyond forward-most part of the body, grille, hood, and fenders and shall extend to the outer edges of the fenders at the bumper's top line. Bumpers on Type A buses may be built to manufacturers' specifications.
3. Tow eyes or hooks shall be furnished and attached so as not to project beyond the front bumper. Tow eyes or hooks, attached to the frame chassis, shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer. This installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's standards. Type A buses are exempt from tow hook requirements.
4. The bumper shall be designed or reinforced so that it will not deform, when the bus is lifted by a chain that is passed under the bumper (or through the bumper if holes are provided for this purpose) and attached to both tow eyes. For the purpose of meeting this standard, the bus shall be empty and positioned on a level, hard surface, and both tow eyes shall share the load equally. The front bumper shall not be deformed when lifted by a bumper jack positioned on the bumper attachment points.

Certification

The chassis manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Color

1. The chassis, including the front bumper, shall be black. The hood, cowl and fenders shall be in national school bus yellow. The hood may be painted with non-reflective paint.
2. Wheel rims shall be painted black, gray, or yellow on all buses.
3. Multifunctional School Activity Buses shall be exempt from these requirements. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Directional Lights

1. Each Type C chassis may be equipped with Type A front directional lights of the two-faced type mounted on the top of the fender and the hood side panel, or have an amber turn signal and marker light that is an integral part of the headlight assembly. This turn signal/marker light shall be seen from the front and the side of the vehicle.

Drive Shaft

1. Torque capacity of the drive shaft assembly shall at least equal maximum engine torque as developed through lowest transmission gear reduction.
2. Each drive shaft shall be equipped with protective metal guard or guards to reduce the possibility of it whipping through the floor or dropping to the ground if broken. (The body manufacturer is responsible for Mini Buses.)

Electrical System

1. Battery
 - A. Storage batteries shall have a minimum total of 1,500 cold cranking amps at 0 degrees Fahrenheit. Type A buses shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
 - B. Since all batteries in Type C and D buses are to be located in a sliding tray, the battery shall be temporarily mounted on the chassis frame by the chassis manufacturer.

In these cases, the final location of the battery and the appropriate cable lengths shall be according to the current SBMTC Design Objectives.

- C. All school buses shall have a battery-disconnect device installed. On Type C and D school buses, the disconnect switch shall be located in the battery compartment. The location of the disconnect switch on Type A school buses shall be agreed upon by the local school system and the bus supplier.
2. Alternator
 - A. All Type A and B buses up to 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall have a minimum 130 amperes alternator.
 - B. All C and D buses over 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall be equipped with a heavy-duty truck or bus-type alternator capable of producing a minimum output rating of 200 amperes. The alternator shall be capable of producing a minimum of 50 percent of its maximum rated output at the engine manufacturer's recommended idle speed.
 - C. All C and D buses equipped with an air conditioner or electrical power lift shall have a minimum 270 amperes alternator.
 - D. A direct-drive alternator is permissible in lieu of a belt drive. A belt drive shall be capable of handling the rated capacity of the alternator with no detrimental effect on other driven components.

- E. Refer to SBMTC Design Objectives, most current edition, for estimating required alternator capacity.
3. Wiring
- A. All wiring shall conform to current applicable recommended practices of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
 - (1) All wiring shall use standard colors and number coding and each chassis shall be delivered with a wiring diagram that coincides with the wiring of the chassis. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet or loom.
 - B. The chassis manufacturer shall install a readily accessible terminal strip or plug on the body side of the cowl, or at an accessible location in the engine compartment of vehicles designed without a cowl, that shall contain the following terminals for the body connections:
 - (1) Main 100-amp body circuits
 - (2) Tail lamps
 - (3) Right turn signal
 - (4) Left turn signal
 - (5) Stop lamps
 - (6) Back-up lamps
 - (7) Instrument panel lights (rheostat controlled)
 - C. Daytime running lamps shall be provided.
4. Circuits
- A. An appropriate identifying diagram (color and number coded) for electrical circuits shall be provided to the body manufacturer for distribution to the end user.

Engine Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

See Fire Suppression System page 21.

Engine Information

- 1. Buses shall be equipped with diesel engines with minimum horsepower requirements as follows:

Type A buses under 29 passenger – manufacturer’s specifications

Type C or D buses –210 hp minimum

Type D buses 78 passengers and above – 230 hp minimum

An engine heater may be installed as per the manufacturer's specifications.

Alternative-fuel engine information can be found on page 51, under Alternative Fuel Standards.

The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.

Exhaust System

1. The exhaust pipe, muffler/ after treatment device, and tail pipe shall be outside the bus body and securely attached to the bus frame. The chassis manufacturer shall furnish an exhaust system with a tail pipe of sufficient length to exit the rear of the bus or at the left side of the bus body no more than 18 inches forward of the front edge of the rear wheelhouse opening. If designed to exit on the side of the bus, the tailpipe shall extend to the skirt line with a turndown angle of approximately 45 degrees. With the exception of special needs buses, Type A vehicles may have the manufacturers standard exhaust system. The bus shall not automatically begin to regenerate the diesel particulate filter while the bus is not moving. The switch to regenerate the diesel particulate filter shall be readily accessible to the technician, but not accessible to the driver
2. The muffler and the tail pipe shall be constructed of aluminized, or equivalent corrosion resistant material. The tailpipe shall be made of at least 16 gauge material and shall be mounted in such a way that it will not cause damage to brake lines
3. The muffler/ after treatment device, and exhaust pipe shall be properly insulated from the fuel tank, lines, and connections by a protective shield at any point where it is 4 inches or less from the fuel tank, lines or connections.
4. The tailpipe on all special needs vehicles shall be routed to the left of the left frame rail to allow for the installation of a lift on the right side of the vehicle.
5. No exhaust pipe shall exit beneath an emergency exit or the fuel fill.
6. On all Type C and D buses, the tailpipe shall exit at the bottom edge of the rear bumper or through the rear bumper. If the tailpipe exits through the rear bumper, sufficient clamps or brackets must be provided to eliminate rattles. If the tailpipe exits beneath the rear bumper, it shall be turned down approximately 45 degrees and positioned in such a way that it cannot be crushed beneath the rear bumper.

The opening in the tailpipe shall direct all exhaust gases clear of the perimeter of the bus body. Manufacturers must make reasonable efforts to ensure that exhaust gases will not produce burns on students or other individuals present.

Fenders, Hoods

1. The total spread of outer edges of front fenders, measured at the fender line, shall exceed the total spread of the front tires when the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
2. Front fenders shall be properly braced and free from any body attachments.
3. A fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite tilt hood shall be provided. The hood opening and closing effort shall be minimized to aid the driver with pre-trip inspections and service. If the hood is not designed to remain secure in the open position, a safety

prop will be required. The wiring harness shall be a “quick disconnect” type to aid with servicing.

Frame

1. The frame or equivalent shall be of such design and strength characteristics as to correspond at least to standard practice for trucks of the same general load characteristics, which are used for highway service.
2. Any secondary manufacturer that modifies the original chassis frame shall guarantee the performance of workmanship and materials resulting from such modification.
3. Any frame modification shall not be for the purpose of extending the wheelbase.
4. Holes in top or bottom flanges or side units of the frame, and welding to the frame, shall not be permitted except as provided or accepted by the chassis manufacturer.
5. Frame lengths shall be provided in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.

Fuel Tank

1. All Type C and D chassis above a 170-inch wheelbase shall have a minimum 60-gallon fuel tank with a 55-gallon actual draw. The tank shall be filled and vented to the outside of the body, the location of which shall be so that accidental fuel spillage will not drip or drain on any part of the exhaust system. **Type C-1 school buses are exempt from this tank size requirement.**
2. No portion of the fuel system, which is located to the rear of the engine compartment, except the filler tube, shall extend above the top of the chassis frame rail. Fuel lines shall be mounted to obtain maximum possible protection from the chassis frame.
3. Fuel filters shall be installed as per manufacturer's specifications. Fuel filtration shall include water detection and separation. At least one fuel filter shall have a replaceable spin-on or cartridge-type element.
4. Fuel tank installation shall be in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives for location on the chassis right frame rail or between frame rails; the filler tube shall be located on the right side of the bus.
5. Type A buses may meet manufacturer's specifications.
6. The fuel tank on vehicles constructed with a power lift unit may be mounted on the left chassis rail or behind the rear wheels.
7. Installation of alternative fuel tanks shall comply with all applicable fire codes.
8. The fuel tank on buses equipped with diesel engines shall have interior baffles to help prevent fuel starvation on inclines.

Governor

1. An engine governor is permissible. When it is desired to limit road speed, a road speed governor should be installed.
2. An electronic engine speed limiter shall be provided and set to limit engine speed not to exceed the maximum revolutions per minute as recommended by the engine manufacturer. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Heating System, Provision for

1. The chassis engine shall have plugged openings for the purpose of supplying hot water for the bus heating system. The opening shall be suitable for attaching a pipe thread/hose connector. The engine shall be capable of supplying water having a temperature of at least 170 degrees Fahrenheit at a flow rate of 50 pounds/per minute at the return end of 30 feet of one inch inside diameter automotive hot water heater hose (SBMI Standard No. 001--Standard Code for Testing and Rating Automotive Bus Hot Water Heating and Ventilating Equipment).

Horn

Buses shall be equipped with a horn or horns of standard make with each horn capable of producing a complex sound in bands of audio frequencies between 250 and 2,000 cycles per second and tested per the Society of Automotive Engineers Standard J--377. There shall be no air horns.

Instruments and Instrument Panel

1. Chassis shall be equipped with the following instruments and gauges (lights in lieu of gauges are not acceptable except as noted):
 - A. Speedometer
 - B. Odometer (shall show accrued mileage to six digits not including tenths)
 - C. Tachometer
 - D. Voltmeter
 - (1) An ammeter with graduated charge and discharge and its wiring compatible with generating capacities is permitted in lieu of a voltmeter.
 - E. Oil-pressure gauge
 - F. Water temperature gauge
 - G. Fuel gauge
 - H. Upper beam headlight indicator
 - I. Air brake indicator gauge

- (1) A light indicator in lieu of a gauge is permitted on vehicles equipped with a hydraulic-over-hydraulic brake system.
 - J. Turn signal indicator
 - K. Glow-plug indicator light where appropriate
 - L. A twelve-volt accessory outlet with cover
2. All instruments shall be easily accessible for maintenance and repair.
 3. Instruments and gauges shall be mounted on the instrument panel in such a manner that each is clearly visible to the driver while in a normal seated position in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.
 4. The instrument panel shall have lamps of sufficient candlepower to illuminate all instruments and gauges and the shift selector indicator for an automatic transmission.

Oil Filter

An oil filter with replaceable element shall be provided and connected by flexible oil lines if it is not of built-in or engine-mounted design. The oil filters shall have a capacity of at least one (1) quart.

Openings

All openings in the floorboard or firewall between the chassis and the passenger-carrying compartment, such as for gearshift selector and parking brake lever, shall be sealed.

Passenger Load

1. Actual GVW is the sum of the chassis weight, plus the body weight, plus the driver's weight, plus total seated pupil weight. For purposes of calculation, the driver's weight is 150 pounds. For purposes of calculation, the pupil weight is 120 pounds per pupil.
2. Actual GVW shall not exceed the chassis manufacturer's GVWR for the chassis, nor shall the actual weight carried on any axle exceed the chassis manufacturer's Gross Axle Weight Rating. (GAWR)

Retarder System (Optional)

A retarder system, if used, shall limit the speed of the fully loaded school bus at 19.0 mph or 30 km/hr on a 7% grade for 3.6 miles or 6 km.

Road Speed Control

When it is necessary to control vehicle maximum speed, a vehicle speed limiter shall be utilized. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Shock Absorbers

Buses shall be equipped with front and rear double-action shock absorbers compatible with the manufacturer's rated axle capacity at each wheel location.

Springs/Suspension Systems

1. The capacity of the springs or suspension assemblies shall be commensurate with the chassis manufacturer's GVWR.
2. Front springs shall be of the leaf type, shall have a stationary eye at one end, and shall be protected by a wrapper leaf in addition to the main leaf. Rear leaf springs shall be of the progressive type.
3. Air ride suspension may be used on the front and rear of Type C and D buses in lieu of leaf-type springs. Body and chassis parts must clear tires with air bags in fully deflated condition or steering wheel turned fully to the left or right. If brake dust covers are used, inspection holes of adequate size and location for easily viewing brake linings shall be provided.

Steering Gear

1. The steering gear shall be approved by the chassis manufacturer and designed to assure safe and accurate performance when the vehicle is operated with maximum load and at maximum speed.
2. If external adjustments are required, the steering mechanism must be accessible to accomplish the same.
3. No changes shall be made in the steering apparatus, which are not approved by the chassis manufacturer.
4. There shall be a clearance of at least two inches between the steering wheel and the cowl, instrument panel, windshield, or any other surface.
5. Power steering is required and shall be of the integral type with integral valves.
6. The steering system shall be designed to provide a means for lubrication of all wear-points, if wear-points are not permanently lubricated.
7. The steering wheel shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Tires and Rims

1. Radial tubeless tires, rims of proper size and tires with a load rating commensurate with chassis manufacturer's GVWR shall be provided. Hubcaps are not permitted.
2. Dual rear tires shall be provided on all school buses.
3. All tires on any given vehicle shall be of the same size and the load range of said tires shall meet or exceed the gross axle weight rating as required by FMVSS 120.

Low profile tires are acceptable. However, they must meet the load range and ply requirements as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet. It is recommended that dish-type rims be used with low profile tires.

4. If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire and rim assembly, it shall be of the same size as those mounted on the vehicle.
5. If a tire carrier is required, it shall be suitably mounted in an accessible location outside the passenger compartment.

Transmission

An automatic transmission shall be required on all buses. Type A buses may be built to manufacturer's specifications. Types C, and D buses must have a PTS 2000 series.

Allowable transmissions will include Allison 2000 series, Allison 3000 series, and Ford 6R140 automatic transmissions. The automatic transmission shall have at least four forward-gear ratios, plus an integral torque converter. The transmission shift quadrant shall provide at least four forward drive ranges plus neutral and reverse ranges. Within the range selected, ratio changes shall be effected automatically and at full engine power if desirable, and without use of an engine disconnect clutch. A PTS3000 or prior approved equal is required for chassis over 33,000 pounds GVWR.

Type C-1 school buses may use Allison PTS 1000 or PTS 2200 automatic transmission or prior approved equal.

Turning Radius

1. A chassis with a wheelbase of 264 inches or less shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 42 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.
2. A chassis with a wheelbase of 265 inches or more shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 44 and 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.

Undercoating

The chassis manufacturer, or agent thereof, shall coat the undersides of steel or metallic-constructed front fenders with a rust-proofing compound for which compound manufacturers have issued notarized certification of compliance to the chassis builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C520B using modified tests.

Weight Distribution

The weight distribution of a fully loaded bus on a level surface shall be such as not to exceed the manufacturer's front gross axle rating and rear gross axle weight rating.

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

Air Conditioning

All special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. Other buses **may** be equipped with an air conditioning unit at the discretion of the local school system.

Type A school buses may be built to manufacturers standards to include dash mounted evaporator and air duct systems. All Type C and D buses are required to have bulkhead mounted **rear** air conditioner evaporator systems. Front mounted evaporator units on Type C and D buses may include bulkhead-mounted or dash-mounted evaporator units. All other evaporator units shall be side-mounted so as not to interfere with the entrance or exit or any wheelchair position. Evaporator placement shall be agreed upon by the school system and the school bus manufacturer. Low profile, roof-mount condenser units may be installed upon agreement between the manufacturer and the local school system.

All buses ordered with air conditioning shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. All flooring shall be 5/8-inch exterior-grade plywood over steel flooring.
2. All passenger windows shall be tinted with 28% light transmission.
3. All buses shall meet insulation standards as per Alabama bus specifications.
4. Mud flaps shall be installed *behind both the front and rear axles on all buses equipped with skirt-mounted air conditioning.*
5. All buses/engines shall be equipped with an automatic high-idle feature.
6. All air conditioning components must be rated to meet minimum BTU specifications shown below.

Minimum BTU air conditioning system per passenger size (per shell size):

10-30-passenger - 60,000 BTU includes a minimum of one, 13 cubic inch displacement compressor
31-48-passenger - 96,000 BTU includes a minimum of two, 10 cubic inch displacement compressors
49-84-passenger - 120,000 BTU includes a minimum of two, 13 cubic inch displacement compressors

7. Skirt-mounted condenser units shall be designed so as to draw sufficient fresh air from outside the skirt area and shall have a shroud installed to protect the condenser unit from road dirt and debris. Condensers must have *continuous* ducting or shrouding from the condenser to the grating at the body side to ensure that condensers do not recirculate the hot air leaving the condenser.

Aisle

All emergency doors shall be accessible by a 12-inch minimum aisle. The aisle shall be unobstructed at all times.

Back-Up Warning Alarm

An automatic, audible alarm with a minimum of 87dbA and maximum of 112dbA shall be installed behind the rear axle and shall comply with the Society of Automotive Engineers published Back-up Alarm Standards (SAE 994). The alarm shall have a protective deflector shield.

Battery/Batteries

1. Batteries are to be furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
2. Batteries are to be mounted as described in the Chassis Standard, the body manufacturer shall securely attach the battery on a slide-out or swing-out tray in a closed, vented compartment in the body skirt, so that the battery is accessible for convenient servicing from the outside. The battery compartment door or cover shall be hinged at the front and secured by an adequate and conveniently-operated latch or other type fastener.

Bumper (Front)

On a Type D school bus, if the chassis manufacturer does not provide a bumper, it shall be provided by the body manufacturer. The bumper will conform to the standards in the chassis section.

Bumper (Rear)

1. Bumpers shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material, at least 3/16-inch thick, and shall be a minimum of 9-1/2 inches wide (high) on all Types C, and D buses. Type A buses shall have a minimum of an 8-inch rear bumper.
2. Bumpers shall be wrapped around the back corners of the bus. It shall extend forward at least 12 inches, measured from the rear-most point of the body at the floor line.
3. Bumpers shall be attached to the chassis frame in such a manner that it may be easily removed. It shall be so braced as to withstand impact from a rear or side impact. It shall be so attached as to discourage hitching of rides.
4. Bumpers shall extend at least one inch beyond the rear-most part of the body surface measured at the floor line.
5. Tow eyes or hooks may be furnished on the rear and attached so they do not project beyond the rear bumper. The installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's specifications.
6. The bottom of the rear bumper shall not be more than 30 inches above ground level.

Ceiling

See Insulation and Interior, Body Standard.

Certification

The body manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and the local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Chains (Tire)

See Wheel Housing Body Standard.

Color

1. The school bus body shall be painted National School Bus Yellow.
2. The body exterior paint trim, bumper, lamp hoods and lettering shall be black.
3. The roof of the bus must be painted white not to extend below the drip rails on the sides of the body.
4. Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) shall be exempt from this requirement. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Communication Systems

Each bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Construction

1. Construction shall be of prime commercial quality steel or other material with strength at least equivalent to all-steel as certified by the bus body manufacturer. All such construction materials shall be fire resistant. No exterior structural, fiberglass roof or side panels are allowed. All Type C and D school buses shall meet the requirements of Section A below.

A. Side Intrusion Test: The bus body shall be constructed to withstand an intrusion force equal to the curb weight of the vehicle or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less. Each vehicle shall be capable of meeting this requirement when tested in accordance with the procedures set forth below. The complete body structure, or a representative seven-body section mock up with seats installed, shall be load-tested at a location 24 ± 2 inches above the floor line, with a maximum 10 inch diameter cylinder, 48 inches long, mounted in a horizontal plane.

The cylinder shall be placed as close as practical to the mid-point of the tested structure, spanning two internal vertical structural members. The cylinder shall be statically loaded to the required force of curb weight or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less, in a horizontal plane with the load applied from the exterior toward the interior of the test structure. When the minimum load has been applied, the penetration of the loading cylinder into the passenger compartment shall not exceed 10 inches from its original point of contact. There can be no separation of lapped panels or construction joints. Punctures, tears or breaks in the external panels are acceptable but are not permitted on any adjacent interior panel. Body companies shall certify compliance with this intrusion requirement to the Alabama State Department of Education and include test results, as requested.

2. Construction shall be dust proof and watertight, so the bus does not leak under normal operating conditions.
3. Body joints present in that portion of a Type A school bus body furnished exclusively by the body manufacturer shall conform to the performance requirements of FMVSS 221, "School Bus Body Joint Strength." This does not include the body joints created when body components are attached to components furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
4. Type A school bus bodies shall be equipped with restraining barriers conforming to FMVSS 222, "School Bus Passenger Seating--Crash Protection," Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

Crossing Control Arm

1. Buses shall be equipped with a crossing control arm mounted on the right side of the front bumper, which shall not open more than 90 degrees.
2. All components of the crossing control arm and all connections shall be weatherproofed.
3. The crossing control arm shall incorporate system connectors (electrical or air) at the gate and shall be easily removable to allow for towing of the bus.
4. The crossing control arm shall meet or exceed SAE Standard J1133.
5. The crossing control arm shall be constructed of non-corrosive or nonferrous material or treated in accordance with the body sheet metal standard (see Metal Treatment).
6. There shall be no sharp edges or projections that could cause hazard or injury to students.
7. The crossing control arm shall extend at least 70" from the front bumper when in the extended position.
8. The crossing control arms shall extend simultaneously with the stop arm(s) by means of the stop arm controls. An automatic recycling interrupt switch shall be installed to allow the driver to deactivate the control arm when necessary.
9. An electromagnetic device or a stowed bracket shall be installed to stabilize the arm when in the stored position.
10. The crossing control arm shall be Specialty Manufacturing Company, Part #58600, Transpec 4000 series, or prior approved equal.

Defrosters

1. The windshield defroster and defogging system shall provide defogging of the entire windshield, driver's side window, and entrance door glasses by utilizing hot air taken from the heater core with vents across the entire windshield.
2. The defrosting system shall conform to Society of Automotive Engineers' Standards J381.
3. The defroster and defogging system shall be capable of furnishing heated outside ambient air.
4. Auxiliary fans are not considered defrosting or defogging systems.
5. Portable heaters shall not be used.

Doors

1. Service Door:
 - A. The service door shall be in the driver's control, designed to afford easy release and provide a positive latching device on manual operating doors to prevent accidental opening. When a hand lever is used, no part shall come together that will shear or crush fingers. Manual door controls shall not require more than 25 pounds of force to operate at any point throughout the range of operation.
 - B. The service door shall be located on the right side of the bus, opposite and within direct view of the driver.
 - C. The service door shall have a minimum horizontal opening of 24 inches and a minimum vertical opening of 68 inches.
 - D. The service door shall be a split type, both sections opening outward.
 - E. Lower and upper door panels shall be of approved safety glass. The bottom of each lower glass panel shall not be more than 10 inches from the top surface of the bottom step. The top of each upper glass panel shall not be more than 6 inches from the top of the door.
 - F. Vertical closing edges on split type entrance doors shall be equipped with flexible material to protect students' fingers.
 - G. There shall be no door to the left in driver compartment on Types C or D vehicles.
 - H. All doors shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. The pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

- I. If air or electric doors are used, the amber warning lights shall be activated from a momentary switch. A three-position switch shall activate the sequence as follows:
 - Position One – door closed; lights off.
 - Position Two – activate red lights, stop arm, and crossing control arm.
 - Position Three – red lights activated, door open, stop arm activated, and crossing control arm activated.

Emergency Exits

1. Emergency Door:

- A. The emergency door shall be hinged on the right side if in the rear end of bus and on the front side if on left or right side of the bus. It shall open outward and be labeled inside to indicate how it is to be opened. If double emergency doors are used on Type A vehicles, they shall be hinged on the outside edge and shall have a three-point fastening device. A device shall be used that holds the door open to prevent the emergency door from closing during emergencies and school bus evacuation drills. If emergency door locks are used, the vehicle ignition must be disabled until the emergency door lock is deactivated.
- B. The upper portion of the emergency door shall be equipped with approved safety glazing, the exposed area of which shall be at least 400 square inches. The lower portion of the rear emergency door on Types C and D vehicles shall be equipped with a minimum of 350 square inches of approved safety glazing.
- C. There shall be no steps leading to an emergency door.
- D. The words **EMERGENCY DOOR** in letters at least two inches high shall be placed at the top of or directly above the emergency door or on the door in the metal panel above the top glass, both inside and outside of the bus. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT** in letters at least 2 inches high shall be placed on the exterior body directly above each emergency window.
- E. The emergency door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Padding shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick, and extend the full width of the door opening.
- F. The side emergency door, if installed, must meet the requirements as set forth in FMVSS 217 (a), regardless of its use with any other combination of emergency exits.
 - (1) A left side emergency door shall have a 20 inch unobstructed passageway, and no flip seat is to be used. A barrier shall be used just before the door opening.
- G. There shall be no obstruction higher than 1/4 inch across the bottom of any emergency door opening.

2. Additional Emergency Exits:

- A. All school buses shall be equipped with emergency exits in the following capacity vehicles:
 - 0 to 54 passenger: one emergency window exit per side and one roof hatch located midpoint.
 - 55 passenger and above: two emergency window exits per side, and two roof hatches.
- B. Each emergency exit shall comply with FMVSS 217. These emergency exits are in addition to the rear emergency door or exit. Roof hatches must be Transpec Standard Vent, Model 1970, Specialty Manufacturing 8600, 8900, or 9000 series or prior approved equal.
 - (1) Emergency exit windows shall be as evenly spaced as possible under FMVSS 217 guidelines and shall not be obstructed by any devices.
- C. In addition to the audible warning required on emergency doors by FMVSS 217, additional emergency exits shall also be like protected. Warnings for these exits shall be clearly audible to the bus driver.
- D. School bus emergency exits shall be marked with a minimum one inch wide strip of red, white, or yellow retroreflective tape, to be placed around the outside perimeter of the emergency exit opening, not the emergency exit itself. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed on the body directly above each emergency window.

Emergency Equipment

All emergency equipment shall be installed forward of the front barriers with the exception of the warning devices.

1. Fire Extinguishers:

- A. The bus shall be equipped with at least one steel-cased, pressurized, dry chemical fire extinguisher complete with hose to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., approval. A pressure gauge shall be mounted on the extinguisher and easily read without moving the extinguisher from its mounted position. Replacement fire extinguishers should also meet this specification.

The bracket shall be a heavy-duty, snap-in, spring type. Band type holders are not acceptable. Fire extinguisher brackets shall be Brooks Equipment Company # 4SC or Ridgeway Bus Products # 51-05 or prior approved equal.

- B. The fire extinguisher shall have a capacity of **five pounds** with an Underwriters Laboratories total rating of 2A10BC or greater. The operating mechanism shall be sealed with a type of seal that will not interfere with the use of the fire extinguisher.

- C. Fire extinguishers must comply with State Fire Codes.
2. First-Aid Kit:
 - A. Each bus shall have a removable, moisture-proof and dust-proof first-aid kit stored in a metal container and mounted with a separate bracket in an accessible place in the driver's compartment. This place shall be marked to indicate its location. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable.
 - B. Contents shall include:
 - 2 1" x 2 1/2 yards adhesive tape rolls
 - 24 sterile gauze pads 3" x 3"
 - 100 3/4" x 3" adhesive bandages
 - 8 2" bandage compress
 - 10 3" bandage compress
 - 2 2" x 6" sterile gauze roller bandages
 - 2 non-sterile triangular bandages approximately 40" x 36" x 54" with
 - 2 safety pins
 - 3 sterile gauze pads 36" x 36"
 - 3 sterile eye pads
 - 1 pair rounded-end scissors
 - 1 pair latex gloves
 - 1 mouth-to-mouth airway
 3. Body Fluid Clean-up Kit:
 - A. Each bus shall have a removable and moisture-proof body fluid clean-up kit stored in a metal container. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable. It shall be properly mounted and identified as a body fluid clean-up kit and must meet OSHA regulations.
 4. Warning Devices:
 - A. Each bus shall contain at least three (3) reflectorized triangle road warning devices mounted in an accessible place in the driver's compartment or the outside storage compartment. The mounting location in Type A vehicles is optional. These devices must meet requirements in FMVSS 125.

Fire Suppression (Optional)

When a fire suppression system is used, nozzles for suppression systems shall be located in the engine compartment, under the bus, in the electrical panel, or under the dash, but shall not be located in the passenger compartment. The system must include a light or buzzer to alert the driver that the system has been activated.

Floor and Floor Coverings

1. The floor in the underseat area, including the tops of the wheel housing, driver's compartment and toe board, shall be covered with a rubber floor covering or equivalent, having a minimum overall thickness of 1/8 inch and a calculated burn rate of 0.1 or less

using the test measures, procedure and formulas in FMVSS 302 Flammability of Interior Materials.

2. The floor covering in the aisle shall be of aisle-type rubber or equivalent, wear resistant, and ribbed. The minimum overall thickness shall be 3/16 inch measured from the tops of the ribs.
3. The floor covering must be permanently bonded to the floor and must not crack when subjected to sudden changes in temperature. Bonding or adhesive material shall be waterproof and shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the floor-covering material. All seams must be sealed with waterproof sealer.
4. For Type C and D school buses, the manufacturer shall provide a screw-down plate to access the fuel tank sending unit that is secured and insulated. The plate shall be mounted so that access is readily available to repair personnel and so that the floor covering is not disturbed during the repair process.
5. The floor shall be of metal or alloy at least equal in strength to 14-gauge prime commercial quality steel and so constructed that exhaust gases cannot enter the passenger compartment.
6. All closures between the bus body and the engine compartment shall be fitted with gas-tight gaskets and pedal openings shall be closed bellows type, gas-tight boots.
7. There shall be a plate of adequate size provided to allow for transmission access or service.

Handrail(s)

At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test. A right-hand side assist rail may be provided at the discretion of the local school system.

Heaters

1. The heating system shall be capable of maintaining the temperature throughout the bus of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit during average minimum January temperatures as established by the U. S. Department of Commerce, Weather Bureau, for the area in which the vehicle is to be operated. It shall be capable of defrosting the total windshield area and the service door glass within thirty minutes after initial start with the engine at idle speed. The system shall exceed SAE standards J-381 and J-382 performance requirements. **Fuel-fired auxiliary heaters will not be allowed.**

Heater performance shall be measured by the following:

A temperature measurement shall be taken at three locations within the body in the center aisle, thirty-six inches above the floor. The first location is to be thirty-nine inches from

the windshield; the second location midpoint of the passenger compartment and the third will be thirty-nine inches from the rear emergency door.

After soaking the bus at twenty degrees F. for fifteen (15) hours, the bus will be started and after thirty (30) minutes, the temperature at each measuring point shall be fifty-five (55) degrees F.

2. If only one heater is used, it shall be a fresh-air or combination fresh-air and recirculation type.
3. If more than one heater is used, additional heaters shall be a recirculating-air type.
4. All heaters installed by body manufacturers shall bear a name plate affixed by the heater manufacturer that shall indicate the heater rating in accordance with SBMI Standard No. 001. The heater manufacturer shall constitute certification that the heater performance is as shown on the plate.
5. Heater hoses shall be adequately supported to guard against excessive wear due to vibration. The hoses shall not dangle or rub against the chassis or sharp edges and shall not interfere with or restrict the operation of any engine function. Heater hoses shall conform to the Society of Automotive Engineers' Standard J20c. Heater lines on the interior of the bus shall be shielded to prevent scalding of the driver or passengers.
6. Each hot water system installed by a body manufacturer shall include one shut-off valve in the pressure line and one shut-off valve in the return line with both valves at or near the engine in an accessible location.
7. There shall be a water flow-regulating valve, or an electronic valve actuator, installed in the pressure line for convenient operation by the driver while seated.
8. Accessible bleeder valves shall be installed in an appropriate place in the return lines of the body company-installed heaters to remove air from the heater lines.
9. Access panels shall be provided to make heater motors, cores, and fans readily accessible for service. An outside access panel may be provided for the driver's heater.

Hinges

All exterior metal door hinges which do not have stainless steel, brass, or nonmetallic hinge pins or other designs that prevent corrosion shall be designed to allow lubrication to be channeled to the center 75% of each hinge loop without disassembly.

Identification

1. School bus bodies shall bear the words **SCHOOL BUS** in eight-inch black letters on National School Bus Yellow, on the front and back of the bus (lettering between flasher lights). (See page 51 for Multifunctional School Activity Bus identification)

requirements.) The name of the school system shall be on each side of the bus in at least 5-inch, black standard, unshaded letters. Lettering shall conform to “Series B” of Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs. Each bus shall be numbered on both sides, front left side and the rear, before being put into service. Bumper numbers may be white or yellow. An agreement between the manufacturer and the purchaser shall be reached at the time the order is placed as to who will put the numbers on the buses. Any other numbering shall be optional.

2. Only signs and lettering approved by state law or regulation, limited to the name of the owner or operator and any marking necessary for identification, shall appear on the bus.
3. School bus bodies shall display a high quality 6” x 9” warning sticker on permanent, adhesive, vinyl, bumper-sticker material. To increase visibility, this sticker shall be mounted just under the first or second rub rail at the left side of the passenger entrance door. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

***NO TRESPASSING ON THIS SCHOOL BUS
OFFENDERS WILL BE PROSECUTED TO THE FULLEST EXTENT OF THE LAW
PUNISHMENT COULD RESULT IN A FINE OF UP TO \$6000 AND UP TO ONE YEAR IN JAIL
Charles “Chuck” Poland, Jr. Act (Alabama Act 2013-347)***

6. Driver Alert Transpec Model 7500 or prior approved equal electronic signage warning traffic when the school bus stops to load or unload students and at railway grade crossings is required.
7. A high quality, 4” x 6”, permanent, adhesive, vinyl, warning sticker prompting drivers that driver seat belt use is mandatory on all school buses shall be affixed in the driver compartment in a highly visible location. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

DRIVER SEAT BELT USE REQUIRED

Driver seat belt use is required at all times when driving this vehicle. Failure to do so could result in disciplinary action up to and including suspension or revocation of your Alabama School Bus Driver Certificate or termination.
Alabama Code Section 16-27-6.

8. A “NO TRESPASSING” decal shall be placed in the entrance doorstep well in a highly visible location. Lettering shall be a minimum of 2” high and shall be a contrasting color. These decals must be provided by the school bus dealer or manufacturer.

NO TRESPASSING

Outside “No Trespassing” decals and “Driver Seat Belt Use” Decals are provided by the Alabama State Department of Education.

Inside Height

The inside body height shall be 72 inches or more, measured metal to metal, at any point on the longitudinal center line from the front vertical bow to the rear vertical bow. The inside body height of Type A buses shall be 62 inches or more.

Insulation

1. Ceilings and walls shall be insulated with proper material to deaden sound and reduce vibration to a minimum. If thermal insulation is specified, it shall be fire-resistant and approved by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. If buses are equipped with air conditioning, walls and ceilings must be insulated to improve air conditioner efficiency.
2. If floor insulation is required, it shall be either 5-ply nominal 19/32 inches thick plywood, or a material of equal or greater strength and insulation R value, and it shall equal or exceed properties of exterior-type softwood plywood, C-D Grade as specified in standards issued by U. S. Department of Commerce. When plywood is used, all exposed edges shall be sealed.

Interior

1. The interior of the bus shall be free of all unnecessary projections, which includes luggage racks and attendant handrails, likely to cause injury. This standard requires inner lining on ceilings and walls. If the ceiling is constructed to contain lapped joints, the forward panel shall be lapped by the rear panel and exposed edges shall be beaded, hemmed, flanged, or otherwise treated to minimize sharp edges.
2. The driver's area forward of the foremost padded barriers will permit the mounting of required safety equipment and vehicle operation equipment.
3. Every school bus shall be constructed so that the noise level taken at the ear of the occupant nearest to the primary vehicle noise source shall not exceed 85 dbA when tested.
4. Any added equipment shall be flush mounted with the exception of the video system.

Lamps and Signals

1. Interior lamps shall be provided which adequately illuminate the aisle and the step well. Step well lights shall be illuminated by a service door operated switch, to illuminate only when headlights and clearance lights are on and the service door is opened. An optional driver dome light with a separate switch may be installed at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Clearance lamps shall automatically illuminate when the headlights are in the "on" position.
3. L.E.D. lighting shall be used in all exterior body lamps and signals. Eight-way flashing lights and the stop arm shall be strobe-type L.E.D. Manufacturers' front chassis lamps are exempt from this requirement.

4. Definition--School bus alternately flashing red and amber signal lamps are lamps mounted at the same horizontal level, intended to identify the vehicle as a school bus and to inform other users of the highway that such vehicle is preparing to stop, or is stopped, on the roadway to take on or to discharge schoolchildren.
 - A. Master switches will not be allowed on the eight-way, alternately flashing signal lamps.
 - B. Buses shall be equipped with two red lamps and two amber lamps at the rear of the vehicle and two red lamps and two amber lamps at the front of the vehicle. One amber lamp shall be located near each red signal lamp at the same level, but closer to the vertical centerline of the bus.
 - C. The signaling system, including red and amber signal lamps and a stop arm with alternating flashing lamps, shall be so designed and wired as to have the following characteristics:
 - (1) When the entrance door is closed, a manual push button may be depressed and the amber pilot light and amber warning lights will flash.
 - (2) When the entrance door is opened, the amber pilot and amber warning lights will go off, and the red pilot and red warning lights will flash; also, the stop arm will be extended and lights on the stop arm will flash.
 - (3) On closing the entrance door, all lights will go out and the stop arm will retract automatically.
 - (4) If the entrance door is opened without depressing the manual push button, no lights will flash, nor will the stop arm be extended.
 - D. The area around the lenses of alternately flashing signal lamps shall have a readily visible black border for contrast purposes. Hoods/guards may be provided over front and rear amber warning lights and red warning lights.
5. The bus body shall be equipped with amber rear turn signal lamps at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area. These signal lamps must be connected to the chassis hazard-warning switch to cause simultaneous flashing of signal lamps when needed as a vehicular traffic hazard warning.
6. Rear directional lights shall be mounted not more than 15 inches from the plane of the side of the body, and not more than 14 inches below the glass in the rear of the body. All buses shall have side turn indicators on both sides located within six inches of the floor line.

7. Buses shall be equipped with two red brake/tail combination lights at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area and shall be mounted on the rear of the bus just inside the turn signal lamps.
 - A. Type A conversion vehicle lamps must be 21 square inches in the lens area. Two combination lamps with a minimum diameter of four inches, or if a shape other than round, a minimum 12 square inches of illuminated area, shall be placed on the rear of the body between the beltline and the floor line. The rear license plate lamp may be combined with one lower tail lamp. Stop lamps shall be activated by the service brakes and shall emit a steady light when illuminated.
 - B. In addition to these requirements, all lamps and signals shall comply with applicable SAE specifications.
8. On all buses equipped with a monitor for the front and rear lamps of the school bus, the monitor shall be mounted in full view of the driver. If the full circuit current passes through the monitor, each circuit shall be protected by a fuse or circuit breakers or other equivalent technology against any short circuit or intermittent shorts.
9. A white flashing strobe light shall be installed on the roof of a school bus not to exceed 1/3 the body length forward from the rear of the roof edge. This light shall have a single white lens emitting light 360 degrees around its vertical axis and may not extend above the roof more than the maximum legal height. A momentary, latching-type switch and a pilot light of low intensity must be included to indicate when the light is in operation. The pilot light shall be incorporated into the switch.
10. If alternating headlights are used (i.e., wig-wag), they must operate in conjunction with the red overhead flashers and stop arm.
11. As an option, other lighting devices may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Metal Treatment

1. All metal used in construction of a bus body shall be zinc-coated or aluminum-coated or treated by an equivalent process before the bus is constructed. Included are such items as structural members, inside and outside panels, door panels and floor sills. Excluded are such items as door handles, grab handles, interior decorative parts and other interior plated parts.
2. In addition to the above requirements, all metal parts that will be painted shall be chemically cleaned, etched, zinc-phosphate-coated and zinc-chrome or epoxy primed or conditioned by equivalent process.
3. In providing for these requirements, particular attention shall be given to lapped surfaces, welded connections of structural members, cut edges punched or drilled hole areas in sheet metal, closed or box sections, unvented or undrained areas and surfaces subjected to abrasion during vehicle operation.

4. As evidence that the above requirements have been met, samples of materials and sections used in construction of the bus body, when subjected to 1,000-hour salt spray test as provided for in latest revision of ASTM Standard B-117 “Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing” shall not lose more than 10 percent of its material by weight.

Mirrors

1. Interior mirrors shall be either clear laminated glass or clear view glass bonded to a backing which retains the glass in the event of breakage. Mirrors shall have rounded corners and protected edges. Type A buses shall have a minimum of a 6” x 16” mirror and Type C and D buses shall have a minimum of a 6” x 30” mirror. It shall be securely attached on the windshield header and so located as to give the driver a clear view of the entire interior of the bus and the road behind.
2. Each school bus shall be equipped with a system of exterior mirrors as defined in FMVSS 111.
 - A. Rear vision mirrors shall be capable of providing a view along the left and right sides of the vehicle which will provide the driver with a view of the rear tires at ground level, a minimum distance of 200 feet to the rear of the bus and at least 12 feet perpendicular to the side of the bus at a distance of 32 feet back from the front bumper.
 - B. The cross view mirror system shall provide the driver with indirect vision of an area at ground level from the front bumper forward and the entire width of the bus to a point where the driver can see by direct vision. The cross view system shall also provide the driver with direct vision of the area at ground level around the left and right front corners of the bus to include the tires and service entrance on all types of buses to a point where it overlaps with the rear vision mirror system. A metal reinforcement plate shall be installed under the hood area of fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite hoods in order to reinforce cross view mirror mounting base area.
 - C. This system of mirrors shall be easily adjustable but be rigidly braced to reduce vibration.
3. Heated and/or remote controlled external, rearview mirrors may be used.

Mounting

1. The chassis frames shall support the rear body cross member. The bus body shall be attached to the chassis frame at each main floor sill, except where chassis components interfere, in such a manner as to prevent shifting or separation of the body from the chassis under severe operating conditions.
2. Insulation material shall be placed at all contact points between the body and chassis frame on Types A, C and D buses, and shall be so attached to the chassis frame or body that it will not move under severe operating conditions.

Noise Suppression Switch

There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. This switch or switch background shall be red or yellow and labeled. This switch shall be an on/off-type (not momentary) that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the AM/FM radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. For Type A buses, all radios or communication devices shall be ordered as a body accessory and must be wired thru the noise suppression switch.

Overall Length

The overall length of the bus shall not exceed 45 feet excluding accessories.

Overall Width

The overall width of the bus shall not exceed 102 inches excluding accessories.

Public Address System

Buses may be equipped with a public address system having interior and exterior speakers. Interior speakers shall be flush mounted with the bulkhead. No internal speakers other than the driver's communication systems may be installed within four feet of the driver's seat back in its rearmost, upright position.

Retroreflective Material

1. The front and/or rear bumper may be marked diagonally 45 degrees down to the centerline of the pavement with 2" x 1/4" wide strips of non-contrasting retroreflective material.
2. The rear of the bus body shall be marked with strips of retroreflective National School Bus Yellow (NSBY) material to outline the perimeter of the back of the bus using material which conforms to the requirements of FMVSS 571.131 (Table I). The perimeter marking of rear emergency exits per FMVSS 217 and/or the use of retroreflective SCHOOL BUS signs partially accomplish the objective of this requirement. To complete the perimeter marking of the back of the bus, strips of at least one-inch retroreflective NSBY material shall be applied horizontally above the rear windows and above the rear bumper, extending from the rear emergency exit perimeter marking outward to the left and rear corners of the bus. Vertical strips shall be applied at the corners connecting these horizontal strips.
3. **SCHOOL BUS** signs, if not of a lighted design, shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material comprising a background for lettering of the front and/or rear **SCHOOL BUS** signs.
4. The sides of the bus body shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material at least one inch in width, extending the length of the bus body and located (vertically) between the floor line and the belt line.

Rub Rails

1. There shall be one rub rail located on each side of the bus approximately at seat level which shall extend from the rear side of the entrance door completely around the bus

body (except the emergency door or any maintenance access door) to a point of curvature near the outside cowl on the left side.

2. There shall be one additional rub rail located approximately at the floor line which shall cover the same longitudinal area as the upper rub rail, except at the wheel housing, and shall extend only to the radii of the right and left rear corners.
3. Rub rails above the floor line shall be attached at each body post and all other upright structural members.
4. Each rub rail shall be 4 inches or more in width in their finished form, shall be of 16-gauge metal or other suitable material of equivalent strength, suitable to protect the body side panels from damage. Rub rails shall be constructed in a corrugated or ribbed fashion.
5. Rub rails shall be applied to the outside of the body or outside body posts. Pressed-in or snap-on rub rails do not satisfy this requirement. For Type A1 vehicles using a chassis manufacturer's body, or for Types A2, C, and D buses using rear luggage or rear engine compartments, rub rails need not extend around rear corners.
6. The bottom edge of the body side skirts shall be stiffened by application of a rub rail, or the edge may be stiffened by providing a flange or other stiffeners.

Seat Belt for Driver

1. The driver's seat shall be equipped with the seat belt anchored to the floor, housed in a scabbard and equipped with an emergency locking retractor (one side only). The driver's seat shall be equipped with a Type II occupant protection (lap and shoulder belt). Adjustability of the mounting point for the driver's seat belt pillar loop shall be provided to accommodate all heights and weights of bus drivers without interference with the driver's face or neck. The requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210 shall be met. Integrated seat belts in the driver's seat may be used at the discretion of the local school system.
2. All buses must be equipped with at least one belt cutter. Buses equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts for student seating shall contain at least two belt cutters. One belt cutter must be properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into the driver's seat. Belts cutters shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
3. **The driver's seat belt shall be high visibility orange or lime green in color on all buses except Type A. All Type C and D buses must be equipped with a continuous audible and visual warning signal activated when the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the ignition is in the on position. The warning signal shall be different from low air or emergency exit buzzer. Type A buses must be equipped with warning buzzers as per manufacturer's standard.**

Seats and Crash Barriers

All Type A1 buses, 14,500 pounds GVWR and under shall be equipped with lap/shoulder belts and must meet FMVSS 209 requirements.

1. Seats shall be spaced to obtain a minimum of 24-inch hip-to-knee room measured horizontally at the seat cushion level at the transverse centerline of the seat. In making this measurement from the back of the seat cushion to the back of the seat or barrier in front, upholstery may be placed against padding both forward and rear but padding may not be compressed. Greater seat spacing may be specified on local bids not to exceed the maximum allowable per FMVSS 222.
2. In determining seating capacity of standard school buses, the allowable average rump width shall be 13 inches where a 3-3 seating plan is used, and 13 or 15 inches where 3-2 seating plan is used on specially-equipped buses.
3. All seats shall be bench style, forward facing, have a minimum depth of 15 inches and conform to the seatback height requirements of FMVSS 222. No transit or activity seat shall be used. There shall be no armrest on student seats. No bus shall be equipped with jump seats or portable seats.
4. All seat frames attached to the seat rail shall be fastened with two (2) bolts, washers and nuts or flange-headed nuts. Each seat leg shall be secured to the floor by a minimum of two (2) bolts, washers and nuts. Flange-head nuts may be used in lieu of nuts and washers, or seats may be track-mounted in conformance with FMVSS 222. If track seating is installed, the manufacturer shall supply minimum and maximum seat spacing dimensions applicable to the bus, which comply with FMVSS 222. This information shall be on a label permanently affixed to the bus.
5. The forward most pupil seat on the right side of the bus shall be located so as not to interfere with the driver's vision, not farther forward than the barrier behind the driver or the rear of the driver's seat when adjusted to its rear-most position.
6. All seats and backs shall be a standard color unless changed by purchaser. Seat and back cushions of all seats shall be designed to safely support the designated number of passengers under normal road conditions encountered in school-bus service. All seat coverings shall meet FMVSS regulations and School Bus Manufacturer Technical Council Guidelines.
7. The driver seat shall be of the high back, air **or** mechanical suspension, box pedestal-type with a minimum seat back adjustment of 15 degrees and with a head restraint to accommodate a 95 percentile adult male (95 percentile adult male as defined in FMVSS 208). The driver's seat shall be secured with nuts, bolts, and washers or flanged-headed nuts. The driver's seat shall have a minimum distance between the steering wheel and seatback of not less than eleven inches, with a minimum aft adjustment of six inches. The seat shall be contoured with adequate padding and support on the sides and shall

have a cloth cover. It shall be designed to provide lumbar support and shall be positioned on the centerline of the steering wheel.

8. All restraining barriers and passenger seats shall be constructed with materials that, at a minimum, meet the criteria contained in the School Bus Seat Upholstery Fire Resistant Test.
9. A driver storage pouch shall be provided on the front of the barrier behind the driver's seat. This pouch shall be fire resistant and the same color as the bus seats.
10. Crash barriers shall be placed behind the driver's seat and step well. An aluminized courtesy panel on the right side of the bus shall extend to the floor and to the wall. Stanchions are not acceptable.
11. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-age Students in School Buses. *Convertible passenger seating meeting FMVSS 225 requirements may be used in Type C and D buses.*

Steering Wheel

See Chassis Standard.

Steps

1. The first step at the service door shall be no less than 10 inches and no more than 14 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step. Ground clearance shall be no less than 10 inches.
 - A. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by the thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

Step Treads

1. All steps, excluding the floor line platform area, shall be covered with a 3/16-inch pebble-tread-type, rubber floor covering or other materials equal in wear and abrasion resistance to top grade rubber.
2. The backing of the step tread may be a minimum 24-gauge cold roll steel or polymer and shall be permanently bonded to the rubber surface.
3. The step tread shall have a 1 and 1/2 inch white nosing as an integral piece without any joint.

4. The rubber portion of step treads shall have the following characteristics:
 - A. Special compounding for good abrasion resistance and high coefficient of friction.
 - B. Flexibility so that it can be bent around a 1/2 inch mandrel both at 130 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 degrees Fahrenheit without breaking, cracking, or crazing.
 - C. Show a durometer hardness of 85 to 95.

Stirrup Step

There shall be one stirrup step on all Types C and D buses on each side of the front of the body for use in cleaning the windshield and lamps. There shall be one handle on each side, at least eight inches in length, suitably located for the driver to use while cleaning the windshield and lamps. The stirrup steps and the handles shall be of rust-resistant material. Transit buses shall have provisions for cleaning the windshield. Toe eyes in the bumper with a handle(s) above the windshield are acceptable.

Stop Arm Signal

All stop arm signals shall be of the *LED*, strobe-type, and have high-intensity, retroreflective coating. The stop signal arm(s) shall comply with the requirements of FMVSS 131.

Stop Arm Signal - Rear (Optional)

A rear stop arm is permissible when used in conjunction with the original stop arm. The rear stop arm location on dual stop arm-equipped buses shall be on the left side of the bus, as close as is practical to the left rear corner of the body. Airlines, if used, must not be readily accessible to students inside or outside of the bus.

Storage Compartment

A lockable, waterproof, exterior storage compartment may be located on the bus body at the discretion of the local school system. The minimum size of the storage compartment shall be 12 inches high, 15 inches deep, and 25 inches wide and shall be marked "storage". Alternate storage compartment locations should be specified in local school system bid specifications.

All lockable interior storage compartments containing emergency equipment shall be equipped with a warning buzzer installed so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked. All such compartments shall be clearly labeled as to containing emergency equipment.

Sun Shield

Each Type C and D school bus shall have an interior adjustable sun visor with minimum measurements of 6 inches by 30 inches. It shall be installed in a position convenient for use by the driver, anchored on both ends, and shall be tinted transparent plastic or phlex-o-glass. On all Type A buses, the sun shield shall be the manufacturer's standard. An additional sun shield may be added over the left side driver window at the option of the local school system.

Tailpipe

See Chassis Standard.

Traction-Assisting Devices

1. Where required or used, sanders shall:
 - A. Be of the hopper cartridge-valve type.
 - B. Have a metal hopper with all interior surfaces treated to prevent condensation of moisture.
 - C. Be of at least 100-pound (grit) capacity.
 - D. Have a cover on the filler opening of the hopper, which screws into place, sealing the unit airtight.
 - E. Have discharge tubes extending to the front of each rear wheel under the fender.
 - F. Have no-clogging discharge tubes with slush-proof, non-freezing rubber nozzles.
 - G. Be operated by an electric switch with a telltale pilot light mounted on the instrument panel.
 - H. Be exclusively driver controlled.
 - I. Have a gauge to indicate the hopper needs refilling when it is down to one quarter full.
2. Automatic traction chains may be installed.

Trash Container and Holding Device

1. Where required or used, the trash container shall:
 - A. Be of fire resistant polyethylene or equivalent material.
 - B. Be no greater than 14-quart capacity.
 - C. Be secured by a holding device that is designed to prevent movement and allow easy removal and replacement.
 - D. Be installed in an accessible location in the driver's compartment, not obstructing passenger use of the service door or access to emergency equipment.

Undercoating

1. The entire underside of the bus body, including floor sections, the cross member and below floor line side panels, shall be coated with rust-proofing the compound for which the compound manufacturer has issued notarized certification of compliance to the bus body builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C-250b using modified test procedures for the following requirements*:
 - A. Salt spray resistance-pass modified to 5% salt and 1000 hours.

B. Abrasion resistance-pass.

C. Fire resistance-pass.

*Test panels are to be prepared in accordance with paragraph 4.6.12 of TT-C-520b with the modified procedure requiring that the test be made on a 48-hour air-cured film at a thickness recommended by the compound manufacturer.

2. The undercoating compound shall be applied with suitable airless or conventional spray equipment to recommend film thickness and shall show no evidence of voids in cured film.

Ventilation

1. Auxiliary fans, if installed, shall meet the following requirements:
 - A. Fans for left and right sides shall be placed in a location where they can be adjusted for maximum effectiveness and do not obstruct vision to any mirror. **NOTE:** All Type A buses may be equipped with one fan.
 - B. Fans shall be a nominal 6" diameter.
 - C. Fan blades shall be covered with a protective cage. Each fan shall be controlled by a separate switch.
2. The body shall be equipped with a suitably controlled ventilating system of sufficient capacity to maintain the proper quantity of air under operating conditions, without having to open windows except in extremely warm weather.
3. A static-type, non-closeable exhaust ventilator shall be installed in the roof.

Video Surveillance Equipment

1. Video equipment shall be installed on all school buses *and must meet the most current minimum specifications in effect at the time of installation.* All video equipment shall be digital with a minimum of four camera positions *on Type C and D school buses and a minimum of three camera positions on Type A school buses.* One camera position must show the driver compartment, to include the entrance door area. *All camera systems must be installed by the school bus dealer, the school bus dealer's authorized representative or the camera vendor.*
2. While video equipment does not have to be flush mounted, positioning of video surveillance equipment shall not interfere with the safe operation of the bus or student safety. It is recommended that the SDE be contacted prior to the installation of new video equipment.

Wheel Housing

1. The wheel housing opening shall allow for easy tire removal and service.

2. The wheel housing shall be attached to the floor sheets in such a manner as to prevent any dust, water or fumes from entering the body. The wheel housing shall be constructed of at least 16-gauge steel or other material of equal tensile strength.
3. The inside height of the wheel housing above the floor line shall not exceed 12 inches.
4. The wheel housing shall provide clearance for installation and use of tire chains on single and dual (if so equipped) power-driving wheels.
5. No part of a raised wheel housing shall extend into the emergency door opening.

Windshield and Windows

1. All glass in the windshield, the windows, and doors shall be of approved safety glass so mounted that a permanent mark is visible and of sufficient quality as to prevent distortion of view in any direction.
2. The windshield shall be heat absorbent, laminated plate glass. The windshield shall be large enough to permit the driver to see the roadway clearly, shall be slanted to reduce glare, and shall be installed between the front corner posts that are so designed and placed as to afford minimum obstruction to the driver's view of the roadway.
3. All full side windows shall open vertically so as to provide an unobstructed opening of not less than 9 inches high and 22 inches wide, obtained by lowering the window. Windows shall be a split-sash type and so installed as to provide an emergency exit. There shall be no horizontal, transit or activity-style windows in the student compartment.
4. All exposed edges of glass shall meet FMVSS requirements.
5. A tinted and shaded windshield with 73% light transmitted and a six-inch shaded band across the top shall be installed at the factory. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-piece windshield may be equipped with an O.E.M. shade band windshield with a band of approximately 4 inches in height.
6. All windows in the passenger compartment shall be tinted with 28% light transmitted. The driver's compartment side window and entrance door windows shall be tinted with 70- 75% light transmitted.

Windshield Washers

A windshield washer system shall be provided that will service the entire wiped surface area.

Windshield Wipers

1. A windshield wiping system, two speed or variable speed, with an intermittent feature shall be provided. The wipers shall meet the requirements of FMVSS 104.
2. The wipers shall be operated by one or more air or electric motors of sufficient power to operate the wipers. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-

piece windshield may be equipped with two wipers driven by either one or two electric motors.

Wiring

1. All wiring shall conform to current standards of the Society of Automotive Engineers.

2. Circuits

A. Wiring shall be arranged in circuits as required with each circuit protected by a circuit breaker or electronic protection device. A system of color and number coding shall be used and an appropriate identifying diagram shall be provided to the end user along with the wiring diagram provided by the chassis manufacturer. **A system of color and number coding shall be used on buses. The following body interconnecting circuits shall be color-coded as noted:**

<u>Function</u>	<u>Color</u>
Left Rear Directional Light	Yellow
Right Rear Directional Light	Dark Green
Stoplights	Red
Back-up Lights	Blue
Taillights	Brown
Ground	White
Ignition Feed, Primary Feed	Black

The color of cables shall correspond to SAE J1128.

B. Wiring shall be arranged in at least six regular circuits as follows:

- (1) Head, tail, stop (brake) and instrument panel lamps.
- (2) Clearance and step well lamps. The step well lamp shall be actuated when the service door is opened.
- (3) Dome lamp.
- (4) Ignition and emergency exits signal.
- (5) Turn signal lamps.
- (6) Alternately flashing signal lamps.

C. Any of the above combination circuits may be subdivided into additional independent circuits.

D. Each heater and defroster shall have its own circuit breakers or other equivalent technology.

- E. Whenever possible, all other electrical functions (such as sanders and electric-type windshield wipers) shall be provided with independent and properly protected circuits.
 - F. Each body circuit shall be coded by number or letter on a diagram of circuits and shall be attached to the body in a readily accessible location.
 - G. There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. The switch shall be labeled and alternately colored. This switch shall be an on/off-type that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the AM/FM radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. The noise suppression switch on Type AI buses shall be limited to bus body accessories.
3. The entire electrical system of the body shall be designed for the same voltage as the chassis on which the body is mounted.
 4. All wiring shall have an amperage capacity equal to or exceeding the designed load. All wiring splices are to be done at an accessible location and noted as splices on the wiring diagram.
 5. A body-wiring diagram of easily readable size shall be furnished with each bus body or affixed in an area convenient to the electrical accessory control panel.
 6. The body power wire shall be attached to a special terminal on the chassis.
 7. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet.
 8. Wires and tubing shall be enclosed within body panels.

SECTION IV –SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction

Equipping buses to accommodate students with special needs is discretionary depending upon the needs of the passengers. While one bus may be fitted with a lift, another may have seat belts installed to secure child seats. Buses so equipped are not to be considered a separate class of school bus, but simply a regular school bus, which is equipped for special accommodations.

The specifications in this section are intended to be supplementary to specifications in the chassis and body sections. In general, specially equipped buses shall meet all the requirements of the preceding sections plus those listed in this section. It is recognized by the entire industry that the field of special transportation is characterized by varied needs for individual cases and by a rapidly emerging technology for meeting those needs. A flexible, “common sense” approach to the adoption and enforcement of specifications for these vehicles, therefore, is prudent.

By federal regulation, buses, including school buses, are defined as vehicles designed to carry eleven or more passengers, including the driver. Vehicles designed with 10 or fewer passenger positions (including the driver) cannot be certified as buses. For this reason, the federal vehicle classification Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle, or MPV, must be used by manufacturers for these vehicles in lieu of the School Bus. In determining passenger capacity, wheelchair positions are counted as passenger positions. This classification system, while requiring compliance with a less stringent set of Federal Standards for MPV’s, does not preclude state or local agencies or these specifications from requiring compliance of school bus-type MPV’s with the more stringent Federal Standards for school buses.

The following standards address modifications as they pertain to school buses that, with a standard seating arrangement prior to modification, would accommodate more than 10 persons. If by addition of a power lift, mobile seating device positions or other modifications, the capacity is reduced such that vehicles become MPV’s, the intent of these standards is to have these vehicles be required to meet the same standards they would have had to meet prior to such modifications, and such MPV’s are included in all references to school buses and requirements for school buses which follow.

Definition – Specially-Equipped School Bus

A specially-equipped school bus is any school bus that is primarily designed, equipped, or modified to accommodate students with special needs.

General Requirements

1. School buses designed for transporting students with special transportation needs shall comply with these specifications and with FMVSS applicable to their GVWR category.
2. Any school bus to be used for the transportation of students who utilize a wheelchair or other mobile positioning device, or who require life support equipment which prohibits use of the regular service entrance, shall be equipped with a power lift, unless a ramp is needed for unusual circumstances related to passenger needs.

3. School buses used to transport students who utilize wheelchairs or other mobile positioning devices **shall meet either item A or B below.**
- A. Type C and D buses with wheelchair positions mounted forward of the rear axle shall have a 30-inch aisle to both front entrance and rear emergency exit door.
- B. Type C and D buses equipped with a rear-mounted wheelchair lift, and wheelchair seating positions in the rear shall have air-ride suspension on the rear. School buses using this configuration must employ 3-2 (39"-30") seating to allow access to the front door exit in case of emergency.

Type A school buses 14,500 lbs. GVWR and below are exempt from these requirements.

- C. A locking storage compartment shall be provided in the driver area suitable to store an 8.5" x 11", 3-ring binder.

Air Conditioning

Special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. **Refer to page 14, School Bus Body Standards, for minimum air conditioning standards.**

Aisles

All buses equipped with a power lift shall provide sufficient aisle space to enable emergency evacuation through front and rear exits. For specific requirements refer to 3A and 3B in the General Requirements above.

Communication System

Each special needs bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Crash Barriers

1. *A crash barrier shall be placed between the lift and any seat position on a front-mounted lift (bench seat or wheelchair position).* Stanchions are not acceptable.
2. There shall be a padded crash barrier approximately 8 inches in front of the forward edge of the seat cushion of all passenger seats that do not have another seat approximately 27 inches in front of them. There shall be a padded crash barrier or seat in front of any wheelchair position unless it is contiguous with and behind another wheelchair position. The forward-most barrier on both sides of the bus shall have a full-width, aluminized courtesy panel extending to the floor.

Evacuation Blanket

A minimum of two fire-retardant, evacuation blankets, Tie Tech Evacuation Transporter Part # 1013, or prior approved equal, and storage pouches shall be provided. **The location to**

secure the evacuation blanket shall be easily accessible and determined by the purchaser at the time of the bid.

Glazing

Tinted glazing may be installed in all doors, windows and windshield consistent with federal, state, and local regulations.

Identification

Buses with power lifts used for transporting physically handicapped students shall display three universal handicapped symbols located below the windowpane. Such emblems shall be white on blue background, shall not exceed 12 inches in size, and shall be of a high-intensity retroreflectorized material meeting U. S. Department of Transportation FHWA FP-85 Standards. Symbols shall be located on the lift door, the rear of the bus, and the front left side of the bus.

Passenger Capacity Rating

In determining the passenger capacity of a school bus for purposes other than actual passenger load (i.e., vehicle classification, or various billing/reimbursement models), any location in a school bus intended for securing an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid during vehicle operations may be regarded as four designated seating positions. Similarly, each lift area may be regarded as four designated seating positions.

Power Lift

1. The option shall be provided to the local purchaser to have the lift located either in front of or behind the rear wheels, on the right side of the bus, but confined within the bus body when not extended. A device shall be installed to prevent the lift from deploying if hydraulic pressure leaks down. *If a lift is installed in the front of the bus, the lift platform shall not impede or hinder the vision out the right side of the bus.*
2. All lifts shall be fully automatic with sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility device user to reach a securement location.
3. The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least 6 (six), based on the ultimate strength of the material. Non-working parts, such as the platform, frame, and attachment hardware, which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least 3 (three), based on the ultimate strength of the material.
4. The lifting mechanism and platform shall be able to lift a minimum of 800 pounds.
5. Controls shall be provided that enable the operator to activate the lift mechanism from either inside or outside the bus. The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, transmission, or door, as required by FMVSS 403 and 404. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising,

and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

6. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied. No manual emergency operation shall require more than 2 (two) minutes to lower an occupied wheelchair to ground level.
7. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches per second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.
8. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the platform during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the platform is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform, which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position, shall have a barrier a minimum 1 and 1/2 inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier), which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically raise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the platform is more than 3 inches above the roadway or sidewalk and the platform is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged, or disengaged by the lift operator, provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.
9. The platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over 1/4 inch high and shall be slip resistant. The platform shall have a minimum width of 34 inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the platform surface to 30 inches above the surface of the platform, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface of the platform.
10. Any openings between the platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed 5/8 inches in width. When the platform is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and the vehicle floor shall not exceed 1/2 inches horizontally and 5/8 inches vertically.

11. The outboard entrance ramp or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp and the transition plate from the inboard edge of the platform to the vehicle floor shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of three inches, and the transition from roadway or sidewalk to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to 1/4 inches.

Thresholds between 1/4 inch and 1/2 inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

12. The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than three degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll or pitch) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 60 pounds applied through a 26" by 26" test pallet at the centroid of the platform.
13. No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches per second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches per second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3 g.
14. The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchair and mobility aid users.
15. Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces, or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The platform may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.
16. Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1 and 1/4 inches and 1 and 1/2 inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than 1/8 inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1 and 1/2" knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle. Any wheelchair frame utilizing a horizontal overhead support shall have padding at least 1" in thickness extending the full width of support.
17. Re-settable circuit breakers or other equivalent technology shall be installed between the power source and the lift motor if electrical power is used. It shall be located as close to the power source as possible, but not within the passenger/driver compartment.

18. Lift design shall prevent excessive pressure that could damage the lift system when the platform is fully lowered or raised, or that could jack the vehicle.
19. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a lift:
 - A. A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - B. Detailed instructions regarding use of the lift, readily visible when the lift door is open, including a diagram showing the proper placement and positioning of wheelchair/mobility aids on lift.
20. The lift manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the lift. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
21. Each lift shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses. In addition, the lift manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request of the original titled purchaser, shall provide a **Notarized Certificate of Conformance**, either original or photocopied, which states that the lift system meets all the applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses.

Ramp

Emergency ramps may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Regular Service Entrance

1. Steps
 - A. The first step at the service door shall be not less than 10 inches and not more than 14 inches from the ground when measured from the top of the step based on standard chassis specifications.
 - B. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

5. At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test.
6. An assist rail shall be provided on the right-hand side.

Restraining Devices

1. On power-lift equipped vehicles, seat frames may be equipped with attachments or devices to which belts, restraining harnesses or other devices may be attached. Attachment framework or anchorage devices, if installed, shall conform to FMVSS 210.
2. Seat belt assemblies are optional. Seat belt assemblies may be installed on special needs buses. If seat belt assemblies are installed on special needs buses, they shall be of the lap/shoulder belt configuration. Seat belt assemblies shall be installed by the manufacturer, and must conform to FMVSS 209. Type A school buses with a GVWR of 14,500 pounds or below are required to have lap/shoulder belt assemblies.
3. Child restraint systems, which are used to facilitate the transportation of students who in other modes of transportation would be required to use a child, infant, or booster seat, shall conform to FMVSS 213 and 222.
4. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "**Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-Age Children in School Buses.**"

Seating Arrangements

Flexibility in seat spacing to accommodate special circumstances shall be permitted to meet passenger requirements. All seating shall be forward facing. **Floor plans for special needs buses shall be designed with emphasis on placing wheelchair positions forward of the rear axle.**

Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant

For purposes of better understanding the various aspects and components of this section, the term securement or phrase securement system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s), which secure the wheelchair/mobility aid. The term "restraint" or phrase "restraint system" is used exclusively in reference to the device(s) used to restrain the occupant of the wheelchair/mobility aid. The phrase "securement and restraint system" is used to refer to the total system, which secures and restrains both the wheelchair/mobility aid and the occupant.

1. Securement and restraint system--general
 - A. The Wheelchair/Mobility Aid Securement and Occupant Restraint System shall be designed, installed, and operated to accommodate passengers in a forward-facing orientation within the bus and shall comply with all applicable requirements of FMVSS 222. Gurney-type devices shall be secured parallel to the side of each bus.

- B. The securement and restraint system, including the system track, floor plates, pockets, or other anchorages shall be provided by the same manufacturer, or be certified to be compatible by manufacturers of all equipment/systems used.
- C. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device and an occupant restraint share a common anchorage, including occupant restraint designs that attach the occupant restraint to the securement device or the wheelchair/mobility aid, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the loads of both the securement device and occupant restraint applied simultaneously, in accordance with FMVSS 222 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- D. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) is shared with an occupant restraint, the wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a force twice the amount as specified in Section 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- E. The bus body floor and sidewall structures where the securement and restraint system anchorages are attached shall have equal or greater strength than the load requirements of the system(s) being installed.
- F. The occupant restraint system shall be designed to be attached to the bus body either directly or in combination with the wheelchair/mobility aid securement system, by a method, which prohibits the transfer of weight or force from the wheelchair/mobility aid to the occupant in the event of an impact.
- G. When an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the securement and restraint system shall limit the movement of the occupied wheelchair/mobility aid to no more than 2 inches in any direction under normal driving conditions.
- H. The securement and restraint system shall incorporate an identification scheme, which will allow for the easy identification of the various components and their functions. It shall consist of one of the following, or combination thereof:
 - (1) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement (webbing or strap assemblies) and the occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be of contrasting color or color shade.
 - (2) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assemblies) and occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be clearly marked to indicate the proper wheelchair orientation in the vehicle, and the name and location for each device or belt assembly; i.e., front, rear, lap belt, shoulder belt.
- I. All attachment or coupling devices designed to be connected or disconnected frequently shall be accessible and operable without the use of tools or other mechanical assistance.

- J. The securement and restraint system hardware and components shall be free of sharp or jagged areas and shall be of a non-corrosive material or treated to resist corrosion in accordance with Section 4.3(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - K. The securement and restraint system shall be located and installed such that when an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured, it does not block access to the lift door or emergency door.
 - L. A device for storage of the securement and restraint system shall be provided. When the system is not in use, the storage device shall allow for clean storage of the system, shall keep the system securely contained within the passenger compartment, shall provide reasonable protection from vandalism, and shall enable the system to be readily accessed for use.
 - M. The entire securement and restraint system, including the storage device, shall meet the flammability standards established in FMVSS 302.
 - N. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) and restraint belt assembly shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable FMVSS requirements. In addition, the system manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request by the original titled purchaser, shall provide a notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system meets all of the requirements as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - O. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a securement and restraint system:
 - (1) A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - (2) Detailed instructions regarding use, including a diagram showing the proper placement of the wheelchair/mobility aids and positioning of securement devices and occupant restraints, including correct belt angles.
 - P. The system manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
2. Wheelchair/mobility aid securement system
- A. Each securement system location shall consist of a minimum of four anchorage points. A minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in front of the

wheelchair/mobility aid and a minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in the rear. The securement anchorages shall be attached to the floor of the vehicle and shall not interfere with passenger movement or present any hazardous condition.

- B. Each securement system location shall have a minimum clear floor area of 30" x 48". Additional floor area may be required for some applications. Consultation between the user and the manufacturer is recommended to ensure adequate area is provided.
 - C. The securement system shall secure common wheelchair/mobility aids and shall be able to be attached easily by a person having average dexterity and who is familiar with the system and wheelchair/mobility aid.
 - D. As installed, each securement anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222. When multiple securement devices share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the force indicated above, multiplied by the number of securement devices sharing that anchorage.
 - E. Each securement device, if incorporating webbing or a strap assembly, shall comply with the requirements for Type 1 safety belt systems, in accordance with Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - F. The securement system shall secure the wheelchair/mobility aid in such a manner that the attachments or coupling hardware will not become detached when any wheelchair/mobility aid component deforms, when one or more tires deflate, and without intentional operation of a release mechanism (e.g., a spring clip on a securement hook).
 - G. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 2,500 pounds when tested in accordance with FMVSS 209.
 - H. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall provide a means of adjustment of manufacturer's design, to remove slack from the device or assembly.
 - I. Each securement device, webbing, or strap assembly shall be of the automatic, retractable type.
3. Occupant restraint system
- A. A Type II-A occupant restraint system, which meets all applicable requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210, shall provide for restraint of the occupant. For buses equipped with track seating, the occupant restraint shoulder track for the lap shoulder belt assembly shall be installed the full length of all floor track.

- B. The occupant restraint system shall be made of materials which do not stain, soil, or tear an occupant's clothing, and which are resistant to water damage and fraying.
- C. Each restraint system location shall have not less than one anchorage, of manufacturer's design, for the upper end of the upper torso restraint.
 - (1) The anchorage for each occupant's upper torso restraint shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 1,500 pounds (6,672 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
- D. Each wheelchair/mobility aid location shall have not less than two floor anchorages for the occupant pelvic and the connected upper torso restraint.
 - (1) Each floor anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - (2) When multiple occupant restraints share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) multiplied by the number of occupant restraints sharing the common anchorage in accordance with FMVSS 222.
- E. Each floor and wall anchorage which secures the occupant restraint to the vehicle and which is not permanently attached, shall be of a "positive latch" design, and shall not allow for any accidental disconnection.

Special Light

Doorways, in which lifts are installed, shall have lighting as required by FMVSS 403 and 404.

Special Service Entrance

1. Power lift equipped bodies shall have a special service entrance to accommodate the power lift. Door materials, panels and structural strength shall be equivalent to the conventional service and emergency doors. Color, rub rail extensions, lettering and other exterior features shall match adjacent sections of the body.
2. The special service entrance and door shall be located on the right side of the bus and shall be designed so as not to obstruct the regular service entrance. All doors shall have positive fastening devices to hold doors in the open position.
3. Each door shall have windows, set in a waterproof manner, which are visually similar in size and location to adjacent non-door windows. Glazing shall be of the same type and tinting (if applicable) as standard fixed glass in other body locations.
4. A drip molding shall be installed above the opening to effectively divert water from the entrance.

5. Door posts and headers from the entrance shall be reinforced sufficiently to provide support and strength equivalent to the areas of the side of the bus not used for special service entrance.
6. The special service entrance door shall be equipped with a device that will actuate a visible signal located in the driver's compartment when the door is open and ignition is in "on" position.
7. A switch shall be installed so that the lifting mechanism will not operate when the lift platform door is closed.
8. The special service entrance door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of the door opening. The pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

Support Equipment and Accessories

1. Each bus shall contain at least two belt cutters, one properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into his/her driver's seat. The second belt cutter shall be stored in a location in the passenger compartment that is accessible to the bus aide or driver, but not accessible to students. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use and must have a full handgrip.
2. Special equipment or supplies which are used on the bus for mobility assistance, health support, or safety purposes shall meet any local, federal, or engineering standards which may apply, including proper identification.

Equipment which may be used for these purposes includes, but is not limited to:

- A. Wheelchairs and other mobile seating devices (see section on Securement System for Mobile Seating Devices/Occupant).
 - B. Crutches, walkers, canes, and other ambulating devices.
 - C. Medical support equipment. This may include respiratory devices such as oxygen bottles (which should be no larger than 22 cubic feet for liquid oxygen and 38 cubic feet for compressed gas), or ventilators. Tanks and valves should be located and positioned to protect them from direct sunlight, bus heater vents, or other heat sources. Other equipment may include intravenous and fluid drainage apparatus. Appropriate medical placarding, if needed, shall be added by the LEA.
3. All portable equipment and special accessory items, including the equipment listed above, shall be secured at the mounting location to withstand a pulling force of five times the weight of the item, or shall be retained in an enclosed, latched compartment. The compartment shall be capable of withstanding forces applied to its interior equal to five times the weight of its contents without failure to the box's integrity and securement to the bus. Exception: If these standards provide specific requirements for securement of a particular type of equipment, the specific standard shall prevail (i.e., wheelchairs).

Technology and Equipment, New

It is the intent of these specifications to accommodate new technologies and equipment that will better facilitate the transportation of students in the schools of Alabama. When a new technology, piece of equipment, or component is desired to be applied to the school bus it must meet the following criteria:

- A. The technology, equipment, or component shall not compromise the effectiveness or integrity of any major safety system. (Examples of safety systems include, but are not limited to, compartmentalization, the eight-lamp warning system, emergency exits and the approved color scheme.)
- B. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not diminish the safety of the interior of the bus.
- C. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not create additional risk to students who are boarding or exiting the bus or are in or near the school bus loading zone.
- D. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not require undue additional activity and/or responsibility for the driver.
- E. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall generally increase efficiency and/or safety of the bus, generally provide for a safer or more pleasant experience for the occupants and pedestrians in the vicinity of the bus or shall generally assist the driver and make his/her many tasks easier to perform.
- F. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

SECTION V – ALTERNATIVE FUEL STANDARDS

1. **School systems considering the use of alternative fuels such as bio-diesel, liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), compressed natural gas (CNG), electric or the purchase of alternative-fuel buses shall contact the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130 for information and written approval prior to initiating the bid process. Written requests must, at a minimum, provide the SDE with detailed specifications including the specific design, performance criteria, alternative-fuel type and safety specifications for the alternative fuel or buses.**
2. The guidelines contained herein shall pertain to school buses approved by the Alabama State Department of Education to operate on alternative-fuel sources.
 - A. Any company or individual providing alternative-fuel school buses to school systems shall provide appropriate certifications as well as maintenance, repair and trouble-shooting information and safety training for each system. All maintenance on alternative-fuel buses shall be performed by personnel who are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency for the alternative fuel.
 - C. These companies or individuals shall submit to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130, documentation certifying that the requirements of this section have been met.
3. The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.
4. Fuel blends containing used cooking oil will not be allowed.

SECTION VI - OPTIONS

School systems should contact the their state school bus inspector or the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section prior to the purchase and/or installation of any optional or after-market equipment. This is to ensure that the equipment and/or its installation is in compliance with the current Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses.

Locking Fuel Compartment Door

Provide at the option of the purchaser a lock and key to secure the fuel compartment door.

Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment

Provide at the option of the purchaser a storage compartment located in the driver's compartment to house the emergency equipment. It shall be a locked compartment with a warning buzzer attached so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked.

SECTION VII - MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS (MFSAB)

DEFINITION:

A Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB) is a school bus constructed to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) and Alabama Minimum School Bus Specifications. It must be purchased or leased as a new bus and may only be used for extracurricular activities. **These buses may not be used to transport students to and from schools or between schools for the purpose of attendance.**

The following exceptions to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for regular route buses shall be allowed for these vehicles.

Identification:

1. The bus body shall bear the words “**ACTIVITY BUS**” in a contrasting color at least 8 inches high in the area where “school bus” is normally positioned. Lettering and numbering shall conform to FMVSS and Alabama Minimum Specifications and shall meet reflectivity standards. Bus numbering on this bus may be of a contrasting color.
2. The name of the school system shall be displayed in at least five-inch letters on both sides of the bus in the beltline area. **NO SIGNS OR LOGOS** shall be applied to any area of the bus including the bumpers. The name of the school may be displayed in the beltline area. No signs, logos, or other items shall be displayed on the windows of the bus.

Color:

The local school with school system approval may determine the color of the activity bus. The color scheme may utilize any combination of up to **THREE** colors. This combination may be in addition to an optional white roof. The color National School Bus Yellow (SBMTC-008 Publication) shall not be used as a part of the color scheme.

School systems and/or vendors shall submit preliminary color schemes to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section for approval **prior to the purchase or manufacture** of a Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB).

Seating:

Transit style seats, which meet all aspects of FMVSS 222 and 302, may be used in lieu of regular school bus seats.

Lighting and Warning Devices:

All activity buses shall meet state and federal standards for normal school bus lighting and warning device requirements with the following exceptions:

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with alternately flashing amber or red signal lamps used for loading and unloading students.

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with stop arm signals or crossing control arms.

INSPECTIONS:

Annual inspection by Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) state school bus inspectors and monthly inspections by local school bus inspectors shall be performed on all Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) as required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

REGULATIONS:

These buses shall be owned by the local school system or leased from private school bus transportation contractors. All Alabama laws, Rules of the State Board of Education, and other applicable regulations pertaining to the operation of school buses and certification of school bus drivers shall apply to Multifunctional School Activity Buses.



Disposal of Used School Buses

The procedures outlined in this document should be used in order to assure the proper disposal of school buses that are sold or otherwise removed from your school system's school bus fleet.

If the bus is sold to another school system, private school, or other agency that will continue to use the vehicle as a school bus, only the name of your system, the state inspection sticker, and the tag should be removed. **If the bus is sold or traded to a dealer only state inspection sticker and the tag should be removed.** The school bus dealer will remove the name of the school system, which could increase the value of the bus.

Alabama law requires that school buses be equipped with signal lamps and other visual signals and markings that clearly identify the vehicle as a school bus. School buses are also equipped with specialized equipment in order to help protect students, school bus drivers, and motorists. These visual markings, signals, and other specialized equipment, which include amber and red flashing lights, stop signs, warning signs on the rear of the bus, school bus lettering, and crossing control arms, are peculiar to school buses and may not be used on other vehicles, except as provided under Alabama law. Accordingly, the disposal of school buses requires measures above and beyond those necessary for the disposal of other school system vehicles.

To avoid possible liability, improve security, and also ensure compliance with the law, the following procedures should be followed when disposing of buses that will no longer be used as school buses:

1. Disable the overhead amber and red flashing lamps and stop arm used when loading and unloading students.
2. Disable the crossing control arm.
3. Remove all references to the entire name of the system on the sides of the bus, not just the name of the county or city.
4. Remove the words "SCHOOL BUS" on the **front and rear** of the bus.
5. Remove the Alabama State Inspection Sticker from the windshield.
6. Remove the county or municipal tag from the vehicle before the sale.

Questions regarding the proper disposal of used school buses should be addressed to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama at 334-242-9730.

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS
QUICK REFERENCE CHART

****TYPE A-I SCHOOL BUS****

Type A-I and A-II buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
All type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

****TYPE A-II SCHOOL BUS****
(Over 14,500 pounds)

CAPACITY	BRAKE LINING SIZE	GAWR FRONT	GAWR REAR	GVWR TOTAL	TIRE SIZE
10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply

Type A-II school buses exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have air brakes.

****TYPE C SCHOOL BUS****

10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	15,000	24,000	10R x 22.5 12ply
48-54	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	17,000	26,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
55-72	4" Front 7" Rear	9,000	19,000	29,000	10R x 22.5 14 ply

Type C school buses exceeding 72 capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

****TYPE C-1 SCHOOL BUS****

10-36	Four-wheel disc	6,000	13,000	19,000	225 x 70R 19.5 - 12 Ply
-------	-----------------	-------	--------	--------	-------------------------

****TYPE D FRONT ENGINE****

10-53	4" Front 6" Rear	10,000	17,000	27,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
54-66	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	17,000	28,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
67-78	5" Front 7" Rear	13,000	19,000	32,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	20,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

****TYPE D REAR ENGINE****

42-66	5" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	31,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
67-78	6" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	31,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	21,000	34,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

Type D school buses exceeding 84-capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses



Effective Date: April 1, 2013

Alabama State Department of Education
Division of Administrative and Financial Services
Pupil Transportation Section
Montgomery, Alabama
334-242-9730

Thomas R. Bice
State Superintendent of Education

Dennis Coe
Division Director
Office of Supporting Programs

Joe Lightsey
Director of Pupil Transportation

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu under Offices/Office of Supporting Programs/Pupil Transportation/ Publications.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses
Changes Document

Changes to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for 2014 are found on the following pages and headings. All changes appear in italics with the exception of deletions. For noted deletions refer to the 2013 specifications for comparison.

NOTE: Page numbers in 2013 specifications and 2014 specifications may not coincide

Page	Section	General Description of Change
<i>1</i>	<i>Bid requirements # 4</i>	<i>Wording change on floor plan requirements for special needs buses</i>
<i>1</i>	<i>Bid requirements # 5</i>	<i>New wording clarifying extended warranty at time of bid.</i>
<i>4</i>	<i>Brakes 3 A</i>	<i>Allows air disc brakes on Type C & D buses as an option</i>
<i>6</i>	<i>Electrical System 1 C</i>	<i>New language requiring all buses to have a battery disconnect system</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Air conditioning Opening statement</i>	<i>New language concerning evaporator placement and allowing low profile roof mount condenser unit</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Air conditioning # 5</i>	<i>Makes mud flaps mandatory, language change includes school system in location decision.</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Air Conditioning # 6</i>	<i>Automatic high idle feature clarification</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Air Conditioning #7</i>	<i>New language states that air conditioning components must be rated to meet minimum BTU requirements</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Air conditioning # 8</i>	<i>New language requiring shroud on skirt-mounted condenser units and clarifies shroud placement.</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Air Conditioning BTU Requirements</i>	<i>New language clarifies compressor size for BTU requirements</i>
<i>24</i>	<i>Identification</i>	<i>New language requiring a "No Trespassing" decal to be placed in the entrance door step well.</i>
<i>30</i>	<i>Seat Belt for Driver # 2</i>	<i>Clarification on number of seatbelt cutters required</i>
<i>35</i>	<i>Video Surveillance Equipment</i>	<i>New language requiring video equipment on all buses and clarifies camera usage</i>
<i>40</i>	<i>Special Needs General Requirements Item 4</i>	<i>New language requiring a locking storage compartment in the driver area</i>
<i>41</i>	<i>Power Lift Item 1</i>	<i>New language requiring a latching device for power lift</i>



INTRODUCTION

Alabama law (32-5-8) requires the Alabama State Board of Education to adopt minimum standards to govern the specifications for all new school buses and the overall operation of all school buses in the state of Alabama. This responsibility also extends to the inspection of school buses being sold and operated in the state of Alabama. The primary reason for the development of specifications and the inspection of school buses is to enhance the safety of our school buses. We must ensure that Alabama school buses continue to provide the safest ride available for our most precious cargo—our children.

My deepest thanks are extended to each member of the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) School Bus Specifications Committee for their service, hard work, and commitment to the task. Special thanks are also extended to Specifications Committee Chairperson, Greg Ray. For many years, his experience, dedication, and leadership have helped to ensure a successful meeting as well as exceptional specifications. School bus specifications always begin as a product of many individual thoughts and ideas. However, they culminate in standards, which help assure the safest school buses possible for Alabama's students as well as vehicles, which provide a true value for Alabama's taxpayers.

Special thanks must also be expressed to Alabama's school bus dealers, their school bus manufacturers and the many vendors and others in the school bus industry that assist in the SDE and the Committee in the development of these standards. Without their participation, the specifications process would be significantly weakened.

The Minimum Specifications for Alabama School Buses become effective on April 1, 2013. If you have questions or recommendations regarding any of the specifications in this document, please contact Mr. Ray or any member of the specifications committee. Committee members are listed on the following page.

Joe Lightsey, Director
Pupil Transportation
Alabama State Department of Education
Montgomery, Alabama 36130
334-242-9730
joel@alsde.edu

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu under Offices/Office of Supporting Programs/Pupil Transportation/ Publications.

Alabama State Department of Education (SDE)
School Bus Specifications Committee
January 1, 2013

Harvey Barger
hbarger@tcss.net
Tuscaloosa County Schools
3700 68th Avenue
Northport, AL 35476
(205) 342-2636

Chris Bible
cbible@ftpayk12.org
Ft. Payne City Schools
231 38th Street NE
Ft. Payne, AL 35968
256-845-9288

Glenn Brown
rgbrown@bcbe.org
Baldwin County Schools
2600-A Hand Avenue
Bay Minette, AL 36507
251-580-1894

Keith Clark
khclark@morgank12.org
Morgan County Schools
1325 Point Mallard Parkway SE
Decatur, AL 35601
(256) 353-6442

David Gibson
dgibson@pcboe.net
Phenix City Schools
P. O. Box 460
Phenix City, AL 36867
(334) 298-2823

Griff Hill
glhill@tcboe.org
Talladega County Schools
P.O. 887
Talladega, AL 35160
256-315-5139

Don Ingram
dingram@auburnschools.org
Auburn City Schools
P. O. Box 3270
Auburn, AL 36831-3270
(334) 887-4915

Bobby Martin
blmartin@chilton.k12.al.us
Chilton County Schools
1705 Lay Dam Road
Clanton, AL 35045
(205) 280-2950

Leslie Mathison
Mathison.leslie@aidb.state.al.us
AIDB
P.O. Box 698
Talladega, AL 35160
(256) 761-3443

Tony Morris, ASTA President
morristrn@yahoo.com
Pell City Schools
1000 Bruce Etheredge Parkway
Pell City, AL 35128-3213
(205) 884-4800

Turner Oliver
olivert@pcboe.org
Pickens County Schools
P. O. Box 32
Carrollton, AL 35447
(205) 367-8244

Fay Parker
fay.parker@lcschools.org
Lauderdale County Schools
P. O. Box 278
Florence, AL 35631
(256) 760-1338

Brian Stovall
brian.stoval@lcsk12.org
Limestone County Schools
300 South Jefferson Street
Athens, AL 35611
256-232-5130

Joe Lightsey
joel@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerome Cook
cook8500@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Jeff Duke
papajd@charter.net
State Department of Education

Obie Fuller
obeyonly1@yahoo.com
State Department of Education

Brad Holley
bholley@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerry Lassiter
jlassiter@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Greg Ray
gwrays@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jeff Snider
jefsnider2010@yahoo.com
State Department of Education

Sammy Weatherspoon
sammy_weatherspoon@att.net
State Department of Education

Joe Beams
joebeams@aol.com
State Department of Education

Jerry Davidson
lindacd50@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Cathy Staggs
ctstaggs@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Ray Jones
dLjo55@charter.net
State Department of Education

ALABAMA
SCHOOL BUS INSPECTION
HANDBOOK



PREPARED BY
ALABAMA STATE DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
DIVISION OF ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL SERVICES
TRANSPORTATION SECTION
MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA

The **Alabama School Bus Inspection Handbook** was developed by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) Pupil Transportation Section as a standard for school bus safety inspections at the local school system level. This handbook is provided as a guideline for local school system school bus inspectors, shop foremen, technicians, maintenance supervisors, and transportation directors in conducting the monthly inspections required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

The goal of this handbook is to provide uniform standards for state and local school bus inspections. The manual also identifies the critical items to be inspected on Alabama school buses, how they are to be inspected, and which items should remove a school bus from service until the item is repaired (“out of service” items).

Copies of the handbook have been distributed to all local school systems. Additional copies of the document are available from the SDE, Pupil Transportation Section at 334-242-9730 or on the SDE website at www.alsde.edu under Offices/Office of Supporting Programs/Pupil Transportation/ Publications.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<u>SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS</u>	1
<u>SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS</u>	3
Air Cleaner.....	3
Axles.....	3
Brakes.....	3
Bumper (Front).....	5
Certification.....	5
Color.....	5
Directional Lights.....	6
Drive Shaft.....	6
Electrical System.....	6
Engine.....	7
Exhaust System.....	8
Fenders, Hoods.....	8
Frame.....	9
Fuel Tank.....	9
Governor.....	10
Heating System, Provision for.....	10
Horn.....	10
Instruments & Instrument Panel.....	10
Oil Filter.....	11
Openings.....	11
Passenger Load.....	11
Retarder System (Optional).....	11
Road Speed Control	11
Shock Absorbers.....	12
Springs/Suspension Systems	12
Steering Gear.....	12
Tires and Rims.....	12
Transmission.....	13
Turning Radius.....	13
Undercoating.....	13
Weight Distribution.....	13

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

PAGE

Air Conditioning.....	14
Aisle.....	14
Back-up Warning Alarm.....	14
Battery/Batteries.....	15
Bumper (Front).....	15
Bumper (Rear).....	15
Ceiling.....	15
Certification.....	15
Chains (Tire).....	16
Color.....	16
Communication Systems	16
Construction.....	16
Crossing Control Arm.....	17
Defrosters.....	18
Doors.....	18
Emergency Exits.....	19
Emergency Equipment.....	20
Fire Extinguishers.....	20
First-Aid Kit.....	21
Body Fluid Clean-up Kit.....	21
Warning Devices.....	21
Fire Suppression	21
Floor and Floor Coverings.....	21
Handrail(s)	22
Heaters.....	22
Hinges	23
Identification.....	23
Inside Height.....	25
Insulation.....	25
Interior.....	25
Lamps and Signals.....	25
Metal Treatment.....	27
Mirrors.....	28
Mounting.....	28

<u>SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS (Continued)</u>	PAGE
Noise Suppression Switch.....	28
Overall Length.....	29
Overall Width.....	29
Public Address System	29
Retroreflective Material.....	29
Rub Rails.....	29
Seat Belt for Driver.....	30
Seat and Crash Barriers.....	30
Steering Wheel (See Chassis Standards).....	32
Steps.....	32
Step Treads.....	32
Stirrup Step.....	33
Stop Arm Signal.....	33
Stop Arm Signal-Rear (Optional)	33
Storage Compartment.....	33
Sun Shield.....	33
Tailpipe.....	33
Traction-Assisting Devices.....	33
Trash Container and Holding Device.....	34
Undercoating.....	34
Ventilation.....	35
Video Surveillance Equipment.....	35
Wheel Housing.....	35
Windshield and Windows.....	36
Windshield Washers.....	36
Windshield Wipers.....	36
Wiring.....	36

SECTION IV - SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction.....	39
Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus	39
General Requirements.....	39
Air Conditioning.....	40
Aisles.....	40

Communication System	40
Crash Barriers	40
Evacuation Blanket.....	40
Glazing.....	41
Identification	41
Passenger Capacity Rating.....	41
Power Lift.....	41
Ramp.....	44
Regular Service Entrance.....	44
Restraining Devices.....	45
Seating Arrangements.....	45
Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant.....	45
Special Light.....	49
Special Service Entrance.....	49
Support Equipment and Accessories.....	50
Technology and Equipment New.....	51
<u>SECTION V - ALTERNATE FUEL SOURCE STANDARDS</u>	52
<u>SECTION VI - OPTIONS</u>	52
Locking Fuel Compartment Door	52
Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment.....	52
<u>SECTION VII – MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS</u>	53
Definition	53
Identification	53
Color	53
Seating	53
Lighting and Warning Devices.....	53
Inspections	54
Regulations	54
<u>DISPOSAL OF USED SCHOOL BUSES</u>	55
<u>SECTION VIII – QUICK REFERENCE CHART</u>	56

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS FOR SCHOOL BUSES
EFFECTIVE April 1, 2013

SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Standards

1. All school buses ordered by local education agencies beginning **April 1, 2013**, shall (1) meet the applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS), and (2) meet Alabama minimum specifications for school buses. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of an applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard, as referred to in this section, and the Alabama minimum specifications, the requirements of the FMVSS shall control. **School buses not meeting minimum specifications will not be certified by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE). Under unusual circumstances and with adequate justification, exceptions to these specifications may be granted by the SDE director of pupil transportation.**

Certification

2. All school buses shall display a **durable, legible** certification data plate mounted in the driver's compartment of the vehicle. On this data plate, the manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and the local education agency that the school bus meets or exceeds all standards as specified herein, is in compliance with the applicable FMVSS, and is manufactured from all new components. All chassis and body information shall appear on this certification data plate. The bus body data plate shall specify the maximum design capacity of the body. The maximum design capacity of any bus body size shall be the number of passengers the bus can transport before special needs modifications.

Used School Buses

3. Used school buses purchased for use by a school system in Alabama shall meet all of the legal Federal and Alabama requirements for school buses that were in effect on the date the vehicle was manufactured. It is recommended that school systems contact the SDE Pupil Transportation prior to the purchase of any used school bus.

Bid Requirements

4. In order to be in compliance with the State Bid Law, school bus purchases shall be by competitive bidding. Bid forms to the body manufacturer shall contain certain options required by the chassis manufacturer, which may result in changes in normal Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or alterations to the body. For special needs buses, the school system shall provide the dealers with detailed information regarding desired floor plan. The school bus body manufacturer shall submit floor plans which include dimensions at the time bid quotations are submitted showing:
 1. Location of the emergency door, emergency windows and roof hatches.
 2. Aisle and staging areas and seat spacing.

3. Track locations and/or wheelchair securement positions.
4. Location of air conditioning evaporator(s) **for all buses** ordered with air conditioning.
5. *Extended warranties may not be included in initial bus bid and cannot be used to determine low bidder.*

5. **Service Manual/Diagnostic Equipment**

Body and/or chassis suppliers, including integral (forward control) suppliers, shall provide each school district purchasing school buses with one complete set of the most current service manuals, as specified by the school system, available to include both body and chassis at no additional cost upon delivery of bus. Provisions for manuals and diagnostic equipment, including, but not limited to code books, software, and training, etc., shall be agreed upon during the pre-bid process. Diagnostic equipment shall not be included as a part of the bus bid and cannot be used to determine low bidder.

6. **New Technology**

New technology not in the present specifications shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

7. **School Bus Definitions**

School bus capacity is determined based on body size before modifications are made.

TYPE A: A Type A school bus is a conversion or body constructed upon a van-type or cutaway front-section vehicle with a left side driver's door designed for carrying more than 10 persons. This definition shall include two classifications: Type A-I with a GVWR of 10,000 or under; and Type A-II, with a GVWR over 10,000 pounds. All Type A buses shall have dual rear wheels. **Type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.**

Type A buses exceeding a GVWR of 14,500 pounds shall have air brakes.

TYPE B: A Type B school bus is a conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section vehicle chassis, or stripped chassis, with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels. All Type B buses 14,500 pounds or under shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE C: A Type C school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The entire engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.

Type C buses may not exceed 72-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C1 A Type C1 school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and a maximum of 19,000 pounds and designed for carrying a maximum of 36 persons. This is a special category of a Type C school bus designed to be an alternate to a Type A1, Type A2. **This bus shall not exceed a maximum capacity of 36 persons.**

TYPE D: A Type D school bus is a body installed upon a chassis, with the engine mounted in the front, midship, or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or midship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels. **Type D buses may not exceed 84-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.**

SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS

Air Cleaner

1. The engine intake air cleaner shall be furnished and properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

The intake air system for diesel engines shall have an air cleaner restriction indicator properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

Axles

1. The front and rear axles and suspension systems shall have a gross axle weight rating (GAWR) at ground commensurate with the respective front and rear weight loads of the bus loaded to the rated passenger capacity.
2. Vehicle minimum axle capacities at ground when loaded shall meet the body manufacturer's GVWR specified by the FMVSS. Axle assemblies shall have minimum capacities at ground as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
3. Front wheel bearings must be oil filled on all Type C and D buses.

Brakes

1. A braking system, including service brake and parking brake, shall be provided and shall comply with all CDL pretrip inspection requirements. All Type A-1 and A-II school buses below 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications. Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
2. Buses using air in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals located within the interior of the driver compartment and clearly audible and visible to the driver, that will give a continuous warning when the air pressure available

in the system for braking is 60 psi (pounds per square inch) or less. An air pressure gauge shall be provided in the instrument panel capable of complying with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.

3. Antilock brake systems for either air or hydraulic brakes shall include control of all axles in compliance with FMVSS 105 or 121.
 - A. Air brakes shall be installed on **all** chassis exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR. *As an option, air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses.* **Exception:** Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes. .

All air-operated brake systems shall:

- (1) Meet all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for air brakes.
 - (2) Be S-cam or four-wheel-disc-type brakes. Air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses with approval from the SDE. If S-cam-type, the camshaft, when applying brakes, shall rotate in the same direction as the wheels. Automatic slack adjusters shall be the same design on all wheels. Dust covers shall be installed on all wheels unless deleted through local option at the time of the bid.
 - (3) Have at least a 12 CFM air compressor.
 - (4) Be equipped with a parking and emergency brake. A manual control, clearly identified, shall be within easy reach of the driver. The parking brake valve shall comply with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.
 - (5) S-cam air brakes shall have brake lining sizes as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
 - (6) Have a reservoir capacity, which is equal to or greater than two (2) times total volume of all brake activators at full travel.
 - (7) Be equipped with air dryers with a heated automatic drain valve (Bendix AD-9 or AD/IP) or prior approved equal. Air dryers shall be serviceable at the local level.
- B. Buses using a hydraulic assist-booster in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals, readily audible and visible to the driver, that will provide continuous warning in the event of a loss of fluid flow from the primary source, or loss of electric source powering the back-up system.

- (1) The system shall be equipped with a source of hydraulic pressure, automatically initiated upon loss of power from primary source, and operating independently of the primary power source.
- (2) All brake systems shall be designed to permit visual inspection of brake lining wear without the removal of any chassis components.

Bumper, Front

1. The front bumper shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer for all school bus types, unless there is specific agreement between the chassis manufacturer and the body manufacturer. When Type D chassis are supplied to a body company by a chassis manufacturer, the body company shall supply the front bumper as part of the body installation.
2. The front bumper shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material at least 3/16 inch thick, not less than 8 inches wide (high) and shall extend beyond forward-most part of the body, grille, hood, and fenders and shall extend to the outer edges of the fenders at the bumper's top line. Bumpers on Type A buses may be built to manufacturers' specifications.
3. Tow eyes or hooks shall be furnished and attached so as not to project beyond the front bumper. Tow eyes or hooks, attached to the frame chassis, shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer. This installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's standards. Type A buses are exempt from tow hook requirements.
4. The bumper shall be designed or reinforced so that it will not deform, when the bus is lifted by a chain that is passed under the bumper (or through the bumper if holes are provided for this purpose) and attached to both tow eyes. For the purpose of meeting this standard, the bus shall be empty and positioned on a level, hard surface, and both tow eyes shall share the load equally. Front bumper shall not be deformed when lifted by a bumper jack positioned on the bumper attachment points.

Certification

The chassis manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Color

1. The chassis, including the front bumper, shall be black. The hood, cowl and fenders shall be in national school bus yellow. The hood may be painted with non-reflective paint.
2. Wheel rims shall be painted black, gray, or yellow on all buses.
3. Multifunctional School Activity Buses shall be exempt from these requirements. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Directional Lights

1. Each Type C chassis may be equipped with Type A front directional lights of the two-faced type mounted on the top of the fender and the hood side panel, or have an amber turn signal and marker light that is an integral part of the headlight assembly. This turn signal/marker light shall be seen from the front and the side of the vehicle.

Drive Shaft

1. Torque capacity of the drive shaft assembly shall at least equal maximum engine torque as developed through lowest transmission gear reduction.
2. Each drive shaft shall be equipped with protective metal guard or guards to reduce the possibility of it whipping through the floor or dropping to ground if broken. (Body manufacturer is responsible for Mini Bus.)

Electrical System

1. Battery
 - A. The storage batteries shall have a minimum total of 1,500 cold cranking amps at 0 degrees Fahrenheit. Type A buses shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
 - B. Since all batteries in Type, C, and D buses are to be located in a sliding tray, the battery shall be temporarily mounted on the chassis frame by the chassis manufacturer.

In these cases, the final location of the battery and the appropriate cable lengths shall be according to the current SBMTC Design Objectives.

- C. *All school buses shall have a battery-disconnect device installed. On Type C and D school buses, disconnect switch shall be located in the battery compartment. Location of disconnect switch on Type A school buses shall be agreed upon by the local school system and the bus supplier.*
2. Alternator
 - A. All Type A and B buses up to 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall have a minimum 130 amperes alternator.
 - B. All C and D buses over 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall be equipped with a heavy-duty truck or bus-type alternator capable of producing a minimum output rating of 185 amperes; The alternator shall be capable of producing a minimum of 50 percent of its maximum rated output at the engine manufacturer's recommended idle speed.
 - C. All C and D, buses equipped with an air conditioner or electrical power lift shall have a minimum 270 amperes alternator.
 - D. A direct-drive alternator is permissible in lieu of a belt drive. A belt drive shall be capable of handling the rated capacity of the alternator with no detrimental effect on other driven components.

- E. Refer to SBMTC Design Objectives, most current edition, for estimating required alternator capacity.
3. Wiring
- A. All wiring shall conform to current applicable recommended practices of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
 - (1) All wiring shall use standard colors and number coding and each chassis shall be delivered with a wiring diagram that coincides with the wiring of the chassis. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet or loom.
 - B. The chassis manufacturer shall install a readily accessible terminal strip or plug on the body side of the cowl, or at an accessible location in the engine compartment of vehicles designed without a cowl, that shall contain the following terminals for the body connections:
 - (1) Main 100-amp body circuits
 - (2) Tail lamps
 - (3) Right turn signal
 - (4) Left turn signal
 - (5) Stop lamps
 - (6) Back-up lamps
 - (7) Instrument panel lights (rheostat controlled)
 - C. Daytime running lamps shall be provided.
4. Circuits
- A. An appropriate identifying diagram (color and number coded) for electrical circuits shall be provided to the body manufacturer for distribution to the end user.

Engine Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

See Fire Suppression System page 21.

Engine Information

- 1. Buses shall be equipped with diesel engines with minimum horsepower requirements as follows:

Type A buses under 29 passenger – manufacturer’s specifications

Type C or D buses –210 hp minimum

Type D buses 78 passengers and above – 230 hp minimum

An engine heater may be installed as per the manufacturer's specifications.

Alternative-fuel engine information can be found on page 51, under Alternative Fuel Standards.

The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.

Exhaust System

1. The exhaust pipe, muffler/ after treatment device, and tail pipe shall be outside the bus body and securely attached to the bus frame. The chassis manufacturer shall furnish an exhaust system with a tail pipe of sufficient length to exit the rear of the bus or at the left side of the bus body no more than 18 inches forward of the front edge of the rear wheelhouse opening. If designed to exit on the side of the bus, the tailpipe shall extend to the skirt line with a turndown angle of approximately 45 degrees. With the exception of special needs buses, Type A vehicles may have the manufacturers standard exhaust system. The bus shall not automatically begin to regenerate the diesel particulate filter while the bus is not moving. The switch to regenerate the diesel particulate filter shall be readily accessible to the technician, but not accessible to the driver
2. The muffler and the tail pipe shall be constructed of aluminized, or equivalent corrosion resistant material. The tailpipe shall be made of at least 16 gauge material and shall be mounted in such a way that it will not cause damage to brake lines
3. The muffler/ after treatment device, and exhaust pipe shall be properly insulated from the fuel tank, lines, and connections by a protective shield at any point where it is 4 inches or less from fuel tank, lines or connections.
4. The tailpipe on all special needs vehicles shall be routed to the left of the left frame rail to allow for the installation of a lift on the right side of the vehicle.
5. No exhaust pipe shall exit beneath an emergency exit or the fuel fill.
6. On all Type C and D buses, the tailpipe shall exit at the bottom edge of the rear bumper or through the rear bumper. If tailpipe exits through the rear bumper sufficient clamps or brackets must be provided to eliminate rattles. If the tailpipe exits beneath the rear bumper, it shall be turned down approximately 45 degrees and positioned in such a way that it cannot be crushed beneath the rear bumper.

The opening in the tailpipe shall direct all exhaust gases clear of the perimeter of the bus body. Manufacturers must make reasonable efforts to ensure that exhaust gases will not produce burns on students or other individuals present.

Fenders, Hoods

1. The total spread of outer edges of front fenders, measured at the fender line, shall exceed the total spread of the front tires when the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
2. Front fenders shall be properly braced and free from any body attachments.
3. A fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite tilt hood shall be provided. The hood opening and closing effort shall be minimized to aid the driver with pre-trip inspections and service. If the hood is not designed to remain secure in the open position, a safety

prop will be required. The wiring harness shall be a “quick disconnect” type to aid with servicing.

Frame

1. The frame or equivalent shall be of such design and strength characteristics as to correspond at least to standard practice for trucks of the same general load characteristics, which are used for highway service.
2. Any secondary manufacturer that modifies the original chassis frame shall guarantee the performance of workmanship and materials resulting from such modification.
3. Any frame modification shall not be for the purpose of extending the wheelbase.
4. Holes in top or bottom flanges or side units of the frame, and welding to the frame, shall not be permitted except as provided or accepted by the chassis manufacturer.
5. Frame lengths shall be provided in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.

Fuel Tank

1. All Type C, and D chassis above 170-inch wheelbase shall have a minimum 60-gallon fuel tank with a 55-gallon actual draw. The tank shall be filled and vented to the outside of the body, the location of which shall be so that accidental fuel spillage will not drip or drain on any part of the exhaust system. **Type C-1 school buses are exempt from this tank size requirement.**
2. No portion of the fuel system, which is located to the rear of the engine compartment, except the filler tube, shall extend above the top of the chassis frame rail. Fuel lines shall be mounted to obtain maximum possible protection from the chassis frame.
3. Fuel filters shall be installed as per manufacturer's specifications. Fuel filtration shall include water detection and separation. At least one fuel filter shall have a replaceable spin-on or cartridge-type element.
4. Fuel tank installation shall be in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives for location on the chassis right frame rail or between frame rails; the filler tube shall be located on the right side of the bus.
5. Type A buses may meet manufacturer's specifications.
6. The fuel tank on vehicles constructed with a power lift unit may be mounted on left chassis rail or behind rear wheels.
7. Installation of alternative fuel tanks shall comply with all applicable fire codes.
8. The fuel tank on buses equipped with diesel engines shall have interior baffles to help prevent fuel starvation on inclines.

Governor

1. An engine governor is permissible. When it is desired to limit road speed, a road speed governor should be installed.
2. An electronic engine speed limiter shall be provided and set to limit engine speed not to exceed the maximum revolutions per minute as recommended by the engine manufacturer. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Heating System, Provision for

1. The chassis engine shall have plugged openings for the purpose of supplying hot water for the bus heating system. The opening shall be suitable for attaching a pipe thread/hose connector. The engine shall be capable of supplying water having a temperature of at least 170 degrees Fahrenheit at a flow rate of 50 pounds/per minute at the return end of 30 feet of one inch inside diameter automotive hot water heater hose (SBMI Standard No. 001--Standard Code for Testing and Rating Automotive Bus Hot Water Heating and Ventilating Equipment).

Horn

Buses shall be equipped with a horn or horns of standard make with each horn capable of producing a complex sound in bands of audio frequencies between 250 and 2,000 cycles per second and tested per the Society of Automotive Engineers Standard J--377. There shall be no air horns.

Instruments and Instrument Panel

1. Chassis shall be equipped with the following instruments and gauges (lights in lieu of gauges are not acceptable except as noted):
 - A. Speedometer
 - B. Odometer shall show accrued mileage to six digits not including tenths.
 - C. Tachometer
 - D. Voltmeter
 - (1) An ammeter with graduated charge and discharge with the ammeter and its wiring compatible with generating capacities is permitted in lieu of a voltmeter
 - E. Oil-pressure gauge
 - F. Water temperature gauge
 - G. Fuel gauge
 - H. Upper beam headlight indicator
 - I. Air brake indicator gauge

- (1) A light indicator in lieu of a gauge is permitted on vehicles equipped with hydraulic-over-hydraulic brake system.
 - J. Turn signal indicator
 - K. Glow-plug indicator light where appropriate
 - L. A twelve-volt accessory outlet with cover
2. All instruments shall be easily accessible for maintenance and repair.
 3. Instruments and gauges shall be mounted on the instrument panel in such a manner that each is clearly visible to the driver while in a normal seated position in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.
 4. The instrument panel shall have lamps of sufficient candlepower to illuminate all instruments and gauges and the shift selector indicator for an automatic transmission.

Oil Filter

An Oil filter with replaceable element shall be provided and connected by flexible oil lines if it is not of built-in or engine-mounted design. The oil filters shall have a capacity of at least one (1) quart.

Openings

All openings in the floorboard or firewall between the chassis and the passenger-carrying compartment, such as for gearshift selector and parking brake lever, shall be sealed.

Passenger Load

1. Actual GVW is the sum of the chassis weight, plus the body weight, plus the driver's weight, plus total seated pupil weight. For purposes of calculation, the driver's weight is 150 pounds. For purposes of calculation, the pupil weight is 120 pounds per pupil.
2. Actual GVW shall not exceed the chassis manufacturer's GVWR for the chassis, nor shall the actual weight carried on any axle exceed the chassis manufacturer's Gross Axle Weight Rating. (GAWR)

Retarder System (Optional)

A retarder system, if used, shall limit the speed of the fully loaded school bus at 19.0 mph or 30 km/hr on a 7% grade for 3.6 miles or 6 km.

Road Speed Control

When it is necessary to control vehicle maximum speed, a vehicle speed limiter shall be utilized. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Shock Absorbers

Buses shall be equipped with front and rear double-action shock absorbers compatible with the manufacturer's rated axle capacity at each wheel location.

Springs/Suspension Systems

1. The capacity of the springs or suspension assemblies shall be commensurate with the chassis manufacturer's GVWR.
2. Front springs shall be of the leaf type, shall have a stationary eye at one end, and shall be protected by a wrapper leaf in addition to the main leaf. Rear leaf springs shall be of the progressive type.
3. Air ride suspension may be used on the front and rear of Type C and D buses in lieu of leaf-type springs. Body and chassis parts must clear tires with air bags in fully deflated condition or steering wheel turned fully to the left or right. If brake dust covers are used, inspection holes of adequate size and location for easily viewing brake linings shall be provided.

Steering Gear

1. The steering gear shall be approved by the chassis manufacturer and designed to assure safe and accurate performance when the vehicle is operated with maximum load and at maximum speed.
2. If external adjustments are required, the steering mechanism must be accessible to accomplish the same.
3. No changes shall be made in the steering apparatus, which are not approved by the chassis manufacturer.
4. There shall be a clearance of at least two inches between the steering wheel and the cowl, instrument panel, windshield, or any other surface.
5. Power steering is required and shall be of the integral type with integral valves.
6. The steering system shall be designed to provide a means for lubrication of all wear-points, if wear-points are not permanently lubricated.
7. The steering wheel shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Tires and Rims

1. Radial tubeless tires and rims of proper size and tires with a load rating commensurate with chassis manufacturer's GVWR shall be provided. Hubcaps are not permitted.
2. Dual rear tires shall be provided on all school buses.
3. All tires on any given vehicle shall be of the same size and the load range of said tires shall meet or exceed the gross axle weight rating as required by FMVSS 120.

Low profile tires are acceptable. However, they must meet the load range and ply requirements as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet. It is recommended that dish-type rims be used with low profile tires.

4. If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire and rim assembly, it shall be of the same size as those mounted on the vehicle.
5. If a tire carrier is required, it shall be suitably mounted in an accessible location outside the passenger compartment.

Transmission

An automatic transmission shall be required on all buses. Type A buses may be built to manufacturer's specifications. Types C, and D buses must have a PTS 2500 series or prior approved equal. The automatic transmission shall have at least four forward-gear ratios, plus integral torque converter. The transmission shift quadrant shall provide at least four forward drive ranges plus neutral and reverse ranges. Within the range selected, ratio changes shall be effected automatically and at full engine power if desirable, and without use of an engine disconnect clutch. A PTS3000 or prior approved equal is required for chassis over 33,000 pounds GVWR.

Type C-1 school buses may use Allison PTS 1000 or PTS 2200 automatic transmission or prior approved equal.

Turning Radius

1. Chassis with a wheelbase of 264 inches or less shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 42 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.
2. Chassis with a wheelbase of 265 inches or more shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 44 and 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.

Undercoating

The chassis manufacturer, or agent thereof, shall coat the undersides of steel or metallic-constructed front fenders with rust-proofing compound for which compound manufacturers have issued notarized certification of compliance to the chassis builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C520B using modified test.

Weight Distribution

The weight distribution of a fully loaded bus on a level surface shall be such as not to exceed the manufacturer's front gross axle rating and rear gross axle weight rating.

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

Air Conditioning

All special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. Other buses **may** be equipped with an air conditioning unit at the discretion of the local school system.

Type A school buses may be built to manufacturers standards to include dash mounted evaporator and air duct systems. All Type C and D buses are required to have bulkhead mounted **rear** air conditioner evaporator systems. Front mounted evaporator units on Type C and D buses may include bulkhead-mounted or dash-mounted evaporator units. All other evaporator units shall be side-mounted so as not to interfere with entrance or exit or any wheelchair position. *Evaporator placement shall be agreed upon by school system and school bus manufacturer. Low profile, roof-mount condenser units may be installed upon agreement between manufacturer and local school system.*

All buses ordered with air conditioning shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Floor—All flooring shall be 5/8-inch exterior-grade plywood over steel flooring.
2. All buses shall have a white roof.
3. Windows—All passenger windows shall be tinted with 28% light transmission.
4. All buses shall meet insulation standards as per Alabama bus specifications.
5. *Mud flaps to protect the condenser shall be installed Mud flap placement shall be agreed upon by local school system and bus supplier.*
6. *Be equipped with an automatic high-idle feature.*
7. *All air conditioning components must be rated to meet minimum BTU specifications shown below.*

Minimum BTU air conditioning system per passenger size(*per shell size*):

1. *10-30-passenger - 60,000 BTU includes a minimum of one, 13 cubic inch displacement compressor*
2. *31-48-passenger - 96,000 BTU includes a minimum of two, 10 cubic inch displacement compressors*
3. *49-84-passenger - 120,000 BTU includes a minimum of two, 13 cubic inch displacement compressors*
8. *Skirt-mounted condenser units shall be designed so as to draw sufficient fresh air from outside the skirt area and shall have a shroud installed to protect condenser unit from road dirt and debris. Condensers must have ducting or shrouding from the condenser to the grating at the body side to ensure that condensers do not recirculate the hot air leaving the condenser.*

Aisle

All emergency doors shall be accessible by a 12-inch minimum aisle. The aisle shall be unobstructed at all times.

Back-Up Warning Alarm

An automatic, audible alarm with a minimum of 87dbA and maximum of 112dbA shall be installed behind the rear axle and shall comply with the Society of Automotive Engineers published Back-up Alarm Standards (SAE 994). The alarm shall have a protective deflector shield.

Battery/Batteries

1. Batteries are to be furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
2. When the battery/batteries is mounted as described in the Chassis Standard, the body manufacturer shall securely attach the battery on a slide-out or swing-out tray in a closed, vented compartment in the body skirt, so that the battery is accessible for convenient servicing from the outside. The battery compartment door or cover shall be hinged at the front and secured by an adequate and conveniently-operated latch or other type fastener.

Bumper (Front)

On a Type D school bus, if the chassis manufacturer does not provide a bumper, it shall be provided by the body manufacturer. The bumper will conform to the standards in the chassis section.

Bumper (Rear)

1. Bumpers shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material, at least 3/16-inch thick, and shall be a minimum of 9-1/2 inches wide (high) on all Types C, and D buses. Type A buses shall have a minimum of an 8-inch rear bumper.
2. Bumpers shall be wrapped around the back corners of the bus. It shall extend forward at least 12 inches, measured from the rear-most point of the body at the floor line.
3. Bumpers shall be attached to the chassis frame in such a manner that it may be easily removed. It shall be so braced as to withstand impact from a rear or side impact. It shall be so attached as to discourage hitching of rides.
4. Bumpers shall extend at least one inch beyond rear-most part of body surface measured at the floor line.
4. Tow eyes or hooks may be furnished on the rear and attached so they do not project beyond the rear bumper. The installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's specifications.
5. The bottom of the rear bumper shall not be more than 30 inches above ground level.

Ceiling

See Insulation and Interior, Body Standard.

Certification

The body manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Chains (Tire)

See Wheel Housing Body Standard.

Color

1. The school bus body shall be painted National School Bus Yellow.
2. The body exterior paint trim, bumper, lamp hoods and lettering shall be black.
3. The roof of the bus must be painted white not to extend below the drip rails on the sides of the body.
4. Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) shall be exempt from this requirement. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Communication Systems

Each bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Construction

1. Construction shall be of prime commercial quality steel or other material with strength at least equivalent to all-steel as certified by the bus body manufacturer. All such construction materials shall be fire resistant. No exterior structural, fiberglass roof or side panels are allowed. All Type C and D school buses shall meet the requirements of Section A below.

A. Side Intrusion Test: The bus body shall be constructed to withstand an intrusion force equal to the curb weight of the vehicle or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less. Each vehicle shall be capable of meeting this requirement when tested in accordance with the procedures set forth below. The complete body structure, or a representative seven-body section mock up with seats installed, shall be load-tested at a location 24 ± 2 inches above the floor line, with a maximum 10 inch diameter cylinder, 48 inches long, mounted in a horizontal plane.

The cylinder shall be placed as close as practical to the mid-point of the tested structure, spanning two internal vertical structural members. The cylinder shall be statically loaded to the required force of curb weight or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less, in a horizontal plane with the load applied from the exterior toward the interior of the test structure. When the minimum load has been applied, the penetration of the loading cylinder into the passenger compartment shall not exceed 10 inches from its original point of contact. There can be no separation of lapped panels or construction joints. Punctures, tears or breaks in the external panels are acceptable but are not permitted on any adjacent interior panel. Body companies shall certify compliance with this intrusion

requirement to the Alabama State Department of Education and include test results, as requested.

2. Construction shall be dust proof and watertight, so the bus does not leak under normal operating conditions.
3. Body joints present in that portion of a Type A school bus body furnished exclusively by the body manufacturer shall conform to the performance requirements of FMVSS 221, "School Bus Body Joint Strength." This does not include the body joints created when body components are attached to components furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
4. Type A school bus bodies shall be equipped with restraining barriers conforming to FMVSS 222, "School Bus Passenger Seating--Crash Protection," Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

Crossing Control Arm

1. Buses shall be equipped with a crossing control arm mounted on the right side of the front bumper, which shall not open more than 90 degrees.
2. All components of the crossing control arm and all connections shall be weatherproofed.
3. The crossing control arm shall incorporate system connectors (electrical or air) at the gate and shall be easily removable to allow for towing of the bus.
4. The crossing control arm shall meet or exceed SAE Standard J1133.
5. The crossing control arm shall be constructed of non-corrosive or nonferrous material or treated in accordance with the body sheet metal standard (see Metal Treatment).
6. There shall be no sharp edges or projections that could cause hazard or injury to students.
7. The crossing control arm shall extend at least 70" from the front bumper when in the extended position.
8. The crossing control arms shall extend simultaneously with the stop arm(s) by means of the stop arm controls. An automatic recycling interrupt switch shall be installed to allow the driver to deactivate the control arm when necessary.
9. An electromagnetic device or a stowed bracket shall be installed to stabilize the arm when in the stored position.
10. Crossing control arm shall be Specialty Manufacturing Company, Part #58600, Transpec 4000 series, or prior approved equal.

Defrosters

1. The windshield defroster and defogging system shall provide defogging of the entire windshield, driver's side window, and entrance door glasses by utilizing hot air taken from the heater core with vents across the entire windshield.
2. The defrosting system shall conform to Society of Automotive Engineers' Standards J381 and J382.
3. The defroster and defogging system shall be capable of furnishing heated outside ambient air.
4. Auxiliary fans are not considered defrosting or defogging systems.
5. Portable heaters shall not be used.

Doors

1. Service Door:
 - A. The service door shall be in the driver's control, and designed to afford easy release and provide a positive latching device on manual operating doors to prevent accidental opening. When a hand lever is used, no part shall come together that will shear or crush fingers. Manual door controls shall not require more than 25 pounds of force to operate at any point throughout the range of operation.
 - B. The service door shall be located on the right side of the bus, opposite and within direct view of the driver.
 - C. The service door shall have a minimum horizontal opening of 24 inches and a minimum vertical opening of 68 inches.
 - D. The service door shall be a split type, both sections opening outward.
 - E. Lower, as well as upper door panels, shall be of approved safety glass. The bottom of each lower glass panel shall not be more than 10 inches from the top surface of the bottom step. The top of each upper glass panel shall not be more than 6 inches from the top of the door.
 - F. Vertical closing edges on split type entrance doors shall be equipped with flexible material to protect the children's fingers.
 - G. There shall be no door to the left in driver compartment on Types C or D vehicles.
 - H. All doors shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

- I. If air or electric doors are used, the amber warning lights shall be activated from a momentary switch. A three-position switch shall activate the sequence as follows:
 - Position One – door closed; lights off.
 - Position Two – activate red lights, stop arm, and crossing control arm.
 - Position Three – red lights activated, door open, stop arm activated, and crossing control arm activated.

Emergency Exits

1. Emergency Door:

- A. The emergency door shall be hinged on the right side if in the rear end of bus and on the front side if on left or right side of the bus. It shall open outward and be labeled inside to indicate how it is to be opened. If double emergency doors are used on Type A vehicles, they shall be hinged on the outside edge and shall have a three-point fastening device. A device shall be used that holds the door open to prevent the emergency door from closing during emergencies and school bus evacuation drills. If emergency door locks are used, the vehicle ignition must be disabled until the emergency door lock is deactivated.
- B. The upper portion of the emergency door shall be equipped with approved safety glazing, the exposed area of which shall be at least 400 square inches. The lower portion of the rear emergency door on Types C, and D vehicles shall be equipped with a minimum of 350 square inches of approved safety glazing.
- C. There shall be no steps leading to an emergency door.
- D. The words **EMERGENCY DOOR**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed at the top of or directly above the emergency door or on the door in the metal panel above the top glass, both inside and outside of the bus. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT** in letters at least 2 inches high shall be placed on the exterior body directly above each emergency window.
- E. The emergency door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Padding shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick, and extend the full width of the door opening.
- F. The side emergency door, if installed, must meet the requirements as set forth in FMVSS 217 (a), regardless of its use with any other combination of emergency exits.
 - (1) A left side emergency door shall have a 20 inch unobstructed passageway and no flip seat is to be used. A barrier shall be used just before the door opening.
- G. There shall be no obstruction higher than 1/4 inch across the bottom of any emergency door opening.

2. Additional Emergency Exits:

- A. All school buses shall be equipped with emergency exits in the following capacity vehicles:
 - 0 to 54 passenger: one emergency window exit per side and one roof hatch located midpoint.
 - 55 passenger and above: two emergency window exits per side, and two roof hatches.
- B. Each emergency exit shall comply with FMVSS 217. These emergency exits are in addition to the rear emergency door or exit. Roof hatches must be Transpec Standard Vent, Model 1970, Specialty Manufacturing 8600, 8900, or 9000 series or prior approved equal.
 - (1) Emergency exit windows shall be as evenly spaced as possible under FMVSS 217 guidelines and shall not be obstructed by any devices.
- C. In addition to the audible warning required on emergency doors by FMVSS 217, additional emergency exits shall also be like protected. Warnings for these exits shall be clearly audible to the bus driver.
- D. School bus emergency exits shall be marked with a minimum one inch wide strip of retroreflective tape red, white or yellow in color, to be placed around the outside perimeter of the emergency exit opening, not the emergency exit itself. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed on the body directly above each emergency window.

Emergency Equipment

All emergency equipment shall be installed forward of the front barriers with the exception of the warning devices.

1. Fire Extinguishers:

- A. The bus shall be equipped with at least one steel-cased, pressurized, dry chemical fire extinguisher complete with hose to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., approval. A pressure gauge shall be mounted on the extinguisher and easily read without moving the extinguisher from its mounted position. Replacement fire extinguishers should also meet this specification.

The bracket shall be a heavy-duty, snap-in, spring type. Band type holders are not acceptable. Fire extinguisher brackets shall be Brooks Equipment Company # 4SC or Ridgeway Bus Products # 51-05 or prior approved equal.

- B. The fire extinguisher shall have a capacity of **five pounds** with an Underwriters Laboratories total rating of 2A10BC or greater. The operating mechanism shall be sealed with a type of seal that will not interfere with the use of the fire extinguisher.

- C. Fire extinguishers must comply with State Fire Codes.
2. First-Aid Kit:
 - A. Bus shall have a removable, moisture-proof and dust-proof first-aid kit stored in a metal container and mounted with a separate bracket in an accessible place in driver's compartment. This place shall be marked to indicate its location. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable.
 - B. Contents shall include:
 - 2 1" x 2 1/2 yards adhesive tape rolls
 - 24 sterile gauze pads 3" x 3"
 - 100 3/4" x 3" adhesive bandages
 - 8 2" bandage compress
 - 10 3" bandage compress
 - 2 2" x 6" sterile gauze roller bandages
 - 2 non-sterile triangular bandages approximately 40" x 36" x 54" with
 - 2 safety pins
 - 3 sterile gauze pads 36" x 36"
 - 3 sterile eye pads
 - 1 pair rounded-end scissors
 - 1 pair latex gloves
 - 1 mouth-to-mouth airway
 3. Body Fluid Clean-up Kit:
 - A. Each bus shall have a removable and moisture-proof body fluid clean-up kit stored in a metal container. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable. It shall be properly mounted and identified as a body fluid clean-up kit. Must meet OSHA regulations.
 4. Warning Devices:
 - A. Each school bus shall contain at least three (3) reflectorized triangle road warning devices mounted in an accessible place in the driver's compartment or outside storage compartment. The mounting location in Type A vehicles is optional. These devices must meet requirements in FMVSS 125.

Fire Suppression (Optional)

When a fire suppression system is used, nozzles for suppression systems shall be located in the engine compartment, under the bus, in the electrical panel, or under the dash, but shall not be located in the passenger compartment. The system must include a light or buzzer to alert the driver that the system has been activated.

Floor and Floor Coverings

1. The floor in the underseat area, including the tops of the wheel housing, driver's compartment and toe board, shall be covered with a rubber floor covering or equivalent, having a minimum overall thickness of 1/8 inch and a calculated burn rate of 0.1 or less

using the test measures, procedure and formulas in FMVSS 302 Flammability of Interior Materials.

2. The floor covering in the aisle shall be of aisle-type rubber or equivalent, wear resistant, and ribbed. The minimum overall thickness shall be 3/16 inch measured from tops of ribs.
3. The floor covering must be permanently bonded to the floor and must not crack when subjected to sudden changes in temperature. Bonding or adhesive material shall be waterproof and shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the floor-covering material. All seams must be sealed with waterproof sealer.
4. For Type C and D school buses, the manufacturer shall provide a screw-down plate to access fuel tank sending unit that is secured and insulated. The plate shall be mounted so that access is readily available to repair personnel and so that the floor covering is not disturbed during the repair process.
5. The floor shall be of metal or alloy at least equal in strength to 14-gauge prime commercial quality steel and so constructed that exhaust gases cannot enter the passenger compartment.
6. All closures between the bus body and the engine compartment shall be fitted with gas-tight gaskets and pedal openings shall be closed bellows type, gas-tight boots.
7. There shall be a plate, of adequate size, provided to allow for transmission access or service.

Handrail(s)

At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test. A right-hand side assist rail may be provided at the discretion of the local school system.

Heaters

1. The heating system shall be capable of maintaining the temperature throughout the bus of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit during average minimum January temperatures as established by the U. S. Department of Commerce, Weather Bureau, for the area in which the vehicle is to be operated. Shall be capable of defrosting the total windshield area and the service door glass within thirty minutes after initial start with engine at idle speed. The system shall exceed SAE standards J-381 and J-382 performance requirements. **Fuel-fired auxiliary heaters will not be allowed.**

Heater performance shall be measured by the following:

A temperature measurement shall be taken at three locations within the body. These locations taken in the center aisle, thirty-six inches above the floor. The first location is

to be thirty-nine inches from the windshield; the second location midpoint of the passenger compartment and the third will be thirty-nine inches from the rear emergency door.

After soaking the bus at twenty degrees F. for fifteen (15) hours, the bus will be started and after thirty (30) minutes, the temperature at each measuring point shall be fifty-five (55) degrees F.

2. If only one heater is used, it shall be a fresh-air or combination fresh-air and recirculation type.
3. If more than one heater is used, additional heaters shall be a recirculating-air type.
4. All heaters installed by body manufacturers shall bear a name plate that shall indicate the heater rating in accordance with SBMI Standard No. 001, with said plate to be affixed by the heater manufacturer which shall constitute certification that the heater performance is as shown on the plate.
5. Heater hoses shall be adequately supported to guard against excessive wear due to vibration. The hoses shall not dangle or rub against the chassis or sharp edges and shall not interfere with or restrict the operation of any engine function.
Heater hoses shall conform to the Society of Automotive Engineers' Standard J20c.
Heater lines on the interior of the bus shall be shielded to prevent scalding of the driver or passengers.
6. Each hot water system installed by a body manufacturer shall include one shut-off valve in the pressure line and one shut-off valve in the return line with both valves at or near the engine in an accessible location.
7. There shall be a water flow-regulating valve, or an electronic valve actuator, installed in the pressure line for convenient operation by the driver while seated.
8. Accessible bleeder valves shall be installed in an appropriate place in the return lines of body company-installed heaters to remove air from the heater lines.
9. Access panels shall be provided to make heater motors, cores, and fans readily accessible for service. An outside access panel may be provided for the driver's heater.

Hinges

All exterior metal door hinges which do not have stainless steel, brass, or nonmetallic hinge pins or other designs that prevent corrosion shall be designed to allow lubrication to be channeled to the center 75% of each hinge loop without disassembly.

Identification

1. School bus bodies shall bear the words, **SCHOOL BUS**, in eight-inch black letters on National School Bus Yellow, on the front and back of the bus (lettering between flasher

lights). (See page 51 for Multifunctional School Activity Bus identification requirements.) The name of the school system shall be on each side of the bus in at least 5-inch, black standard, unshaded letters. Lettering shall conform to “Series B” of Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs. Each bus shall be numbered on both sides, front left side and the rear, before being put into service. Bumper numbers may be white or yellow. An agreement between manufacturer and purchaser shall be reached at time order is placed as to who will put the numbers on the buses. Any other numbering shall be optional.

2. Only signs and lettering approved by state law or regulation, limited to the name of the owner or operator and any marking necessary for identification, shall appear on the bus.
3. School bus bodies shall display a high quality 6” x 9” warning sticker on permanent, adhesive, vinyl, bumper-sticker material. To increase visibility, this sticker shall be mounted just under the first or second rub rail at left side of the passenger entrance door. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

UNAUTHORIZED ENTRY ILLEGAL

Any person who attempts to enter a school bus without prior authorization of the driver or other appropriate school official and refuses to leave will be subject to prosecution that may result in fines of up to \$2,000 and up to one year in jail.

Alabama Code Sections 13A-10-2, 13A-7-4

4. Driver Alert Transpec Model 7500 or prior approved equal electronic signage warning traffic when the school bus stops to load or unload students and at railway grade crossings is required.
5. A high quality, 4” x 6”, permanent, adhesive, vinyl, warning sticker prompting drivers that driver seat belt use is mandatory on all school buses shall be affixed in the driver compartment in a highly visible location. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

DRIVER SEAT BELT USE REQUIRED

Driver seat belt use is required at all times when driving this vehicle. Failure to do so could result in disciplinary action up to and including suspension or revocation of your Alabama School Bus Driver Certificate or termination.

Alabama Code Section 16-27-6.

NO TRESPASSING

6. *A “NO TRESPASSING” decal shall be placed in the entrance door stepwell in a highly visible location. Lettering shall be a minimum of 2” high and shall be a contrasting color. These decals must be provided by the school bus dealer or manufacturer.*

Unauthorized Entry Decals and Driver Seat Belt Use Decals are provided by the Alabama State Department of Education.

Inside Height

The inside body height shall be 72 inches or more, measured metal to metal, at any point on the longitudinal center line from the front vertical bow to the rear vertical bow. The inside body height of Type A buses shall be 62 inches or more.

Insulation

1. Ceilings and walls shall be insulated with proper material to deaden sound and reduce vibration to a minimum. If thermal insulation is specified, it shall be fire-resistant and approved by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. If buses are equipped with airconditioning, walls and ceilings must be insulated to improve air conditioner efficiency.
2. If floor insulation is required, it shall be either 5-ply nominal 19/32 inches thick plywood, or a material of equal or greater strength and insulation R value, and it will equal or exceed properties of exterior-type softwood plywood, C-D Grade as specified in standard issued by U. S. Department of Commerce. When plywood is used, all exposed edges shall be sealed.

Interior

1. The interior of the bus shall be free of all unnecessary projections, which include luggage racks and attendant handrails, likely to cause injury. This standard requires inner lining on ceilings and walls. If the ceiling is constructed to contain lapped joints, the forward panel shall be lapped by the rear panel and exposed edges shall be beaded, hemmed, flanged, or otherwise treated to minimize sharp edges.
2. The driver's area forward of the foremost padded barriers will permit the mounting of required safety equipment and vehicle operation equipment.
3. Every school bus shall be constructed so that the noise level taken at the ear of the occupant nearest to the primary vehicle noise source shall not exceed 85 dbA when tested.
4. Any added equipment shall be flush mounted with the exception of the video system.

Lamps and Signals

1. Interior lamps shall be provided which adequately illuminate aisle and step well. Step well lights shall be illuminated by a service door operated switch, to illuminate only when headlights and clearance lights are on and the service door is opened. An optional driver dome light with a separate switch may be installed at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Clearance lamps shall automatically illuminate when the headlights are in the "on" position.
3. L.E.D. lighting shall be used in all exterior body lamps and signals. Eight-way flashing lights and stop arm shall be strobe-type L.E.D. Manufacturers' front chassis lamps are exempt from this requirement.

4. Definition--School bus alternately flashing red and amber signal lamps are lamps mounted at the same horizontal level, intended to identify the vehicle as a school bus and to inform other users of the highway that such vehicle is preparing to stop, or is stopped, on the roadway to take on or to discharge schoolchildren.
 - A. Master switches will not be allowed on the eight-way, alternately flashing signal lamps.
 - B. Buses shall be equipped with two red lamps and two amber lamps at the rear of the vehicle and two red lamps and two amber lamps at the front of the vehicle. One amber lamp shall be located near each red signal lamp at the same level, but closer to the vertical centerline of the bus.
 - C. The signaling system, including red and amber signal lamps and a stop arm with alternating flashing lamps, shall be so designed and wired as to have the following characteristics:
 - (1) When the entrance door is closed, a manual push button may be depressed and the amber pilot light and amber warning lights will flash.
 - (2) When the entrance door is opened, the amber pilot and amber warning lights will go off, and the red pilot and red warning lights will flash; also, the stop arm will be extended and lights on the stop arm will flash.
 - (3) On closing the entrance door, all lights will go out and the stop arm retract automatically.
 - (4) If the entrance door is opened without depressing the manual push button, no lights will flash, nor will the stop arm be extended.
 - D. The area around the lenses of alternately flashing signal lamps shall have a readily visible black border for contrast purposes. Hoods/guards may be provided over front and rear amber warning lights and red warning lights.
5. Bus body shall be equipped with amber rear turn signal lamps at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area. These signal lamps must be connected to the chassis hazard-warning switch to cause simultaneous flashing of signal lamps when needed as a vehicular traffic hazard warning.
6. Rear directional lights shall be mounted not more than 15 inches from the plane of the side of the body, and not more than 14 inches below the glass in the rear of the body. All buses shall have side turn indicators on both sides located within six inches of the floor line.

7. Buses shall be equipped with two red, brake/tail combination lights at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area and shall be mounted on the rear of the bus just inside the turn signal lamps.
 - A. Type A conversion vehicle lamps must be 21 square inches in the lens area. Two combination lamps with a minimum diameter of four inches, or if a shape other than round, a minimum 12 square inches of illuminated area shall be placed on the rear of the body between the beltline and the floor line. The rear license plate lamp may be combined with one lower tail lamp. Stop lamps shall be activated by the service brakes and shall emit a steady light when illuminated.
 - B. In addition to these requirements, all lamps and signals shall comply with applicable SAE specifications.
8. On all buses equipped with a monitor for the front and rear lamps of the school bus, the monitor shall be mounted in full view of the driver. If the full circuit current passes through the monitor, each circuit shall be protected by a fuse or circuit breakers or other equivalent technology against any short circuit or intermittent shorts.
9. A white flashing strobe light shall be installed on the roof of a school bus not to exceed 1/3 the body length forward from the rear of the roof edge. This light shall have a single white lens emitting light 360 degrees around its vertical axis and may not extend above the roof more than the maximum legal height. A momentary, latching-type switch and a pilot light of low intensity must be included to indicate when the light is in operation. The pilot light shall be incorporated into the switch.
10. If alternating headlights are used (i.e., wig-wag), they must operate in conjunction with the red overhead flashers and stop arm.
11. As an option, other lighting devices may be used with prior approval from SDE.

Metal Treatment

1. All metal used in construction of a bus body shall be zinc-coated or aluminum-coated or treated by an equivalent process before the bus is constructed. Included are such items as structural members, inside and outside panels, door panels and floor sills. Excluded are such items as door handles, grab handles, interior decorative parts and other interior plated parts.
2. In addition to the above requirements, all metal parts that will be painted shall be chemically cleaned, etched, zinc-phosphate-coat and zinc-chrome or epoxy primed or conditioned by equivalent process.
3. In providing for these requirements, particular attention shall be given to lapped surfaces, welded connections of structural members, cut edges punched or drilled hole areas in sheet metal, closed or box sections, unvented or undrained areas and surfaces subjected to abrasion during vehicle operation.

4. As evidence that the above requirements have been met, samples of materials and sections used in construction of the bus body, when subjected to 1,000-hour salt spray test as provided for in latest revision of ASTM Standard B-117 "Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing" shall not lose more than 10 percent of its material by weight.

Mirrors

1. Interior mirrors shall be either clear laminated glass or clear view glass bonded to a backing, which retains the glass in the event of breakage. Mirrors shall have rounded corners and protected edges. Type A buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 16" mirror and Type C, and D buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 30" mirror. It shall be securely attached on the windshield header and so located as to give the driver a clear view of the entire interior of the bus and the road behind.
2. Each school bus shall be equipped with a system of exterior mirrors as defined in FMVSS 111.
 - A. Rear vision mirrors shall be capable of providing a view along the left and right sides of the vehicle which will provide the driver with a view of the rear tires at ground level, a minimum distance of 200 feet to the rear of the bus and at least 12 feet perpendicular to the side of the bus at a distance of 32 feet back from the front bumper.
 - B. The cross view mirror system shall provide the driver with indirect vision of an area at ground level from the front bumper forward and the entire width of the bus to a point where the driver can see by direct vision. The cross view system shall also provide the driver with direct vision of the area at ground level around the left and right front corners of the bus to include the tires and service entrance on all types of buses to a point where it overlaps with the rear vision mirror system. A metal reinforcement plate shall be installed under the hood area of fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite hoods in order to reinforce cross view mirror mounting base area.
 - C. This system of mirrors shall be easily adjustable but be rigidly braced to reduce vibration.
3. Heated and/or remote controlled external, rearview mirrors may be used.

Mounting

1. The chassis frames shall support the rear body cross member. The bus body shall be attached to the chassis frame at each main floor sill, except where chassis components interfere, in such a manner as to prevent shifting or separation of the body from the chassis under severe operating conditions.
2. Insulation material shall be placed at all contact points between the body and chassis frame on Types A, C and D buses, and shall be so attached to the chassis frame or body that it will not move under severe operating conditions.

Noise Suppression Switch

There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. This switch or switch background shall be red or yellow and labeled. This switch shall be an on/off-type

(not momentary) that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. For Type A buses, all radios or communication devices shall be ordered as a body accessory and must be wired thru the noise suppression switch.

Overall Length

The overall length of the bus shall not exceed 45 feet excluding accessories.

Overall Width

The overall width of the bus shall not exceed 102 inches excluding accessories.

Public Address System

Buses may be equipped with a public address system having interior and exterior speakers. Interior speakers shall be flush mounted with bulkhead. No internal speakers other than the driver's communication systems may be installed within four feet of the driver's seat back in its rearmost, upright position.

Retroreflective Material

1. The front and/or rear bumper may be marked diagonally 45 degrees down to the centerline of the pavement with 2" x 1/4" wide strips of non-contrasting retroreflective material.
2. The rear of the bus body shall be marked with strips of retroreflective National School Bus Yellow (NSBY) material to outline the perimeter of the back of the bus using material which conforms with the requirements of FMVSS 571.131 (Table I). The perimeter marking of rear emergency exits per FMVSS 217 and/or the use of retroreflective SCHOOL BUS signs partially accomplish the objective of this requirement. To complete the perimeter marking of the back of the bus, strips of at least one-inch retroreflective NSBY material shall be applied horizontally above the rear windows and above the rear bumper, extending from the rear emergency exit perimeter marking outward to the left and rear corners of the bus. Vertical strips shall be applied at the corners connecting these horizontal strips.
3. **SCHOOL BUS** signs, if not of a lighted design, shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material comprising a background for lettering of the front and/or rear **SCHOOL BUS** signs.
4. The sides of the bus body shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material at least one inch in width, extending the length of the bus body and located (vertically) between the floor line and the belt line.

Rub Rails

1. There shall be one rub rail located on each side of the bus approximately at seat level which shall extend from the rear side of the entrance door completely around the bus body (except emergency door or any maintenance access door) to a point of curvature near the outside cowl on the left side.

2. There shall be one additional rub rail located approximately at the floor line which shall cover the same longitudinal area as the upper rub rail, except at the wheel housing, and shall extend only to radii of the right and left rear corners.
3. Rub rails above the floor line shall be attached at each body post and all other upright structural members.
4. Each rub rail shall be 4 inches or more in width in their finished form, shall be of 16-gauge metal or other suitable material of equivalent strength, suitable to protect body side panels from damage. Rub rails shall be constructed in a corrugated or ribbed fashion.
5. Rub rails shall be applied to the outside of the body or outside body posts. Pressed-in or snap-on rub rails do not satisfy this requirement. For Type A1 vehicles using a chassis manufacturer's body, or for Types A2, C, and D buses using rear luggage or rear engine compartments, rub rails need not extend around rear corners.
6. The bottom edge of the body side skirts shall be stiffened by application of a rub rail, or the edge may be stiffened by providing a flange or other stiffeners.

Seat Belt for Driver

1. The driver's seat shall be equipped with the seat belt anchored to the floor, housed in scabbard and equipped with an emergency locking retractor (one side only). The driver's seat shall be equipped with a Type II occupant protection (lap and shoulder belt). Adjustability of the mounting point for the driver's seat belt pillar loop shall be provided to accommodate all heights and weights of bus drivers without interference with the driver's face or neck. The requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210 shall be met. Integrated seat belts in the driver's seat may be used at the discretion of the local school system.
2. *All buses must be equipped with at least one belt cutter.* Buses equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts for student seating shall contain at least two belt cutters. One belt cutter must be properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into the driver's seat. Belt cutters shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
3. **The driver's seat belt shall be high visibility orange or lime green in color on all buses except Type A. All Type C and D buses must be equipped with a continuous audible and visual warning signal activated when the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the ignition is in the on position. The warning signal shall be different from low air or emergency exit buzzer. Type A buses must be equipped with warning buzzers as per manufacturer's standard.**

Seats and Crash Barriers

All Type A1 buses, 14,500 pounds GVWR and under shall be equipped with lap/shoulder belts and must meet FMVSS 209 requirements.

1. Seats shall be spaced to obtain a minimum of 24-inch hip-to-knee room measured horizontally at the seat cushion level at the transverse centerline of the seat. In making this measurement from the back of the seat cushion to the back of the seat or barrier in front, upholstery may be placed against padding both forward and rear but padding may not be compressed. Greater seat spacing may be specified on local bids not to exceed the maximum allowable per FMVSS 222.
2. In determining seating capacity of standard school buses, the allowable average rump width shall be 13 inches where a 3-3 seating plan is used, and thirteen (13) or 15 inches where 3-2 seating plan is used on specially-equipped buses.
3. All seats shall be bench style, forward facing, have a minimum depth of 15 inches and conform to the seatback height requirements of FMVSS 222. No transit or activity seat will be used. There shall be no armrest on student seats. No bus shall be equipped with jump seats or portable seats.
4. All seat frames attached to the seat rail shall be fastened with two (2) bolts, washers and nuts or flange-headed nuts. Each seat leg shall be secured to the floor by a minimum of two (2) bolts, washers and nuts. Flange-head nuts may be used in lieu of nuts and washers, or seats may be track-mounted in conformance with FMVSS 222. If track seating is installed, the manufacturer shall supply minimum and maximum seat spacing dimensions applicable to the bus, which comply with FMVSS 222. This information shall be on a label permanently affixed to the bus.
5. The forward most pupil seat on the right side of the bus shall be located so as not to interfere with the driver's vision, not farther forward than the barrier behind the driver or the rear of the driver's seat when adjusted to its rear-most position.
6. All seats and backs shall be a standard color unless changed by purchaser. Seat and back cushions of all seats shall be designed to safely support the designated number of passengers under normal road conditions encountered in school-bus service. All seat coverings shall meet FMVSS regulations and School Bus Manufacturer Technical Council Guidelines.
7. The driver seat shall be of the high back, air **or** mechanical suspension, box pedestal-type with a minimum seat back adjustment of 15 degrees and with a head restraint to accommodate a 95 percentile adult male (95 percentile adult male as defined in FMVSS 208). The driver's seat shall be secured with nuts, bolts, and washers or flanged-headed nuts. The driver's seat shall have a minimum distance between the steering wheel and seatback of not less than eleven inches, with a minimum aft adjustment of six inches. The seat shall be contoured with adequate padding and support on the sides and shall have a cloth cover. It shall be designed to provide lumbar support and shall be positioned on the centerline of the steering wheel.
8. All restraining barriers and passenger seats shall be constructed with materials that, at

a minimum, meet the criteria contained in the School Bus Seat Upholstery Fire Resistant Test.

9. A driver storage pouch shall be provided on the front of the barrier behind driver's seat. This pouch shall be fire resistant and the same color as the bus seats.
10. Crash barriers shall be placed behind the driver's seat and step well. An aluminized courtesy panel on the right side of the bus shall extend to the floor and to the wall. Stanchions are not acceptable.
11. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-age Children in School Buses.

Steering Wheel

See Chassis Standard.

Steps

1. The first step at the service door shall be no less than 10 inches and no more than 14 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step. Ground clearance shall be no less than 10 inches.

A. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step.

2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by the thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

Step Treads

1. All steps, excluding the floor line platform area, shall be covered with a 3/16-inch pebble-tread-type, rubber floor covering or other materials equal in wear and abrasion resistance to top grade rubber.
2. The backing of the step tread may be a minimum 24-gauge cold roll steel or polymer and shall be permanently bonded to the rubber surface.
3. The step tread shall have a 1 and 1/2 inch white nosing as an integral piece without any joint.
4. The rubber portion of step treads shall have the following characteristics:
 - A. Special compounding for good abrasion resistance and high coefficient of friction.

- B. Flexibility so that it can be bent around a 1/2 inch mandrel both at 130 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 degrees Fahrenheit without breaking, cracking, or crazing.
- C. Show a durometer hardness of 85 to 95.

Stirrup Step

There shall be one stirrup step on all Types C, and D buses on each side of the front of the body for use in cleaning the windshield and lamps. There shall be one handle on each side, at least eight inches in length suitably located for the driver to use while cleaning the windshield and lamps. The stirrup steps and the handles shall be of rust-resistant material. Transit buses shall have provisions for cleaning the windshield. Toe eyes in the bumper with a handle(s), above the windshield, are acceptable.

Stop Arm Signal

All stop arm signals shall be of the strobe-type and have high-intensity, retroreflective coating. The stop signal - arm(s) shall comply with the requirements of FMVSS 131.

Stop Arm Signal - Rear (Optional)

A rear stop arm is permissible when used in conjunction with the original stop arm. The rear stop arm location on dual stop arm-equipped buses shall be on the left side of the bus, as close as is practical to the left rear corner of the body. Airlines, if used, must not be readily accessible to students inside or outside of the bus.

Storage Compartment

A lockable, waterproof, exterior storage compartment may be located on the bus body at the discretion of the local school system. The minimum size of the storage compartment shall be 12 inches high, 15 inches deep, and 25 inches wide and shall be marked "storage". Alternate storage compartment locations should be specified in local school system bid specifications.

All lockable interior storage compartments containing emergency equipment shall be equipped with a warning buzzer installed so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked. All such compartments shall be clearly labeled as to containing emergency equipment.

Sun Shield

Each Type C and D school bus shall have an interior adjustable sun visor with minimum measurements of 6 inches by 30 inches. It shall be installed in a position convenient for use by the driver, anchored on both ends, and shall be tinted transparent plastic or phlex-o-glass. On all Type A buses, the sun shield shall be the manufacturer's standard. An additional sun shield may be added over the left side driver window at option of the local school system.

Tailpipe

See Chassis Standard.

Traction-Assisting Devices

1. Where required or used, sanders shall:
 - A. Be of the hopper cartridge-valve type.

- B. Have a metal hopper with all interior surfaces treated to prevent condensation of moisture.
 - C. Be of at least 100-pound (grit) capacity.
 - D. Have a cover on the filler opening of the hopper, which screws into place, sealing the unit airtight.
 - E. Have discharge tubes extending to the front of each rear wheel under the fender.
 - F. Have no-clogging discharge tubes with slush-proof, non-freezing rubber nozzles.
 - G. Be operated by an electric switch with a telltale pilot light mounted on the instrument panel.
 - H. Be exclusively driver controlled.
 - I. Have a gauge to indicate the hopper needs refilling when it is down to one quarter full.
2. Automatic traction chains may be installed.

Trash Container and Holding Device

1. Where required or used, the trash container shall:
 - A. Be of fire resistant polyethylene or equivalent material.
 - B. Be no greater than 14-quart capacity.
 - C. Be secured by a holding device that is designed to prevent movement and allow easy removal and replacement.
 - D. Be installed in an accessible location in the driver's compartment, not obstructing passenger use of the service door or access to emergency equipment.

Undercoating

1. The entire underside of the bus body, including floor sections, the cross member and below floor line side panels, shall be coated with rust-proofing the compound for which compound manufacturer has issued notarized certification of compliance to the bus body builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C-250b using modified test procedures for the following requirements*:
 - A. Salt spray resistance-pass modified to 5% salt and 1000 hours.
 - B. Abrasion resistance-pass.
 - C. Fire resistance-pass.

*Test panels are to be prepared in accordance with paragraph 4.6.12 of TT-C-520b with the modified procedure requiring that the test be made on a 48-hour air-cured film at a thickness recommended by the compound manufacturer.

2. The undercoating compound shall be applied with suitable airless or conventional spray equipment to recommend film thickness and shall show no evidence of voids in cured film.

Ventilation

1. Auxiliary fans if installed shall meet the following requirements:
 - A. Fans for left and right sides shall be placed in a location where they can be adjusted for maximum effectiveness and do not obstruct vision to any mirror. **NOTE:** All Type A buses may be equipped with one fan.
 - B. Fans shall be a nominal 6" diameter.
 - C. Fan blades shall be covered with a protective cage. Each fan shall be controlled by a separate switch.
2. The body shall be equipped with a suitably controlled ventilating system of sufficient capacity to maintain the proper quantity of air under operating conditions, without having to open windows except in extremely warm weather.
3. A static-type, non-closeable exhaust ventilator shall be installed in the roof.

Video Surveillance Equipment

1. Video equipment *shall* be installed on all school buses. All video equipment shall be digital with a *minimum of four camera positions on Type C and D buses*. One camera position must show driver compartment, to include entrance door area. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**
2. While video equipment does not have to be flush mounted, positioning of video surveillance equipment shall not interfere with the safe operation of the bus or student safety. It is recommended that the SDE be contacted prior to the installation of new video equipment.

Wheel Housing

1. The wheel-housing opening shall allow for easy tire removal and service.
2. The wheel housing shall be attached to the floor sheets in such a manner as to prevent any dust, water or fumes from entering the body. The wheel housing shall be constructed of at least 16-gauge steel or other material of equal tensile strength.
3. The inside height of the wheel housing above the floor line shall not exceed 12 inches.
4. The wheel housing shall provide clearance for installation and use of tire chains on single and dual (if so equipped) power-driving wheels.
5. No part of a raised wheel housing shall extend into the emergency door opening.

Windshield and Windows

1. All glass in the windshield, the windows, and doors shall be of approved safety glass so mounted that a permanent mark is visible and of sufficient quality as to prevent distortion of view in any direction.
2. Glass in the windshield shall be heat absorbent, laminated plate. The windshield shall be large enough to permit the driver to see the roadway clearly, shall be slanted to reduce glare, and shall be installed between the front corner posts that are so designed and placed as to afford minimum obstruction to the driver's view of the roadway.
3. All full side windows shall open vertically so as to provide an unobstructed opening of not less than 9 inches high and 22 inches wide, obtained by lowering the window. Windows shall be a split-sash type and so installed as to provide an emergency exit. There shall be no horizontal, transit or activity-style windows in the student compartment.
4. All exposed edges of glass shall meet FMVSS requirements.
5. A tinted and shaded windshield with 73% light transmitted and a six-inch shaded band across the top shall be installed at the factory. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturers one-piece windshield may be equipped with an O.E.M. shade band windshield with a band of approximately 4 inches in height.
6. All windows in the passenger compartment shall be tinted with 28% light transmitted. The driver's compartment side window and entrance door windows shall be tinted with 70- 75% light transmitted.

Windshield Washers

A windshield washer system shall be provided that will service the entire wiped surface area.

Windshield Wipers

1. A windshield wiping system, two speed or variable speed, with an intermittent feature shall be provided. The wipers shall meet the requirements of FMVSS 104.
2. The wipers shall be operated by one or more air or electric motors of sufficient power to operate the wipers. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-piece windshield may be equipped with two wipers driven by either one or two electric motors.

Wiring

1. All wiring shall conform to current standards of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
2. Circuits

- A. Wiring shall be arranged in circuits as required with each circuit protected by a circuit breaker or electronic protection device. A system of color and number coding shall be used and an appropriate identifying diagram shall be provided to the end user along with the wiring diagram provided by the chassis manufacturer. **A system of color and number coding shall be used on buses. The following body interconnecting circuits shall be color-coded as noted:**

<u>Function</u>	<u>Color</u>
Left Rear Directional Light	Yellow
Right Rear Directional Light	Dark Green
Stoplights	Red
Back-up Lights	Blue
Taillights	Brown
Ground	White
Ignition Feed, Primary Feed	Black

The color of cables shall correspond to SAE J1128.

- B. Wiring shall be arranged in at least six regular circuits as follows:
- (1) Head, tail, stop (brake) and instrument panel lamps.
 - (2) Clearance and step well lamps. The step well lamp shall be actuated when the service door is opened.
 - (3) Dome lamp.
 - (4) Ignition and emergency exits signal.
 - (5) Turn signal lamps.
 - (6) Alternately flashing signal lamps.
- C. Any of the above combination circuits may be subdivided into additional independent circuits.
- D. Each heater and defroster shall have its own circuit breakers or other equivalent technology.
- E. Whenever possible, all other electrical functions (such as sanders and electric-type windshield wipers) shall be provided with independent and properly protected circuits.
- F. Each body circuit shall be coded by number or letter on a diagram of circuits and shall be attached to the body in readily accessible location.

- G. There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. The switch shall be labeled and alternately colored. This switch shall be an on/off-type that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. Noise suppression switch on Type AI buses shall be limited to bus body accessories.
3. The entire electrical system of the body shall be designed for the same voltage as the chassis on which the body is mounted.
 4. All wiring shall have an amperage capacity equal to or exceeding the designed load. All wiring splices are to be done at an accessible location and noted as splices on the wiring diagram.
 5. A body-wiring diagram of easily readable size shall be furnished with each bus body or affixed in an area convenient to the electrical accessory control panel.
 6. The body power wire shall be attached to a special terminal on the chassis.
 7. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet.
 8. Wires and tubing shall be enclosed within body panels.

SECTION IV –SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction

Equipping buses to accommodate students with special needs is discretionary depending upon the needs of the passengers. While one bus may be fitted with a lift, another may have seat belts installed to secure child seats. Buses so equipped are not to be considered a separate class of school bus, but simply a regular school bus, which is equipped for special accommodations.

The specifications in this section are intended to be supplementary to specifications in the chassis and body sections. In general, specially equipped buses shall meet all the requirements of the preceding sections plus those listed in this section. It is recognized by the entire industry that the field of special transportation is characterized by varied needs for individual cases and by a rapidly emerging technology for meeting those needs. A flexible, “common sense” approach to the adoption and enforcement of specifications for these vehicles, therefore, is prudent.

By federal regulation, buses, including school buses, are defined as vehicles designed to carry eleven or more (passengers including the driver). Vehicles designed with 10 or fewer passenger positions (including the driver) cannot be certified as buses. For this reason, the federal vehicle classification Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle, or MPV, must be used by manufacturers for these vehicles in lieu of the School Bus. In determining passenger capacity, wheelchair positions are counted as passenger positions. This classification system, while requiring compliance with a less stringent set of Federal Standards for MPV’s does not preclude state or local agencies or these specifications from requiring compliance of school bus-type MPV’s with the more stringent Federal Standards for school buses.

The following standards address modifications as they pertain to school buses that, with a standard seating arrangement prior to modification, would accommodate more than 10 persons. If by addition of a power lift, mobile seating device positions or other modifications, the capacity is reduced such that vehicles become MPV’s, the intent of these standards is to have these vehicles be required to meet the same standards they would have had to meet prior to such modifications, and such MPV’s are included in all references to school buses and requirements for school buses which follow:

Definition – Specially-Equipped School Bus

A specially-equipped school bus is any school bus that is primarily designed, equipped, or modified to accommodate students with special needs.

General Requirements

1. School buses designed for transporting students with special transportation needs shall comply with these specifications and with FMVSS applicable to their GVWR category.
2. Any school bus to be used for the transportation of children who are confined to a wheelchair or other mobile positioning device, or who require life support equipment which prohibits use of the regular service entrance, shall be equipped with a power lift, unless a ramp is needed for unusual circumstances related to passenger needs.

3. School buses used to transport children confined to wheelchairs or other mobile positioning devices **shall meet either item A or B below.**
- A. Type C and D buses with wheelchair positions mounted forward of the rear axle shall have a 30-inch aisle to both front entrance and rear emergency exit door.
- B. Type C and D buses equipped with a rear-mounted wheelchair lift, and wheelchair seating positions in the rear shall have air-ride suspension on the rear. School buses using this configuration must employ 3-2 (39"-30") seating to allow access to the front door exit in case of emergency.

Type A school buses 14,500 lbs. GVWR and below are exempt from these requirements.

- C. *A locking storage compartment shall be provided in the driver area suitable to store an 8.5" x 11", 3-ring binder.*

Air Conditioning

Special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. **Refer to page 14, School Bus Body Standards, for minimum air conditioning standards.**

Aisles

All buses equipped with a power lift shall provide sufficient aisle space to enable emergency evacuation through front and rear exits. For specific requirements refer to 3A and 3B in the General Requirements above.

Communication System

Each special needs bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Crash Barriers

1. Crash barrier shall be placed between the lift and any seat position (bench seat or wheelchair position). Stanchions are not acceptable.
2. There shall be a padded crash barrier approximately 8 inches in front of the forward edge of the seat cushion of all passenger seats that do not have another seat approximately 27 inches in front of them. There shall be a padded crash barrier or seat in front of any wheelchair position unless it is contiguous with and behind another wheelchair position. The forward-most barrier on both sides of the bus shall have a full-width, aluminized courtesy panel extending to the floor.

Evacuation Blanket

A minimum of two fire-retardant, evacuation blankets, Tie Tech Evacuation Transporter Part # 1013, or prior approved equal, and storage pouch shall be provided. **The location to**

secure the evacuation blanket shall be easily accessible and determined by the purchaser at the time of the bid.

Glazing

Tinted glazing may be installed in all doors, windows and windshield consistent with federal, state, and local regulations.

Identification

Buses with power lifts used for transporting physically handicapped students shall display three universal handicapped symbols located below the windowpane. Such emblems shall be white on blue background, shall not exceed 12 inches in size, and shall be of a high-intensity retroreflectorized material meeting U. S. Department of Transportation FHWA FP-85 Standards. Symbols shall be located on the lift door, the rear of the bus, and the front left side of the bus.

Passenger Capacity Rating

In determining the passenger capacity of a school bus for purposes other than actual passenger load (i.e., vehicle classification, or various billing/reimbursement models), any location in a school bus intended for securing an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid during vehicle operations may be regarded as four designated seating positions. Similarly, each lift area may be regarded as four designated seating positions.

Power Lift

1. The option shall be provided to the local purchaser to have the lift located either in front of or behind the rear wheels, on the right side of the bus, but confined within the bus body when not extended. *A device shall be installed to prevent lift from deploying if hydraulic pressure leaks down.*
2. All lifts shall be fully automatic with sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility user to reach a securement location.
3. The designload of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least 6 (six), based on the ultimate strength of the material. Non-working parts, such as the platform, frame, and attachment hardware, which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least 3 (three), based on the ultimate strength of the material.
4. The lifting mechanism and platform shall be able to lift a minimum of 800 pounds.
5. Controls shall be provided that enable the operator to activate the lift mechanism from either inside or outside the bus. The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, transmission, or door, as required by FMVSS 403 and 404. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact

type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

6. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied. No manual emergency operation shall require more than 2 (two) minutes to lower an occupied wheelchair to ground level.
7. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches per second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.
8. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the platform during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the platform is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform, which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position, shall have a barrier a minimum 1 and 1/2 inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier), which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically raise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the platform is more than 3 inches above the roadway or sidewalk and the platform is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged, or disengaged by the lift operator, provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.
9. The platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over 1/4 inch high and shall be slip resistant. The platform shall have a minimum width of 34 inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the platform surface to 30 inches above the surface of the platform, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface of the platform.
10. Any openings between the platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed 5/8 inches in width. When the platform is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and the vehicle floor shall not exceed 1/2 inches horizontally and 5/8 inches vertically.

11. The outboard entrance ramp or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp and the transition plate from the inboard edge of the platform to the vehicle floor shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of three inches, and the transition from roadway or sidewalk to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to 1/4 inches.

Thresholds between 1/4 inch and 1/2 inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

12. The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than three degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll or pitch) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 60 pounds applied through a 26" by 26" test pallet at the centroid of the platform.
13. No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches per second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches per second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3 g.
14. The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchair and mobility aid users.
15. Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces, or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The platform may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.
16. Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1 and 1/4 inches and 1 and 1/2 inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than 1/8 inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1 and 1/2" knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle. Any wheelchair frame utilizing a horizontal overhead support shall have padding at least 1" in thickness extending the full width of support.
17. Re-settable circuit breakers or other equivalent technology shall be installed between the power source and the lift motor if electrical power is used. It shall be located as close to the power source as possible, but not within the passenger/driver compartment.

18. Lift design shall prevent excessive pressure that could damage the lift system when the platform is fully lowered or raised, or that could jack the vehicle.
19. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a lift:
 - A. A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - B. Detailed instructions regarding use of the lift, readily visible when the lift door is open, including a diagram showing the proper placement and positioning of wheelchair/mobility aids on lift.
20. The lift manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the lift. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
21. Each lift shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses. In addition, the lift manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request of the original titled purchaser, shall provide a **Notarized Certificate of Conformance**, either original or photocopied, which states that the lift system meets all the applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses.

Ramp

Emergency ramps may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Regular Service Entrance

1. Steps
 - A. The first step at the service door shall be not less than 10 inches and not more than 14 inches from the ground when measured from the top of the step based on standard chassis specifications.
 - B. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

5. At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test.
6. An assist rail shall be provided on the right-hand side.

Restraining Devices

1. On power-lift equipped vehicles, seat frames may be equipped with attachments or devices to which belts, restraining harnesses or other devices may be attached. Attachment framework or anchorage devices, if installed, shall conform to FMVSS 210.
2. Seat belt assemblies are optional. Seat belt assemblies may be installed on special needs buses. If seat belt assemblies are installed on special needs buses, they shall be of the lap/shoulder belt configuration. Seat belt assemblies shall be installed by the manufacturer, and must conform to FMVSS 209. Type A school buses with a GVWR of 14,500 pounds or below are required to have lap/shoulder belt assemblies.
3. Child restraint systems, which are used to facilitate the transportation of children who in other modes of transportation would be required to use a child, infant, or booster seat, shall conform to FMVSS 213 and 222.
4. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "**Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-Age Children in School Buses.**"

Seating Arrangements

Flexibility in seat spacing to accommodate special circumstances shall be permitted to meet passenger requirements. All seating shall be forward facing. **Floor plans for special needs buses shall be designed with emphasis on placing wheelchair positions forward of the rear axle.**

Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant

For purposes of better understanding the various aspects and components of this section, the term securement or phrase securement system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s), which secure the wheelchair/mobility aid. The term restraint or phrase restraint system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s) used to restrain the occupant of the wheelchair/mobility aid. The phrase securement and restraint system is used to refer to the total system, which secures and restrains both the wheelchair/mobility aid and the occupant.

1. Securement and restraint system--general
 - A. The Wheelchair/Mobility Aid Securement and Occupant Restraint System shall be designed, installed, and operated to accommodate passengers in a forward-facing orientation within the bus and shall comply with all applicable requirements of FMVSS 222. Gurney-type devices shall be secured parallel to the side of each bus.

- B. The securement and restraint system, including the system track, floor plates, pockets, or other anchorages shall be provided by the same manufacturer, or be certified to be compatible by manufacturers of all equipment/systems used.
- C. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device and an occupant restraint share a common anchorage, including occupant restraint designs that attach the occupant restraint to the securement device or the wheelchair/mobility aid, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the loads of both the securement device and occupant restraint applied simultaneously, in accordance with FMVSS 222 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- D. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) is shared with an occupant restraint, the wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a force twice the amount as specified in Section 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- E. The bus body floor and sidewall structures where the securement and restraint system anchorages are attached shall have equal or greater strength than the load requirements of the system(s) being installed.
- F. The occupant restraint system shall be designed to be attached to the bus body either directly or in combination with the wheelchair/mobility aid securement system, by a method, which prohibits the transfer of weight or force from the wheelchair/mobility aid to the occupant in the event of an impact.
- G. When an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the securement and restraint system shall limit the movement of the occupied wheelchair/mobility aid to no more than 2 inches in any direction under normal driving conditions.
- H. The securement and restraint system shall incorporate an identification scheme, which will allow for the easy identification of the various components and their functions. It shall consist of one of the following, or combination thereof:
 - (1) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement (webbing or strap assemblies) and the occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be of contrasting color or color shade.
 - (2) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assemblies) and occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be clearly marked to indicate the proper wheelchair orientation in the vehicle, and the name and location for each device or belt assembly; i.e., front, rear, lap belt, shoulder belt.
- I. All attachment or coupling devices designed to be connected or disconnected frequently shall be accessible and operable without the use of tools or other mechanical assistance.

- J. The securement and restraint system hardware and components shall be free of sharp or jagged areas and shall be of a non-corrosive material or treated to resist corrosion in accordance with Section 4.3(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - K. The securement and restraint system shall be located and installed such that when an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured, it does not block access to the lift door or emergency door.
 - L. A device for storage of the securement and restraint system shall be provided. When the system is not in use, the storage device shall allow for clean storage of the system, shall keep the system securely contained within the passenger compartment, shall provide reasonable protection from vandalism, and shall enable the system to be readily accessed for use.
 - M. The entire securement and restraint system, including the storage device, shall meet the flammability standards established in FMVSS 302.
 - N. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) and restraint belt assembly shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable FMVSS requirements. In addition, the system manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request by the original titled purchaser, shall provide a notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system meets all of the requirements as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - O. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a securement and restraint system:
 - (1) A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - (2) Detailed instructions regarding use, including a diagram showing the proper placement of the wheelchair/mobility aids and positioning of securement devices and occupant restraints, including correct belt angles.
 - P. The system manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
2. Wheelchair/mobility aid securement system
- A. Each securement system location shall consist of a minimum of four anchorage points. A minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in front of the

wheelchair/mobility aid and a minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in the rear. The securement anchorages shall be attached to the floor of the vehicle and shall not interfere with passenger movement or present any hazardous condition.

- B. Each securement system location shall have a minimum clear floor area of 30" x 48". Additional floor area may be required for some applications. Consultation between the user and the manufacturer is recommended to ensure adequate area is provided.
 - C. The securement system shall secure common wheelchair/mobility aids and shall be able to be attached easily by a person having average dexterity and who is familiar with the system and wheelchair/mobility aid.
 - D. As installed, each securement anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222. When multiple securement devices share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the force indicated above, multiplied by the number of securement devices sharing that anchorage.
 - E. Each securement device, if incorporating webbing or a strap assembly, shall comply with the requirements for Type 1 safety belt systems, in accordance with Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - F. The securement system shall secure the wheelchair/mobility aid in such a manner that the attachments or coupling hardware will not become detached when any wheelchair/mobility aid component deforms, when one or more tires deflate, and without intentional operation of a release mechanism (e.g., a spring clip on a securement hook).
 - G. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 2,500 pounds when tested in accordance with FMVSS 209.
 - H. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall provide a means of adjustment of manufacturer's design, to remove slack from the device or assembly.
 - I. Each securement device, webbing, or strap assembly shall be of the automatic, retractable type.
3. Occupant restraint system
- A. A Type II-A occupant restraint system, which meets all applicable requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210, shall provide for restraint of the occupant. For buses equipped with track seating, the occupant restraint shoulder track for the lap shoulder belt assembly shall be installed the full length of all floor track.

- B. The occupant restraint system shall be made of materials, which do not stain, soil, or tear an occupant's clothing, and which are resistant to water damage and fraying.
- C. Each restraint system location shall have not less than one anchorage, of manufacturer's design, for the upper end of the upper torso restraint.
 - (1) The anchorage for each occupant's upper torso restraint shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 1,500 pounds (6,672 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
- D. Each wheelchair/mobility aid location shall have not less than two floor anchorages for the occupant pelvic and the connected upper torso restraint.
 - (1) Each floor anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - (2) When multiple occupant restraints share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) multiplied by the number of occupant restraints sharing the common anchorage in accordance with FMVSS 222.
- E. Each floor and wall anchorage which secures the occupant restraint to the vehicle and which is not permanently attached, shall be of a "positive latch" design, and shall not allow for any accidental disconnection.

Special Light

Doorways, in which lifts are installed, shall have, lighting as required by FMVSS 403 and 404.

Special Service Entrance

1. Power lift equipped bodies shall have a special service entrance to accommodate the power lift. Door materials, panels and structural strength shall be equivalent to the conventional service and emergency doors. Color, rub rail extensions, lettering and other exterior features shall match adjacent sections of the body.
2. The special service entrance and door shall be located on the right side of the bus and shall be designed so as not to obstruct the regular service entrance. All doors shall have positive fastening devices to hold doors in the open position.
3. Each door shall have windows, set in a waterproof manner, which are visually similar in size and location to adjacent non-door windows. Glazing shall be of same type and tinting (if applicable) as standard fixed glass in other body location.
4. A drip molding shall be installed above the opening to effectively divert water from entrance.

5. Door posts and headers from entrance shall be reinforced sufficiently to provide support and strength equivalent to the areas of the side of the bus not used for special service entrance.
6. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with a device that will actuate a visible signal located in the driver's compartment when the door is open and ignition is in "on" position.
7. A switch shall be installed so that the lifting mechanism will not operate when the lift platform door is closed.
8. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of the door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

Support Equipment and Accessories

1. Each bus shall contain at least two belt cutters. One properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into his/her driver's seat. The second belt cutter shall be stored in a location in the passenger compartment that is accessible to the bus aide or driver, but not accessible to students. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use and must have a full handgrip.
2. Special equipment or supplies which are used on the bus for mobility assistance, health support, or safety purposes shall meet any local, federal, or engineering standards which may apply, including proper identification.

Equipment which may be used for these purposes includes, but is not limited to:

- A. Wheelchairs and other mobile seating devices (see section on Securement System for Mobile Seating Devices/Occupant).
 - B. Crutches, walkers, canes, and other ambulating devices.
 - C. Medical support equipment. This may include respiratory devices such as oxygen bottles (which should be no larger than 22 cubic feet for liquid oxygen and 38 cubic feet for compressed gas), or ventilators. Tanks and valves should be located and positioned to protect them from direct sunlight, bus heater vents, or other heat sources. Other equipment may include intravenous and fluid drainage apparatus. Appropriate medical placarding, if needed, shall be added by the LEA.
3. All portable equipment and special accessory items, including the equipment listed above, shall be secured at the mounting location to withstand a pulling force of five times the weight of the item, or shall be retained in an enclosed, latched compartment. The compartment shall be capable of withstanding forces applied to its interior equal to five times the weight of its contents without failure to the box's integrity and securement to the bus. Exception: If these standards provide specific requirements for securement of a particular type of equipment, the specific standard shall prevail (i.e., wheelchairs).

Technology and Equipment, New

It is the intent of these specifications to accommodate new technologies and equipment that will better facilitate the transportation of students in the schools of Alabama. When a new technology, piece of equipment, or component is desired to be applied to the school bus it must meet the following criteria:

- A. The technology, equipment, or component shall not compromise the effectiveness or integrity of any major safety system. (Examples of safety systems include, but are not limited to, compartmentalization, the eight-lamp warning system, emergency exits and the approved color scheme.
- B. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not diminish the safety of the interior of the bus.
- C. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not create additional risk to students who are boarding or exiting the bus or are in or near the school bus loading zone.
- D. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not require undue additional activity and/or responsibility for the driver.
- E. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall generally increase efficiency and/or safety of the bus, generally provide for a safer or more pleasant experience for the occupants and pedestrians in the vicinity of the bus or shall generally assist the driver and make his/her many tasks easier to perform.
- F. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

SECTION V – ALTERNATIVE FUEL STANDARDS

1. **School systems considering the use of alternative fuels such as bio-diesel, liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), compressed natural gas (CNG), electric or the purchase of alternative-fuel buses shall contact the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130 for information and written approval prior to initiating the bid process. Written requests must, at a minimum, provide the SDE with detailed specifications including the specific design, performance criteria, alternative-fuel type and safety specifications for the alternative fuel or buses.**
2. The guidelines contained herein shall pertain to school buses approved by the Alabama State Department of Education to operate on alternative-fuel sources.
 - A. Any company or individual providing alternative-fuel school buses to school systems shall provide appropriate certifications as well as, maintenance, repair and trouble-shooting information and safety training for each system. All maintenance on alternative-fuel buses shall be performed by personnel who are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency for the alternative fuel.
 - C. These companies or individuals shall submit to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130, documentation certifying that the requirements of this section have been met.
3. The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.
4. Fuel blends containing used cooking oil will not be allowed.

SECTION VI - OPTIONS

School systems should contact the their state school bus inspector or the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section prior to the purchase and/or installation of any optional or after-market equipment. This is to ensure that the equipment and/or its installation is in compliance with the current Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses.

Locking Fuel Compartment Door

Provide at the option of the purchaser a lock and key to secure the fuel compartment door.

Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment

Provide at the option of the purchaser a storage compartment located in the driver's compartment to house the emergency equipment. It shall be a locked compartment with a warning buzzer attached so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked.

SECTION VII - MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS (MFSAB)

DEFINITION:

A Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB) is a school bus constructed to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) and Alabama Minimum School Bus Specifications. It must be purchased or leased as a new bus and may only be used for extracurricular activities. **These buses may not be used to transport students to and from schools or between schools for the purpose of attendance.**

The following exceptions to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for regular route buses shall be allowed for these vehicles.

Identification:

1. The bus body shall bear the words “**ACTIVITY BUS**” in a contrasting color at least 8 inches high in the area where “school bus” is normally positioned. Lettering and numbering shall conform to FMVSS and Alabama Minimum Specifications and shall meet reflectivity standards. Bus numbering on this bus may be of a contrasting color.
2. The name of the school system shall be displayed in at least five-inch letters on both sides of the bus in the beltline area. **NO SIGNS OR LOGOS** shall be applied to any area of the bus including the bumpers. The name of the school may be displayed in the beltline area. No signs, logos, or other items shall be displayed on the windows of the bus.

Color:

The local school with school system approval may determine the color of the activity bus. The color scheme may utilize any combination of up to **THREE** colors. This combination may be in addition to an optional white roof. The color National School Bus Yellow (SBMTC-008 Publication) shall not be used as a part of the color scheme.

School systems and/or vendors shall submit preliminary color schemes to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section for approval **prior to the purchase or manufacture** of a Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB).

Seating:

Transit style seats, which meet all aspects of FMVSS 222 and 302, may be used in lieu of regular school bus seats.

Lighting and Warning Devices:

All activity buses shall meet state and federal standards for normal school bus lighting and warning device requirements with the following exceptions:

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with alternately flashing amber or red signal lamps used for loading and unloading students.

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with stop arm signals or crossing control arms.

INSPECTIONS:

Annual inspection by Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) state school bus inspectors and monthly inspections by local school bus inspectors shall be performed on all Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) as required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

REGULATIONS:

These buses shall be owned by the local school system or leased from private school bus transportation contractors. All Alabama laws, Rules of the State Board of Education, and other applicable regulations pertaining to the operation of school buses and certification of school bus drivers shall apply to Multifunctional School Activity Buses.



Disposal of Used School Buses

The procedures outlined in this document should be used in order to assure the proper disposal of school buses that are sold or otherwise removed from your school system's school bus fleet.

If the bus is sold to another school system, private school, or other agency that will continue to use the vehicle as a school bus, only the name of your system, the state inspection sticker, and the tag should be removed. **If the bus is sold or traded to a dealer only state inspection sticker and the tag should be removed.** The school bus dealer will remove the name of the school system, which could increase the value of the bus.

Alabama law requires that school buses be equipped with signal lamps and other visual signals and markings that clearly identify the vehicle as a school bus. School buses are also equipped with specialized equipment in order to help protect students, school bus drivers, and motorists. These visual markings, signals, and other specialized equipment, which include amber and red flashing lights, stop signs, warning signs on the rear of the bus, school bus lettering, and crossing control arms, are peculiar to school buses and may not be used on other vehicles, except as provided under Alabama law. Accordingly, the disposal of school buses requires measures above and beyond those necessary for the disposal of other school system vehicles.

To avoid possible liability, improve security, and also ensure compliance with the law, the following procedures should be followed when disposing of buses that will no longer be used as school buses:

1. Disable the overhead amber and red flashing lamps and stop arm used when loading and unloading students.
2. Disable the crossing control arm.
3. Remove all references to the entire name of the system on the sides of the bus, not just the name of the county or city.
4. Remove the words "SCHOOL BUS" on the **front and rear** of the bus.
5. Remove the Alabama State Inspection Sticker from the windshield.
6. Remove the county or municipal tag from the vehicle before the sale.

Questions regarding the proper disposal of used school buses should be addressed to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama at 334-242-9730.

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS QUICK REFERENCE CHART

TYPE A-I SCHOOL BUS

Type A-I and A-II buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
All type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE A-II SCHOOL BUS (Over 14,500 pounds)

CAPACITY	BRAKE LINING SIZE	GAWR FRONT	GAWR REAR	GVWR TOTAL	TIRE SIZE
10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply

Type A-II school buses exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have air brakes.

TYPE C SCHOOL BUS

10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	15,000	24,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
48-54	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	17,000	26,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
55-72	4" Front 7" Rear	9,000	19,000	29,000	10R x 22.5 14 ply

Type C school buses exceeding 72 capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C-1 SCHOOL BUS

10-36	Four-wheel disc	6,000	13,000	19,000	225 x 70R 19.5 - 12 Ply
-------	-----------------	-------	--------	--------	-------------------------

TYPE D FRONT ENGINE

10-53	4" Front 6" Rear	10,000	17,000	27,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
54-66	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	17,000	28,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
67-78	5" Front 7" Rear	13,000	19,000	32,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	20,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

TYPE D REAR ENGINE

42-66	5" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	31,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
67-78	6" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	31,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	21,000	34,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

Type D school buses exceeding 84-capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses



Alabama Department of Education
Division of Administrative and Financial Services
Pupil Transportation Section
Montgomery, Alabama
334-242-9730

Thomas R. Bice
State Superintendent of Education

Dennis Coe
Division Coordinator
Supporting Services

Joe Lightsey
Director of Pupil Transportation

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can be found on the Alabama Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Find “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.



INTRODUCTION

Alabama law (32-5-8) requires the Alabama State Board of Education to adopt minimum standards to govern the specifications for all new school buses and the overall operation of all school buses in the state of Alabama. This responsibility also extends to the inspection of school buses being sold and operated in the state of Alabama. The primary reason for the development of specifications and the inspection of school buses is to enhance the safety of our school buses. We must ensure that Alabama school buses continue to provide the safest ride available for our most precious cargo—our children.

My deepest thanks are extended to each member of the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) School Bus Specifications Committee for their service, hard work, and commitment to the task. Special thanks are also extended to Specifications Committee Chairperson, Greg Ray. For many years, his experience, dedication, and leadership have helped to ensure a successful meeting as well as exceptional specifications. School bus specifications always begin as a product of many individual thoughts and ideas. However, they culminate in standards, which help assure the safest school buses possible for Alabama's students as well as vehicles, which provide a true value for Alabama's taxpayers.

Special thanks must also be expressed to Alabama's school bus dealers, their school bus manufacturers and the many vendors and others in the school bus industry that assist in the SDE and the Committee in the development of these standards. Without their participation, the specifications process would be significantly weakened.

The Minimum Specifications for Alabama School Buses become effective on April 1, 2012. If you have questions or recommendations regarding any of the specifications in this document, please contact Mr. Ray or any member of the specifications committee. Committee members are listed on the following page.

Joe Lightsey, Director
Pupil Transportation
Alabama State Department of Education
Montgomery, Alabama 36130
334-242-9730
joel@alsde.edu

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

Alabama Department of Education (SDE)
School Bus Specifications Committee
January 1, 2012

Harvey Barger
hbarger@tcss.net
Tuscaloosa County Schools
3700 68th Avenue
Northport, AL 35476
(205) 342-2636

Chris Bible
cbible@ftpayk12.org
Ft. Payne City Schools
231 38th Street NE
Ft. Payne, AL 35968
256-845-9288

Glenn Brown
rgbrown@bcbe.org
Baldwin County Schools
2600-A Hand Avenue
Bay Minette, AL 36507
251-580-1894

Keith Clark
khclark@morgank12.org
Morgan County Schools
1325 Point Mallard Parkway SE
Decatur, AL 35601
(256) 353-6442

David Gibson
dgibson@pcboe.net
Phenix City Schools
P. O. Box 460
Phenix City, AL 36867
(334) 298-2823

Griff Hill
glhill@tcboe.org
Talladega County Schools
P.O. 887
Talladega, AL 35160
256-315-5139

Don Ingram
dingram@auburnschools.org
Auburn City Schools
P. O. Box 3270
Auburn, AL 36831-3270
(334) 887-4915

Bobby Martin
blmartin@chilton.k12.al.us
Chilton County Schools
1705 Lay Dam Road
Clanton, AL 35045
(205) 280-2950

Leslie Mathison
Mathison.leslie@aidb.state.al.us
AIDB
P.O. Box 698
Talladega, AL 35160
(256) 761-3443

Tony Morris
morrstrn@yahoo.com
Pell City Schools
1000 Bruce Etheredge Parkway
Pell City, AL 35128-3213
(205) 884-4800

Turner Oliver
olivert@pcboe.org
Pickens County Schools
P. O. Box 32
Carrollton, AL 35447
(205) 367-8244

Fay Parker
fay.parker@lcschools.org
Lauderdale County Schools
P. O. Box 278
Florence, AL 35631
(256) 760-1338

Brian Stovall
brian.stoval@lcsk12.org
Limestone County Schools
300 South Jefferson Street
Athens, AL 35611
256-232-5130

Willie Thomas, ASTA President
willie.thomas@mps.k12.al.us
Montgomery County Schools
5000 Troy Highway
Montgomery, AL 36111
334-284-3406

Joe Lightsey
joel@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerome Cook
cook8500@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Jeff Duke
papajd@charter.net
State Department of Education

Obie Fuller
obeyonly1@yahoo.com
State Department of Education

Brad Holley
bholley@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerry Lassiter
jlassiter@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Greg Ray
grray@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jeff Snider
jeffsnider2010@yahoo.com
State Department of Education

Sammy Weatherspoon
sammy_weatherspoon@att.net
State Department of Education

Joe Beams
joebeams@aol.com
State Department of Education

Jerry Davidson
lindacd50@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Cathy Staggs
ctstaggs@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Ray Jones
dLjo55@charter.net
State Department of Education

ALABAMA
SCHOOL BUS INSPECTION
HANDBOOK



PREPARED BY
ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
DIVISION OF ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL SERVICES
TRANSPORTATION SECTION
MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA

The **Alabama School Bus Inspection Handbook** was developed by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) Pupil Transportation Section as a standard for school bus safety inspections at the local school system level. This handbook is provided as a guideline for local school system school bus inspectors, shop foremen, technicians, maintenance supervisors, and transportation directors in conducting the monthly inspections required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

The goal of this handbook is to provide uniform standards for state and local school bus inspections. The manual also identifies the critical items to be inspected on Alabama school buses, how they are to be inspected, and which items should remove a school bus from service until the item is repaired (“out of service” items).

Copies of the handbook have been distributed to all local school systems.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<u>SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS</u>	1
<u>SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS</u>	3
Air Cleaner.....	3
Axles.....	3
Brakes.....	3
Bumper (Front).....	5
Certification.....	5
Color.....	5
Directional Lights.....	5
Drive Shaft.....	6
Electrical System.....	6
Engine.....	7
Exhaust System.....	7
Fenders, Hoods.....	8
Frame.....	8
Fuel Tank.....	9
Governor.....	9
Heating System, Provision for.....	10
Horn.....	10
Instruments & Instrument Panel.....	10
Oil Filter.....	11
Openings.....	11
Passenger Load.....	11
Retarder System (Optional).....	11
Road Speed Control	11
Shock Absorbers.....	11
Springs/Suspension Systems	11
Steering Gear.....	12
Tires and Rims.....	12
Transmission.....	13
Turning Radius.....	13
Undercoating.....	13
Weight Distribution.....	13

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

PAGE

Air Conditioning.....	14
Aisle.....	14
Back-up Warning Alarm.....	14
Battery/Batteries.....	14
Bumper (Front).....	15
Bumper (Rear).....	15
Ceiling.....	15
Certification.....	15
Chains (Tire).....	15
Color.....	15
Communication Systems	16
Construction.....	16
Crossing Control Arm.....	17
Defrosters.....	17
Doors.....	18
Emergency Exits.....	18
Emergency Equipment.....	20
Fire Extinguishers.....	20
First-Aid Kit.....	20
Body Fluid Clean-up Kit.....	21
Warning Devices.....	21
Fire Suppression	21
Floor and Floor Coverings.....	21
Handrail(s)	22
Heaters.....	22
Hinges	23
Identification.....	23
Inside Height.....	24
Insulation.....	24
Interior.....	25
Lamps and Signals.....	25
Metal Treatment.....	27
Mirrors.....	27
Mounting.....	28

<u>SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS (Continued)...</u>	PAGE
Noise Suppression Switch.....	28
Overall Length.....	28
Overall Width.....	28
Public Address System	28
Retroreflective Material.....	29
Rub Rails.....	29
Seat Belt for Driver.....	30
Seat and Crash Barriers.....	30
Steering Wheel (See Chassis Standards).....	31
Steps.....	32
Step Treads.....	32
Stirrup Step.....	32
Stop Arm Signal.....	32
Stop Arm Signal-Rear (Optional)	32
Storage Compartment.....	33
Sun Shield.....	33
Tailpipe.....	33
Traction-Assisting Devices.....	33
Trash Container and Holding Device.....	34
Undercoating.....	34
Ventilation.....	34
Video Surveillance Equipment.....	35
Wheel Housing.....	35
Windshield and Windows.....	35
Windshield Washers.....	36
Windshield Wipers.....	36
Wiring.....	36

SECTION IV - SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction.....	39
Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus	39
General Requirements.....	39
Air Conditioning.....	40
Aisles.....	40

Communication System	40
Crash Barriers	40
Evacuation Blanket.....	40
Glazing.....	41
Identification	41
Passenger Capacity Rating.....	41
Power Lift.....	41
Ramp.....	44
Regular Service Entrance.....	44
Restraining Devices.....	45
Seating Arrangements.....	45
Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant.....	45
Special Light.....	49
Special Service Entrance.....	49
Support Equipment and Accessories.....	50
Technology and Equipment New.....	51
<u>SECTION V - ALTERNATE FUEL SOURCE STANDARDS</u>	52
<u>SECTION VI - OPTIONS</u>	52
Locking Fuel Compartment Door	52
Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment.....	52
<u>SECTION VII – MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS</u>	53
Definition	53
Identification	53
Color	53
Seating	53
Lighting and Warning Devices.....	53
Inspections	54
Regulations	54
<u>DISPOSAL OF USED SCHOOL BUSES</u>	55
<u>SECTION VIII – QUICK REFERENCE CHART</u>	56

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS FOR SCHOOL BUSES
EFFECTIVE April 1, 2012

SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Standards

1. All school buses ordered by local education agencies beginning **April 1, 2012**, shall (1) meet the applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS), and (2) meet Alabama minimum specifications for school buses. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of an applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard, as referred to in this section, and the Alabama minimum specifications, the requirements of the FMVSS shall control. **School buses not meeting minimum specifications will not be certified by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE). Under unusual circumstances and with adequate justification, exceptions to these specifications may be granted by the SDE director of pupil transportation.**

Certification

2. All school buses shall display a **durable, legible** certification data plate mounted in the driver's compartment of the vehicle. On this data plate, the manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and the local education agency that the school bus meets or exceeds all standards as specified herein, is in compliance with the applicable FMVSS, and is manufactured from all new components. All chassis and body information shall appear on this certification data plate. The bus body data plate shall specify the maximum design capacity of the body. The maximum design capacity of any bus body size shall be the number of passengers the bus can transport before special needs modifications.

Used School Buses

3. Used school buses purchased for use by a school system in Alabama shall meet all of the legal Federal and Alabama requirements for school buses that were in effect on the date the vehicle was manufactured. It is recommended that school systems contact the SDE Pupil Transportation prior to the purchase of any used school bus.

Bid Requirements

4. In order to be in compliance with the State Bid Law, school bus purchases shall be by competitive bidding. Bid forms to the body manufacturer shall contain certain options required by the chassis manufacturer, which may result in changes in normal Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or alterations to the body. For special needs buses, the school bus body manufacturer shall submit floor plans which include dimensions at the time bid quotations are submitted showing:
 1. Location of the emergency door, emergency windows and roof hatches.
 2. Aisle and staging areas and seat spacing.
 3. Track locations and/or wheelchair securement positions.

4. Location of air conditioning evaporator(s) **for all buses** ordered with air conditioning.

5. **Service Manual/Diagnostic Equipment**
 Body and/or chassis suppliers, including integral (forward control) suppliers, shall provide each school district purchasing school buses with one complete set of the most current service manuals, as specified by the school system, available to include both body and chassis at no additional cost upon delivery of bus. Provisions for manuals and diagnostic equipment, including, but not limited to code books, software, and training, etc, shall be agreed upon during the pre-bid process. Diagnostic equipment shall not be included as a part of the bus bid and cannot be used to determine low bidder.

6. **New Technology**
 New technology not in the present specifications shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

7. **School Bus Definitions**
 School bus capacity is determined based on body size before modifications are made.

TYPE A: A Type A school bus is a conversion or body constructed upon a van-type or cutaway front-section vehicle with a left side driver's door designed for carrying more than 10 persons. This definition shall include two classifications: Type A-I with a GVWR of 10,000 or under; and Type A-II, with a GVWR over 10,000 pounds. All Type A buses shall have dual rear wheels. **Type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.**
Type A buses exceeding a GVWR of 14,500 pounds shall have air brakes.

TYPE B: A Type B school bus is a conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section vehicle chassis, or stripped chassis, with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels. All Type B buses 14,500 pounds or under shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE C: A Type C school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The entire engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.
Type C buses may not exceed 72-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C1 A Type C1 school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and a maximum of 19,000 pounds and designed for carrying a maximum of 36 persons. This is a special category

of a Type C school bus designed to be an alternate to a Type A1, Type A2.
This bus shall not exceed a maximum capacity of 36 persons.

TYPE D: A Type D school bus is a body installed upon a chassis, with the engine mounted in the front, midship, or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or midship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels.
Type D buses may not exceed 84-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS

Air Cleaner

1. The engine intake air cleaner shall be furnished and properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

The intake air system for diesel engines shall have an air cleaner restriction indicator properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

Axles

1. The front and rear axles and suspension systems shall have a gross axle weight rating (GAWR) at ground commensurate with the respective front and rear weight loads of the bus loaded to the rated passenger capacity.
2. Vehicle minimum axle capacities at ground when loaded shall meet the body manufacturer's GVWR specified by the FMVSS. Axle assemblies shall have minimum capacities at ground as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
3. Front wheel bearings must be oil filled on all Type C and D buses.

Brakes

1. A braking system, including service brake and parking brake, shall be provided and shall comply with all CDL pretrip inspection requirements. All Type A-1 and A-II school buses below 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications. Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
2. Buses using air in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals located within the interior of the driver compartment and clearly audible and visible to the driver, that will give a continuous warning when the air pressure available in the system for braking is 60 psi (pounds per square inch) or less. An air pressure gauge shall be provided in the instrument panel capable of complying with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.

3. Antilock brake systems for either air or hydraulic brakes shall include control of all axles in compliance with FMVSS 105 or 121.

A. Air brakes shall be installed on **all** chassis exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR.

Exception: Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes. Air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses with approval from the SDE.

All air-operated brake systems shall:

- (1) Meet all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for air brakes.
- (2) Be S-cam or four-wheel-disc-type brakes. Air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses with approval from the SDE. If S-cam-type, the camshaft, when applying brakes, shall rotate in the same direction as the wheels. Automatic slack adjusters shall be the same design on all wheels. Dust covers shall be installed on all wheels unless deleted through local option at the time of the bid.
- (3) Have at least a 12 CFM air compressor.
- (4) Be equipped with a parking and emergency brake. A manual control, clearly identified, shall be within easy reach of the driver. The parking brake valve shall comply with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.
- (5) S-cam air brakes shall have brake lining sizes as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
- (6) Have a reservoir capacity, which is equal to or greater than two (2) times total volume of all brake activators at full travel.
- (7) *Be equipped with air dryers with a heated automatic drain valve (Bendix AD-9 or AD/IP) or prior approved equal.* Air dryers shall be serviceable at the local level.

B. Buses using a hydraulic assist-booster in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals, readily audible and visible to the driver, that will provide continuous warning in the event of a loss of fluid flow from the primary source, or loss of electric source powering the back-up system.

- (1) The system shall be equipped with a source of hydraulic pressure, automatically initiated upon loss of power from primary source, and operating independently of the primary power source.

- (2) All brake systems shall be designed to permit visual inspection of brake lining wear without the removal of any chassis components.

Bumper, Front

1. The front bumper shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer for all school bus types, unless there is specific agreement between the chassis manufacturer and the body manufacturer. When Type D chassis are supplied to a body company by a chassis manufacturer, the body company shall supply the front bumper as part of the body installation.
2. The front bumper shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material at least 3/16 inch thick, not less than 8 inches wide (high) and shall extend beyond forward-most part of the body, grille, hood, and fenders and shall extend to the outer edges of the fenders at the bumper's top line. Bumpers on Type A buses may be built to manufacturers' specifications.
3. Tow eyes or hooks shall be furnished and attached so as not to project beyond the front bumper. Tow eyes or hooks, attached to the frame chassis, shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer. This installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's standards. Type A buses are exempt from tow hook requirements.
4. The bumper shall be designed or reinforced so that it will not deform, when the bus is lifted by a chain that is passed under the bumper (or through the bumper if holes are provided for this purpose) and attached to both tow eyes. For the purpose of meeting this standard, the bus shall be empty and positioned on a level, hard surface, and both tow eyes shall share the load equally. Front bumper shall not be deformed when lifted by a bumper jack positioned on the bumper attachment points.

Certification

The chassis manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Color

1. The chassis, including the front bumper, shall be black. The hood, cowl and fenders shall be in national school bus yellow. The hood may be painted with non-reflective paint.
2. Wheel rims shall be painted black, gray, or yellow on all buses.
3. Multifunctional School Activity Buses shall be exempt from these requirements. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Directional Lights

1. Each Type C chassis may be equipped with Type A front directional lights of the two-faced type mounted on the top of the fender and the hood side panel, or have an amber turn signal and marker light that is an integral part of the headlight assembly. This turn signal/marker light shall be seen from the front and the side of the vehicle.

Drive Shaft

1. Torque capacity of the drive shaft assembly shall at least equal maximum engine torque as developed through lowest transmission gear reduction.
2. Each drive shaft shall be equipped with protective metal guard or guards to reduce the possibility of it whipping through the floor or dropping to ground if broken. (Body manufacturer is responsible for Mini Bus.)

Electrical System

1. Battery
 - A. The storage batteries shall have a minimum total of 1,500 cold cranking amps at 0 degrees Fahrenheit. Type A buses shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
 - B. Since all batteries in Type, C, and D buses are to be located in a sliding tray, the battery shall be temporarily mounted on the chassis frame by the chassis manufacturer.

In these cases, the final location of the battery and the appropriate cable lengths shall be according to the current SBMTC Design Objectives.

2. Alternator
 - A. All Type A and B buses up to 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall have a minimum 130 amperes alternator.
 - B. All C and D buses over 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall be equipped with a heavy-duty truck or bus-type alternator capable of producing a minimum output rating of 185 amperes; The alternator shall be capable of producing a minimum of 50 percent of its maximum rated output at the engine manufacturer's recommended idle speed.
 - C. All C and D, buses equipped with an air conditioner or electrical power lift shall have a minimum 270 amperes alternator.
 - D. A direct-drive alternator is permissible in lieu of a belt drive. A belt drive shall be capable of handling the rated capacity of the alternator with no detrimental effect on other driven components.
 - E. Refer to SBMTC Design Objectives, most current edition, for estimating required alternator capacity.
3. Wiring
 - A. All wiring shall conform to current applicable recommended practices of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
 - (1) All wiring shall use standard colors and number coding and each chassis shall be delivered with a wiring diagram that coincides with the wiring of the chassis.

All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet or loom.

B. The chassis manufacturer shall install a readily accessible terminal strip or plug on the body side of the cowl, or at an accessible location in the engine compartment of vehicles designed without a cowl, that shall contain the following terminals for the body connections:

- (1) Main 100-amp body circuits
- (2) Tail lamps
- (3) Right turn signal
- (4) Left turn signal
- (5) Stop lamps
- (6) Back-up lamps
- (7) Instrument panel lights (rheostat controlled)

C. Daytime running lamps shall be provided.

4. Circuits

A. An appropriate identifying diagram (color and number coded) for electrical circuits shall be provided to the body manufacturer for distribution to the end user.

Engine Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

See Fire Suppression System page 21.

Engine Information

1. Buses shall be equipped with diesel engines with minimum horsepower requirements as follows:

Type A buses under 29 passenger – manufacturer’s specifications

Type C or D buses –210 hp minimum

Type D buses 78 passengers and above – 230 hp minimum

An engine heater may be installed as per the manufacturer's specifications.

Alternative-fuel engine information can be found on page 51, under Alternative Fuel Standards.

The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.

Exhaust System

1. The exhaust pipe, muffler/ after treatment device, and tail pipe shall be outside the bus body and securely attached to the bus frame. The chassis manufacturer shall furnish an exhaust system with a tail pipe of sufficient length to exit the rear of the bus or at the left side of the bus body no more than 18 inches forward of the front edge of the rear wheelhouse opening. If designed to exit on the side of the bus, the tailpipe shall extend to the skirtline with a turndown angle of approximately 45 degrees. With the exception of special needs buses, Type A vehicles may have the manufacturers standard exhaust system. The bus shall not automatically begin to

regenerate the diesel particulate filter while the bus is not moving. The switch to regenerate the diesel particulate filter shall be readily accessible to the technician, but not accessible to the driver

2. The muffler and the tail pipe shall be constructed of aluminized, or equivalent corrosion resistant material. The tailpipe shall be made of at least 16 gauge material and shall be mounted in such a way that it will not cause damage to brake lines
3. The muffler/ after treatment device, and exhaust pipe shall be properly insulated from the fuel tank, lines, and connections by a protective shield at any point where it is 4 inches or less from fuel tank, lines or connections.
4. The tailpipe on all special needs vehicles shall be routed to the left of the left frame rail to allow for the installation of a lift on the right side of the vehicle.
5. No exhaust pipe shall exit beneath an emergency exit or the fuel fill.
6. On all Type C and D buses, the tailpipe shall exit at the bottom edge of the rear bumper or through the rear bumper. If tailpipe exits through the rear bumper sufficient clamps or brackets must be provided to eliminate rattles. If the tailpipe exits beneath the rear bumper, it shall be turned down approximately 45 degrees and positioned in such a way that it cannot be crushed beneath the rear bumper.

The opening in the tailpipe shall direct all exhaust gases clear of the perimeter of the bus body. Manufacturers must make reasonable efforts to ensure that exhaust gases will not produce burns on students or other individuals present.

Fenders, Hoods

1. The total spread of outer edges of front fenders, measured at the fender line, shall exceed the total spread of the front tires when the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
2. Front fenders shall be properly braced and free from any body attachments.
3. A fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite tilt hood shall be provided. The hood opening and closing effort shall be minimized to aid the driver with pre-trip inspections and service. If the hood is not designed to remain secure in the open position, a safety prop will be required. The wiring harness shall be a “quick disconnect” type to aid with servicing.

Frame

1. The frame or equivalent shall be of such design and strength characteristics as to correspond at least to standard practice for trucks of the same general load characteristics, which are used for highway service.
2. Any secondary manufacturer that modifies the original chassis frame shall guarantee the performance of workmanship and materials resulting from such modification.

3. Any frame modification shall not be for the purpose of extending the wheelbase.
4. Holes in top or bottom flanges or side units of the frame, and welding to the frame, shall not be permitted except as provided or accepted by the chassis manufacturer.
5. Frame lengths shall be provided in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.

Fuel Tank

1. All Type C, and D chassis above 170-inch wheelbase shall have a minimum 60-gallon fuel tank with a 55-gallon actual draw. The tank shall be filled and vented to the outside of the body, the location of which shall be so that accidental fuel spillage will not drip or drain on any part of the exhaust system. **Type C-1 school buses are exempt from this tank size requirement.**
2. No portion of the fuel system, which is located to the rear of the engine compartment, except the filler tube, shall extend above the top of the chassis frame rail. Fuel lines shall be mounted to obtain maximum possible protection from the chassis frame.
3. Fuel filters shall be installed as per manufacturer's specifications. Fuel filtration shall include water detection and separation. At least one fuel filter shall have a replaceable spin-on or cartridge-type element.
4. Fuel tank installation shall be in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives for location on the chassis right frame rail or between frame rails; the filler tube shall be located on the right side of the bus.
5. Type A buses may meet manufacturer's specifications.
6. The fuel tank on vehicles constructed with a power lift unit may be mounted on left chassis rail or behind rear wheels.
7. Installation of alternative fuel tanks shall comply with all applicable fire codes.
8. The fuel tank on buses equipped with diesel engines shall have interior baffles to help prevent fuel starvation on inclines.

Governor

1. An engine governor is permissible. When it is desired to limit road speed, a road speed governor should be installed.
2. An electronic engine speed limiter shall be provided and set to limit engine speed not to exceed the maximum revolutions per minute as recommended by the engine manufacturer. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Heating System, Provision for

1. The chassis engine shall have plugged openings for the purpose of supplying hot water for the bus heating system. The opening shall be suitable for attaching a pipe thread/hose connector. The engine shall be capable of supplying water having a temperature of at least 170 degrees Fahrenheit at a flow rate of 50 pounds/per minute at the return end of 30 feet of one inch inside diameter automotive hot water heater hose (SBMI Standard No. 001--Standard Code for Testing and Rating Automotive Bus Hot Water Heating and Ventilating Equipment).

Horn

Buses shall be equipped with a horn or horns of standard make with each horn capable of producing a complex sound in bands of audio frequencies between 250 and 2,000 cycles per second and tested per the Society of Automotive Engineers Standard J--377. There shall be no air horns.

Instruments and Instrument Panel

1. Chassis shall be equipped with the following instruments and gauges (lights in lieu of gauges are not acceptable except as noted):
 - A. Speedometer
 - B. Odometer shall show accrued mileage to six digits not including tenths.
 - C. Tachometer
 - D. Voltmeter
 - (1) An ammeter with graduated charge and discharge with the ammeter and its wiring compatible with generating capacities is permitted in lieu of a voltmeter
 - E. Oil-pressure gauge
 - F. Water temperature gauge
 - G. Fuel gauge
 - H. Upper beam headlight indicator
 - I. Air brake indicator gauge
 - (1) A light indicator in lieu of a gauge is permitted on vehicles equipped with hydraulic-over-hydraulic brake system.
 - J. Turn signal indicator
 - K. Glow-plug indicator light where appropriate
 - L. A twelve-volt accessory outlet with cover
2. All instruments shall be easily accessible for maintenance and repair.

3. Instruments and gauges shall be mounted on the instrument panel in such a manner that each is clearly visible to the driver while in a normal seated position in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.
4. The instrument panel shall have lamps of sufficient candlepower to illuminate all instruments and gauges and the shift selector indicator for an automatic transmission.

Oil Filter

An Oil filter with replaceable element shall be provided and connected by flexible oil lines if it is not of built-in or engine-mounted design. The oil filters shall have a capacity of at least one (1) quart.

Openings

All openings in the floorboard or firewall between the chassis and the passenger-carrying compartment, such as for gearshift selector and parking brake lever, shall be sealed.

Passenger Load

1. Actual GVW is the sum of the chassis weight, plus the body weight, plus the driver's weight, plus total seated pupil weight. For purposes of calculation, the driver's weight is 150 pounds. For purposes of calculation, the pupil weight is 120 pounds per pupil.
2. Actual GVW shall not exceed the chassis manufacturer's GVWR for the chassis, nor shall the actual weight carried on any axle exceed the chassis manufacturer's Gross Axle Weight Rating. (GAWR)

Retarder System (Optional)

A retarder system, if used, shall limit the speed of the fully loaded school bus at 19.0 mph or 30 km/hr on a 7% grade for 3.6 miles or 6 km.

Road Speed Control

When it is necessary to control vehicle maximum speed, a vehicle speed limiter shall be utilized. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Shock Absorbers

Buses shall be equipped with front and rear double-action shock absorbers compatible with the manufacturer's rated axle capacity at each wheel location.

Springs/Suspension Systems

1. The capacity of the springs or suspension assemblies shall be commensurate with the chassis manufacturer's GVWR.
2. Front springs shall be of the leaf type, shall have a stationary eye at one end, and shall be protected by a wrapper leaf in addition to the main leaf. Rear leaf springs shall be of the progressive type.

3. Air ride suspension may be used on the front and rear of Type C and D buses in lieu of leaf-type springs. Body and chassis parts must clear tires with air bags in fully deflated condition or steering wheel turned fully to the left or right. If brake dust covers are used, inspection holes of adequate size and location for easily viewing brake linings shall be provided.

Steering Gear

1. The steering gear shall be approved by the chassis manufacturer and designed to assure safe and accurate performance when the vehicle is operated with maximum load and at maximum speed.
2. If external adjustments are required, the steering mechanism must be accessible to accomplish the same.
3. No changes shall be made in the steering apparatus, which are not approved by the chassis manufacturer.
4. There shall be a clearance of at least two inches between the steering wheel and the cowl, instrument panel, windshield, or any other surface.
5. Power steering is required and shall be of the integral type with integral valves.
6. The steering system shall be designed to provide a means for lubrication of all wear-points, if wear-points are not permanently lubricated.
7. The steering wheel shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Tires and Rims

1. Radial tubeless tires and rims of proper size and tires with a load rating commensurate with chassis manufacturer's GVWR shall be provided. Hubcaps are not permitted.
2. Dual rear tires shall be provided on all school buses.
3. All tires on any given vehicle shall be of the same size and the load range of said tires shall meet or exceed the gross axle weight rating as required by FMVSS 120. Low profile tires are acceptable. However, they must meet the load range and ply requirements as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet. It is recommended that dish-type rims be used with low profile tires.
4. If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire and rim assembly, it shall be of the same size as those mounted on the vehicle.
5. If a tire carrier is required, it shall be suitably mounted in an accessible location outside the passenger compartment.

Transmission

An automatic transmission shall be required on all buses. Type A buses may be built to manufacturer's specifications. Types C, and D buses must have a PTS 2500 series or prior approved equal. The automatic transmission shall have at least four forward-gear ratios, plus integral torque converter. The transmission shift quadrant shall provide at least four forward drive ranges plus neutral and reverse ranges. Within the range selected, ratio changes shall be effected automatically and at full engine power if desirable, and without use of an engine disconnect clutch. A PTS3000 or prior approved equal is required for chassis over 33,000 pounds GVWR.

Type C-1 school buses may use Allison PTS 1000 or PTS 2200 automatic transmission or prior approved equal.

Turning Radius

1. Chassis with a wheelbase of 264 inches or less shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 42 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.
2. Chassis with a wheelbase of 265 inches or more shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 44 and 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.

Undercoating

The chassis manufacturer, or agent thereof, shall coat the undersides of steel or metallic-constructed front fenders with rust-proofing compound for which compound manufacturers have issued notarized certification of compliance to the chassis builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C520B using modified test.

Weight Distribution

The weight distribution of a fully loaded bus on a level surface shall be such as not to exceed the manufacturer's front gross axle rating and rear gross axle weight rating.

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

Air Conditioning

All special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. Other buses **may** be equipped with an air conditioning unit at the discretion of the local school system.

Type A school buses may be built to manufacturers standards to include dash mounted evaporator and air duct systems. All Type C and D buses are required to have bulkhead mounted **rear** air conditioner evaporator systems. Front mounted evaporator units on Type C and D buses may include bulkhead-mounted or dash-mounted evaporator units. All other evaporator units shall be mounted on the left side behind the driver position so as not to interfere with entrance or exit or any wheelchair position.

All buses ordered with air conditioning shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Floor--All flooring shall be 5/8-inch exterior-grade plywood over steel flooring.
2. All buses shall have a white roof.
3. Windows--All passenger windows shall be tinted with 28% light transmission.
4. All buses shall meet insulation standards as per Alabama bus specifications.
5. **Optional** mud flaps to protect the condenser may be installed.
6. Be equipped with a high-idle feature.

Minimum Btu air conditioning system per passenger size (*per shell size*):

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. 10-30-passenger | 60,000 Btu |
| 2. 31-48-passenger | 96,000 Btu |
| 3. 49-84-passenger | 120,000 Btu |

Aisle

1. All emergency doors shall be accessible by a 12-inch minimum aisle. The aisle shall be unobstructed at all times.

Back-Up Warning Alarm

An automatic, audible alarm with a minimum of 87dbA and maximum of 112dbA shall be installed behind the rear axle and shall comply with the Society of Automotive Engineers published Back-up Alarm Standards (SAE 994). The alarm shall have a protective deflector shield.

Battery/Batteries

1. Batteries are to be furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
2. When the battery/batteries is mounted as described in the Chassis Standard, the body manufacturer shall securely attach the battery on a slide-out or swing-out tray in a closed, vented compartment in the body skirt, so that the battery is accessible for convenient servicing from the outside. The battery compartment door or cover shall be hinged at the front and secured by an adequate and conveniently-operated latch or other type fastener.

Bumper (Front)

On a Type D school bus, if the chassis manufacturer does not provide a bumper, it shall be provided by the body manufacturer. The bumper will conform to the standards in the chassis section.

Bumper (Rear)

1. Bumpers shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material, at least 3/16-inch thick, and shall be a minimum of 9-1/2 inches wide (high) on all Types C, and D buses. Type A buses shall have a minimum of an 8-inch rear bumper.
2. Bumpers shall be wrapped around the back corners of the bus. It shall extend forward at least 12 inches, measured from the rear-most point of the body at the floor line.
3. Bumpers shall be attached to the chassis frame in such a manner that it may be easily removed. It shall be so braced as to withstand impact from a rear or side impact. It shall be so attached as to discourage hitching of rides.
4. Bumpers shall extend at least one inch beyond rear-most part of body surface measured at the floor line.
4. Tow eyes or hooks may be furnished on the rear and attached so they do not project beyond the rear bumper. The installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's specifications.
5. The bottom of the rear bumper shall not be more than 30 inches above ground level.

Ceiling

See Insulation and Interior, Body Standard.

Certification

The body manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Chains (Tire)

See Wheel Housing Body Standard.

Color

1. The school bus body shall be painted National School Bus Yellow.
2. The body exterior paint trim, bumper, lamp hoods and lettering shall be black.
3. The roof of the bus must be painted white not to extend below the drip rails on the sides of the body.

4. Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) shall be exempt from this requirement. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Communication Systems

Each bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Construction

1. Construction shall be of prime commercial quality steel or other material with strength at least equivalent to all-steel as certified by the bus body manufacturer. All such construction materials shall be fire resistant. No exterior structural, fiberglass roof or side panels are allowed. All Type C and D school buses shall meet the requirements of Section A below.

A. Side Intrusion Test: The bus body shall be constructed to withstand an intrusion force equal to the curb weight of the vehicle or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less. Each vehicle shall be capable of meeting this requirement when tested in accordance with the procedures set forth below. The complete body structure, or a representative seven-body section mock up with seats installed, shall be load-tested at a location 24 ± 2 inches above the floor line, with a maximum 10 inch diameter cylinder, 48 inches long, mounted in a horizontal plane.

The cylinder shall be placed as close as practical to the mid-point of the tested structure, spanning two internal vertical structural members. The cylinder shall be statically loaded to the required force of curb weight or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less, in a horizontal plane with the load applied from the exterior toward the interior of the test structure. When the minimum load has been applied, the penetration of the loading cylinder into the passenger compartment shall not exceed 10 inches from its original point of contact. There can be no separation of lapped panels or construction joints. Punctures, tears or breaks in the external panels are acceptable but are not permitted on any adjacent interior panel. Body companies shall certify compliance with this intrusion requirement to the Alabama Department of Education and include test results, as requested.

2. Construction shall be dust proof and watertight, so the bus does not leak under normal operating conditions.
3. Body joints present in that portion of a Type A school bus body furnished exclusively by the body manufacturer shall conform to the performance requirements of FMVSS 221, "School Bus Body Joint Strength." This does not include the body joints created when body components are attached to components furnished by the chassis manufacturer.

4. Type A school bus bodies shall be equipped with restraining barriers conforming to FMVSS 222, "School Bus Passenger Seating--Crash Protection," Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

Crossing Control Arm

1. Buses shall be equipped with a crossing control arm mounted on the right side of the front bumper, which shall not open more than 90 degrees.
2. All components of the crossing control arm and all connections shall be weatherproofed.
3. The crossing control arm shall incorporate system connectors (electrical or air) at the gate and shall be easily removable to allow for towing of the bus.
4. The crossing control arm shall meet or exceed SAE Standard J1133.
5. The crossing control arm shall be constructed of non-corrosive or nonferrous material or treated in accordance with the body sheet metal standard (see Metal Treatment).
6. There shall be no sharp edges or projections that could cause hazard or injury to students.
7. The crossing control arm shall extend at least 70" from the front bumper when in the extended position.
8. The crossing control arms shall extend simultaneously with the stop arm(s) by means of the stop arm controls. An automatic recycling interrupt switch shall be installed to allow the driver to deactivate the control arm when necessary.
9. An electromagnetic device or a stowed bracket shall be installed to stabilize the arm when in the stored position.
10. Crossing control arm shall be Specialty Manufacturing Company, Part #58600, Transpec 4000 series, or prior approved equal.

Defrosters

1. The windshield defroster and defogging system shall provide defogging of the entire windshield, driver's side window, and entrance door glasses by utilizing hot air taken from the heater core with vents across the entire windshield.
2. The defrosting system shall conform to Society of Automotive Engineers' Standards J381 and J382.
3. The defroster and defogging system shall be capable of furnishing heated outside ambient air.
4. Auxiliary fans are not considered defrosting or defogging systems.

5. Portable heaters shall not be used.

Doors

1. Service Door:

- A. The service door shall be in the driver's control, and designed to afford easy release and provide a positive latching device on manual operating doors to prevent accidental opening. When a hand lever is used, no part shall come together that will shear or crush fingers. Manual door controls shall not require more than 25 pounds of force to operate at any point throughout the range of operation.
- B. The service door shall be located on the right side of the bus, opposite and within direct view of the driver.
- C. The service door shall have a minimum horizontal opening of 24 inches and a minimum vertical opening of 68 inches.
- D. The service door shall be a split type, both sections opening outward.
- E. Lower, as well as upper door panels, shall be of approved safety glass. The bottom of each lower glass panel shall not be more than 10 inches from the top surface of the bottom step. The top of each upper glass panel shall not be more than 6 inches from the top of the door.
- F. Vertical closing edges on split type entrance doors shall be equipped with flexible material to protect the children's fingers.
- G. There shall be no door to the left in driver compartment on Types C or D vehicles.
- H. All doors shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.
- I. If air or electric doors are used, the amber warning lights shall be activated from a momentary switch. A three-position switch shall activate the sequence as follows:
 - Position One – door closed; lights off.
 - Position Two – activate red lights, stop arm, and crossing control arm.
 - Position Three – red lights activated, door open, stop arm activated, and crossing control arm activated.

Emergency Exits

1. Emergency Door:

- A. The emergency door shall be hinged on the right side if in the rear end of bus and on the front side if on left or right side of the bus. It shall open outward and be labeled inside to indicate how it is to be opened. If double emergency doors are used on

Type A vehicles, they shall be hinged on the outside edge and shall have a three-point fastening device. A device shall be used that holds the door open to prevent the emergency door from closing during emergencies and school bus evacuation drills. If emergency door locks are used, the vehicle ignition must be disabled until the emergency door lock is deactivated.

- B. The upper portion of the emergency door shall be equipped with approved safety glazing, the exposed area of which shall be at least 400 square inches. The lower portion of the rear emergency door on Types C, and D vehicles shall be equipped with a minimum of 350 square inches of approved safety glazing.
- C. There shall be no steps leading to an emergency door.
- D. The words **EMERGENCY DOOR**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed at the top of or directly above the emergency door or on the door in the metal panel above the top glass, both inside and outside of the bus. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT** in letters at least 2 inches high shall be placed on the exterior body directly above each emergency window.
- E. The emergency door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Padding shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick, and extend the full width of the door opening.
- F. The side emergency door, if installed, must meet the requirements as set forth in FMVSS 217 (a), regardless of its use with any other combination of emergency exits.
 - (1) A left side emergency door shall have a 20 inch unobstructed passageway and no flip seat is to be used. A barrier shall be used just before the door opening.
- G. There shall be no obstruction higher than 1/4 inch across the bottom of any emergency door opening.

2. Additional Emergency Exits:

- A. All school buses shall be equipped with emergency exits in the following capacity vehicles:
 - 0 to 54 passenger: one emergency window exit per side and one roof hatch located midpoint.
 - 55 passenger and above: two emergency window exits per side, and two roof hatches.
- B. Each emergency exit shall comply with FMVSS 217. These emergency exits are in addition to the rear emergency door or exit. Roof hatches must be Transpec

Standard Vent, Model 1970, Specialty Manufacturing 8600, 8900, or 9000 series or prior approved equal.

- (1) Emergency exit windows shall be as evenly spaced as possible under FMVSS 217 guidelines and shall not be obstructed by any devices.
- C. In addition to the audible warning required on emergency doors by FMVSS 217, additional emergency exits shall also be like protected. Warnings for these exits shall be clearly audible to the bus driver.
- D. School bus emergency exits shall be marked with a minimum one inch wide strip of retroreflective tape red, white or yellow in color, to be placed around the outside perimeter of the emergency exit opening, not the emergency exit itself. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed on the body directly above each emergency window.

Emergency Equipment

All emergency equipment shall be installed forward of the front barriers with the exception of the warning devices.

1. Fire Extinguishers:

- A. The bus shall be equipped with at least one steel-case, pressurized, dry chemical fire extinguisher complete with hose to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., approval. A pressure gauge shall be mounted on the extinguisher and easily read without moving the extinguisher from its mounted position. Replacement fire extinguishers should also meet this specification.

The bracket shall be a heavy-duty, snap-in, spring type. Band type holders are not acceptable. Fire extinguisher brackets shall be Brooks Equipment Company # 4SC or Ridgeway Bus Products # 51-05 or prior approved equal.

- B. The fire extinguisher shall have a capacity of **five pounds** with an Underwriters Laboratories total rating of 2A10BC or greater. The operating mechanism shall be sealed with a type of seal that will not interfere with the use of the fire extinguisher.
- C. Fire extinguishers must comply with State Fire Codes.

2. First-Aid Kit:

- A. Bus shall have a removable, moisture-proof and dust-proof first-aid kit stored in a metal container and mounted with a separate bracket in an accessible place in driver's compartment. This place shall be marked to indicate its location. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable.

B. Contents shall include:

- 2 1" x 2 1/2 yards adhesive tape rolls
- 24 sterile gauze pads 3" x 3"

- 100 3/4" x 3" adhesive bandages
- 8 2" bandage compress
- 10 3" bandage compress
- 2 2" x 6" sterile gauze roller bandages
- 2 non-sterile triangular bandages approximately 40" x 36" x 54" with
- 2 safety pins
- 3 sterile gauze pads 36" x 36"
- 3 sterile eye pads
- 1 pair rounded-end scissors
- 1 pair latex gloves
- 1 mouth-to-mouth airway

3. Body Fluid Clean-up Kit:

- A. Each bus shall have a removable and moisture-proof body fluid clean-up kit stored in a metal container. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable. It shall be properly mounted and identified as a body fluid clean-up kit. Must meet OSHA regulations.

4. Warning Devices:

- A. Each school bus shall contain at least three (3) reflectorized triangle road warning devices mounted in an accessible place in the driver's compartment or outside storage compartment. The mounting location in Type A vehicles is optional. These devices must meet requirements in FMVSS 125.

Fire Suppression (Optional)

When a fire suppression system is used, nozzles for suppression systems shall be located in the engine compartment, under the bus, in the electrical panel, or under the dash, but shall not be located in the passenger compartment. The system must include a light or buzzer to alert the driver that the system has been activated.

Floor and Floor Coverings

1. The floor in the underseat area, including the tops of the wheel housing, driver's compartment and toe board, shall be covered with a rubber floor covering or equivalent, having a minimum overall thickness of 1/8 inch and a calculated burn rate of 0.1 or less using the test measures, procedure and formulas in FMVSS 302 Flammability of Interior Materials.
2. The floor covering in the aisle shall be of aisle-type rubber or equivalent, wear resistant, and ribbed. The minimum overall thickness shall be 3/16 inch measured from tops of ribs.
3. The floor covering must be permanently bonded to the floor and must not crack when subjected to sudden changes in temperature. Bonding or adhesive material shall be waterproof and shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the floor-covering material. All seams must be sealed with waterproof sealer.

4. For Type C and D school buses, the manufacturer shall provide a screw-down plate to access fuel tank sending unit that is secured and insulated. The plate shall be mounted so that access is readily available to repair personnel and so that the floor covering is not disturbed during the repair process.
5. The floor shall be of metal or alloy at least equal in strength to 14-gauge prime commercial quality steel and so constructed that exhaust gases cannot enter the passenger compartment.
6. All closures between the bus body and the engine compartment shall be fitted with gas-tight gaskets and pedal openings shall be closed bellows type, gas-tight boots.
7. There shall be a plate, of adequate size, provided to allow for transmission access or service.

Handrail(s)

At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test. A right-hand side assist rail may be provided at the discretion of the local school system.

Heaters

1. The heating system shall be capable of maintaining the temperature throughout the bus of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit during average minimum January temperatures as established by the U. S. Department of Commerce, Weather Bureau, for the area in which the vehicle is to be operated. Shall be capable of defrosting the total windshield area and the service door glass within thirty minutes after initial start with engine at idle speed. The system shall exceed SAE standards J-381 and J-382 performance requirements. **Fuel-fired auxiliary heaters will not be allowed.**

Heater performance shall be measured by the following:

A temperature measurement shall be taken at three locations within the body. These locations taken in the center aisle, thirty-six inches above the floor. The first location is to be thirty-nine inches from the windshield; the second location midpoint of the passenger compartment and the third will be thirty-nine inches from the rear emergency door.

After soaking the bus at twenty degrees F. for fifteen (15) hours, the bus will be started and after thirty (30) minutes, the temperature at each measuring point shall be fifty-five (55) degrees F.

2. If only one heater is used, it shall be a fresh-air or combination fresh-air and recirculation type.
3. If more than one heater is used, additional heaters shall be a recirculating-air type.

4. All heaters installed by body manufacturers shall bear a name plate that shall indicate the heater rating in accordance with SBMI Standard No. 001, with said plate to be affixed by the heater manufacturer which shall constitute certification that the heater performance is as shown on the plate.
5. Heater hoses shall be adequately supported to guard against excessive wear due to vibration. The hoses shall not dangle or rub against the chassis or sharp edges and shall not interfere with or restrict the operation of any engine function.
Heater hoses shall conform to the Society of Automotive Engineers' Standard J20c.
Heater lines on the interior of the bus shall be shielded to prevent scalding of the driver or passengers.
6. Each hot water system installed by a body manufacturer shall include one shut-off valve in the pressure line and one shut-off valve in the return line with both valves at or near the engine in an accessible location.
7. There shall be a water flow-regulating valve, or an electronic valve actuator, installed in the pressure line for convenient operation by the driver while seated.
8. Accessible bleeder valves shall be installed in an appropriate place in the return lines of body company-installed heaters to remove air from the heater lines.
9. Access panels shall be provided to make heater motors, cores, and fans readily accessible for service. An outside access panel may be provided for the driver's heater.

Hinges

All exterior metal door hinges which do not have stainless steel, brass, or nonmetallic hinge pins or other designs that prevent corrosion shall be designed to allow lubrication to be channeled to the center 75% of each hinge loop without disassembly.

Identification

1. School bus bodies shall bear the words, **SCHOOL BUS**, in eight-inch black letters on National School Bus Yellow, on the front and back of the bus (lettering between flasher lights). (See page 51 for Multifunctional School Activity Bus identification requirements.) The name of the school system shall be on each side of the bus in at least 5-inch, black standard, unshaded letters. Lettering shall conform to "Series B" of Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs. Each bus shall be numbered on both sides, front left side and the rear, before being put into service. Bumper numbers may be white or yellow. An agreement between manufacturer and purchaser shall be reached at time order is placed as to who will put the numbers on the buses. Any other numbering shall be optional.
2. Only signs and lettering approved by state law or regulation, limited to the name of the owner or operator and any marking necessary for identification, shall appear on the bus.

3. School bus bodies shall display a high quality 6" x 9" warning sticker on permanent, adhesive, vinyl, bumper-sticker material. To increase visibility, this sticker shall be mounted just under the first or second rub rail at left side of the passenger entrance door. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

UNAUTHORIZED ENTRY ILLEGAL

Any person who attempts to enter a school bus without prior authorization of the driver or other appropriate school official and refuses to leave will be subject to prosecution that may result in fines of up to \$2,000 and up to one year in jail.

Alabama Code Sections 13A-10-2, 13A-7-4

4. Driver Alert Transpec Model 7500 or prior approved equal electronic signage warning traffic when the school bus stops to load or unload students and at railway grade crossings is required.
5. A high quality, 4" x 6", permanent, adhesive, vinyl, warning sticker prompting drivers that driver seat belt use is mandatory on all school buses shall be affixed in the driver compartment in a highly visible location. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

DRIVER SEAT BELT USE REQUIRED

Driver seat belt use is required at all times when driving this vehicle. Failure to do so could result in disciplinary action up to and including suspension or revocation of your Alabama School Bus Driver Certificate or termination.

Alabama Code Section 16-27-6.

Unauthorized Entry Decals and Driver Seat Belt Use Decals are provided by the Alabama State Department of Education.

Inside Height

The inside body height shall be 72 inches or more, measured metal to metal, at any point on the longitudinal center line from the front vertical bow to the rear vertical bow. The inside body height of Type A buses shall be 62 inches or more.

Insulation

1. Ceilings and walls shall be insulated with proper material to deaden sound and reduce vibration to a minimum. If thermal insulation is specified, it shall be fire-resistant and approved by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. If buses are equipped with air conditioning, walls and ceilings must be insulated to improve air conditioner efficiency.
2. If floor insulation is required, it shall be either 5-ply nominal 19/32 inches thick plywood, or a material of equal or greater strength and insulation R value, and it will equal or exceed properties of exterior-type softwood plywood, C-D Grade as specified in standard issued by U. S. Department of Commerce. When plywood is used, all exposed edges shall be sealed.

Interior

1. The interior of the bus shall be free of all unnecessary projections, which include luggage racks and attendant handrails, likely to cause injury. This standard requires inner lining on ceilings and walls. If the ceiling is constructed to contain lapped joints, the forward panel shall be lapped by the rear panel and exposed edges shall be beaded, hemmed, flanged, or otherwise treated to minimize sharp edges.
2. The driver's area forward of the foremost padded barriers will permit the mounting of required safety equipment and vehicle operation equipment.
3. Every school bus shall be constructed so that the noise level taken at the ear of the occupant nearest to the primary vehicle noise source shall not exceed 85 dbA when tested.
4. Any added equipment shall be flush mounted with the exception of the video system.

Lamps and Signals

1. Interior lamps shall be provided which an adequately illuminated aisle and step well. Step well lights shall be illuminated by a service door operated switch, to illuminate only when headlights and clearance lights are on and the service door is opened. An optional driver dome light with a separate switch may be installed at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Clearance lamps shall automatically illuminate when the headlights are in the "on" position.
3. L.E.D. lighting shall be used in all exterior body lamps and signals. Eight-way flashing lights and stop arm shall be strobe-type L.E.D. Manufacturers' front chassis lamps are exempt from this requirement.
4. Definition--School bus alternately flashing red and amber signal lamps are lamps mounted at the same horizontal level, intended to identify the vehicle as a school bus and to inform other users of the highway that such vehicle is preparing to stop, or is stopped, on the roadway to take on or to discharge schoolchildren.
 - A. Master switches will not be allowed on the eight-way, alternately flashing signal lamps.
 - B. Buses shall be equipped with two red lamps and two amber lamps at the rear of the vehicle and two red lamps and two amber lamps at the front of the vehicle. One amber lamp shall be located near each red signal lamp at the same level, but closer to the vertical centerline of the bus.
 - C. The signaling system, including red and amber signal lamps and a stop arm with alternating flashing lamps, shall be so designed and wired as to have the following characteristics:

(1) When the entrance door is closed, a manual push button may be depressed and the amber pilot light and amber warning lights will flash.

(2) When the entrance door is opened, the amber pilot and amber warning lights will go off, and the red pilot and red warning lights will flash; also, the stop arm will be extended and lights on the stop arm will flash.

(3) On closing the entrance door, all lights will go out and the stop arm retract automatically.

(4) If the entrance door is opened without depressing the manual push button, no lights will flash, nor will the stop arm be extended.

D. The area around the lenses of alternately flashing signal lamps shall have a readily visible black border for contrast purposes. Hoods/guards may be provided over front and rear amber warning lights and red warning lights.

5. Bus body shall be equipped with amber rear turn signal lamps at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area. These signal lamps must be connected to the chassis hazard-warning switch to cause simultaneous flashing of signal lamps when needed as a vehicular traffic hazard warning.
6. Rear directional lights shall be mounted not more than 15 inches from the plane of the side of the body, and not more than 14 inches below the glass in the rear of the body. All buses shall have side turn indicators on both sides located within six inches of the floor line.
7. Buses shall be equipped with two red, brake/tail combination lights at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area and shall be mounted on the rear of the bus just inside the turn signal lamps.
 - A. Type A conversion vehicle lamps must be 21 square inches in the lens area. Two combination lamps with a minimum diameter of four inches, or if a shape other than round, a minimum 12 square inches of illuminated area shall be placed on the rear of the body between the beltline and the floor line. The rear license plate lamp may be combined with one lower tail lamp. Stop lamps shall be activated by the service brakes and shall emit a steady light when illuminated.
 - B. In addition to these requirements, all lamps and signals shall comply with applicable SAE specifications.
8. On all buses equipped with a monitor for the front and rear lamps of the school bus, the monitor shall be mounted in full view of the driver. If the full circuit current passes

through the monitor, each circuit shall be protected by a fuse or circuit breakers or other equivalent technology against any short circuit or intermittent shorts.

9. A white flashing strobe light shall be installed on the roof of a school bus not to exceed 1/3 the body length forward from the rear of the roof edge. This light shall have a single white lens emitting light 360 degrees around its vertical axis and may not extend above the roof more than the maximum legal height. A momentary, latching-type switch and a pilot light of low intensity must be included to indicate when the light is in operation. The pilot light shall be incorporated into the switch.
10. If alternating headlights are used (i.e., wig-wag), they must operate in conjunction with the red overhead flashers and stop arm.
11. As an option, other lighting devices may be used with prior approval from SDE.

Metal Treatment

1. All metal used in construction of a bus body shall be zinc-coated or aluminum-coated or treated by an equivalent process before the bus is constructed. Included are such items as structural members, inside and outside panels, door panels and floor sills. Excluded are such items as door handles, grab handles, interior decorative parts and other interior plated parts.
2. In addition to the above requirements, all metal parts that will be painted shall be chemically cleaned, etched, zinc-phosphate-coat and zinc-chrome or epoxy primed or conditioned by equivalent process.
3. In providing for these requirements, particular attention shall be given to lapped surfaces, welded connections of structural members, cut edges punched or drilled hole areas in sheet metal, closed or box sections, unvented or undrained areas and surfaces subjected to abrasion during vehicle operation.
4. As evidence that the above requirements have been met, samples of materials and sections used in construction of the bus body, when subjected to 1,000-hour salt spray test as provided for in latest revision of ASTM Standard B-117 "Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing" shall not lose more than 10 percent of its material by weight.

Mirrors

1. Interior mirrors shall be either clear laminated glass or clear view glass bonded to a backing, which retains the glass in the event of breakage. Mirrors shall have rounded corners and protected edges. Type A buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 16" mirror and Type C, and D buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 30" mirror. It shall be securely attached on the windshield header and so located as to give the driver a clear view of the entire interior of the bus and the road behind.
2. Each school bus shall be equipped with a system of exterior mirrors as defined in FMVSS 111.
 - A. Rear vision mirrors shall be capable of providing a view along the left and right sides of the vehicle which will provide the driver with a view of the rear tires at

ground level, a minimum distance of 200 feet to the rear of the bus and at least 12 feet perpendicular to the side of the bus at a distance of 32 feet back from the front bumper.

- B. The cross view mirror system shall provide the driver with indirect vision of an area at ground level from the front bumper forward and the entire width of the bus to a point where the driver can see by direct vision. The cross view system shall also provide the driver with direct vision of the area at ground level around the left and right front corners of the bus to include the tires and service entrance on all types of buses to a point where it overlaps with the rear vision mirror system. A metal reinforcement plate shall be installed under the hood area of fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite hoods in order to reinforce cross view mirror mounting base area.
 - C. This system of mirrors shall be easily adjustable but be rigidly braced to reduce vibration.
3. Heated and/or remote controlled external, rearview mirrors may be used.

Mounting

- 1. The chassis frames shall support the rear body cross member. The bus body shall be attached to the chassis frame at each main floor sill, except where chassis components interfere, in such a manner as to prevent shifting or separation of the body from the chassis under severe operating conditions.
- 2. Insulation material shall be placed at all contact points between the body and chassis frame on Types A, C and D buses, and shall be so attached to the chassis frame or body that it will not move under severe operating conditions.

Noise Suppression Switch

There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. This switch or switch background shall be red or yellow and labeled. This switch shall be an on/off-type (not momentary) that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. For Type A buses, all radios or communication devices shall be ordered as a body accessory and must be wired thru the noise suppression switch.

Overall Length

The overall length of the bus shall not exceed 45 feet excluding accessories.

Overall Width

The overall width of the bus shall not exceed 102 inches excluding accessories.

Public Address System

Buses may be equipped with a public address system having interior and exterior speakers. Interior speakers shall be flush mounted with bulkhead. No internal speakers other than the driver's communication systems may be installed within four feet of the driver's seat back in its rearmost, upright position.

Retroreflective Material

1. The front and/or rear bumper may be marked diagonally 45 degrees down to the centerline of the pavement with 2" x 1/4" wide strips of non-contrasting retroreflective material.
2. The rear of the bus body shall be marked with strips of retroreflective National School Bus Yellow (NSBY) material to outline the perimeter of the back of the bus using material which conforms with the requirements of FMVSS 571.131 (Table I). The perimeter marking of rear emergency exits per FMVSS 217 and/or the use of retroreflective SCHOOL BUS signs partially accomplish the objective of this requirement. To complete the perimeter marking of the back of the bus, strips of at least one-inch retroreflective NSBY material shall be applied horizontally above the rear windows and above the rear bumper, extending from the rear emergency exit perimeter marking outward to the left and rear corners of the bus. Vertical strips shall be applied at the corners connecting these horizontal strips.
3. **SCHOOL BUS** signs, if not of a lighted design, shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material comprising a background for lettering of the front and/or rear **SCHOOL BUS** signs.
4. The sides of the bus body shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material at least one inch in width, extending the length of the bus body and located (vertically) between the floor line and the belt line.

Rub Rails

1. There shall be one rub rail located on each side of the bus approximately at seat level which shall extend from the rear side of the entrance door completely around the bus body (except emergency door or any maintenance access door) to a point of curvature near the outside cowl on the left side.
2. There shall be one additional rub rail located approximately at the floor line which shall cover the same longitudinal area as the upper rub rail, except at the wheel housing, and shall extend only to radii of the right and left rear corners.
3. Rub rails above the floor line shall be attached at each body post and all other upright structural members.
4. Each rub rail shall be 4 inches or more in width in their finished form, shall be of 16-gauge metal or other suitable material of equivalent strength, suitable to protect body side panels from damage. Rub rails shall be constructed in a corrugated or ribbed fashion.
5. Rub rails shall be applied to the outside of the body or outside body posts. Pressed-in or snap-on rub rails do not satisfy this requirement. For Type A1 vehicles using a chassis manufacturer's body, or for Types A2, C, and D buses using rear luggage or rear engine compartments, rub rails need not extend around rear corners.

6. The bottom edge of the body side skirts shall be stiffened by application of a rub rail, or the edge may be stiffened by providing a flange or other stiffeners.

Seat Belt for Driver

1. The driver's seat shall be equipped with the seat belt anchored to the floor, housed in scabbard and equipped with an emergency locking retractor (one side only). The driver's seat shall be equipped with a Type II occupant protection (lap and shoulder belt). Adjustability of the mounting point for the driver's seat belt pillar loop shall be provided to accommodate all heights and weights of bus drivers without interference with the driver's face or neck. The requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210 shall be met. Integrated seat belts in the driver's seat may be used at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Buses equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts for student seating shall contain at least two belt cutters. One belt cutter must be properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into the driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
3. **The driver's seat belt shall be high visibility orange or lime green in color on all buses except Type A. All Type C and D buses must be equipped with a continuous audible and visual warning signal activated when the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the ignition is in the on position. The warning signal shall be different from low air or emergency exit buzzer. Type A buses must be equipped with warning buzzers as per manufacturer's standard.**

Seats and Crash Barriers

All Type A1 buses, 14,500 pounds GVWR and under shall be equipped with lap/shoulder belts and must meet FMVSS 209 requirements.

1. Seats shall be spaced to obtain a minimum of 24-inch hip-to-knee room measured horizontally at the seat cushion level at the transverse centerline of the seat. In making this measurement from the back of the seat cushion to the back of the seat or barrier in front, upholstery may be placed against padding both forward and rear but padding may not be compressed. Greater seat spacing may be specified on local bids not to exceed the maximum allowable per FMVSS 222.
2. In determining seating capacity of standard school buses, the allowable average rump width shall be 13 inches where a 3-3 seating plan is used, and thirteen (13) or 15 inches where 3-2 seating plan is used on specially-equipped buses.
3. All seats shall be bench style, forward facing, have a minimum depth of 15 inches and conform to the seatback height requirements of FMVSS 222. No transit or activity seat will be used. There shall be no armrest on student seats. No bus shall be equipped with jump seats or portable seats.

4. All seat frames attached to the seat rail shall be fastened with two (2) bolts, washers and nuts or flange-headed nuts. Each seat leg shall be secured to the floor by a minimum of two (2) bolts, washers and nuts. Flange-head nuts may be used in lieu of nuts and washers, or seats may be track-mounted in conformance with FMVSS 222. If track seating is installed, the manufacturer shall supply minimum and maximum seat spacing dimensions applicable to the bus, which comply with FMVSS 222. This information shall be on a label permanently affixed to the bus.
5. The forward most pupil seat on the right side of the bus shall be located so as not to interfere with the driver's vision, not farther forward than the barrier behind the driver or the rear of the driver's seat when adjusted to its rear-most position.
6. All seats and backs shall be a standard color unless changed by purchaser. Seat and back cushions of all seats shall be designed to safely support the designated number of passengers under normal road conditions encountered in school-bus service. All seat coverings shall meet FMVSS regulations and School Bus Manufacturer Technical Council Guidelines.
7. The driver seat shall be of the high back, air **or** mechanical suspension, box pedestal-type with a minimum seat back adjustment of 15 degrees and with a head restraint to accommodate a 95 percentile adult male (95 percentile adult male as defined in FMVSS 208). The driver's seat shall be secured with nuts, bolts, and washers or flanged-headed nuts. The driver's seat shall have a minimum distance between the steering wheel and seatback of not less than eleven inches, with a minimum aft adjustment of six inches. The seat shall be contoured with adequate padding and support on the sides and shall have a cloth cover. It shall be designed to provide lumbar support and shall be positioned on the centerline of the steering wheel.
8. All restraining barriers and passenger seats shall be constructed with materials that, at a minimum, meet the criteria contained in the School Bus Seat Upholstery Fire Resistant Test.
9. A driver storage pouch shall be provided on the front of the barrier behind driver's seat. This pouch shall be fire resistant and the same color as the bus seats.
10. Crash barriers shall be placed behind the driver's seat and step well. An aluminized courtesy panel on the right side of the bus shall extend to the floor and to the wall. Stanchions are not acceptable.
11. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-age Children in School Buses."

Steering Wheel

See Chassis Standard.

Steps

1. The first step at the service door shall be no less than 10 inches and no more than 14 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step. Ground clearance shall be no less than 10 inches.

A. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step.

2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by the thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

Step Treads

1. All steps, excluding the floor line platform area, shall be covered with a 3/16-inch pebble-tread-type, rubber floor covering or other materials equal in wear and abrasion resistance to top grade rubber.
2. The backing of the step tread may be a minimum 24-gauge cold roll steel or polymer and shall be permanently bonded to the rubber surface.
3. The step tread shall have a 1 and 1/2 inch white nosing as an integral piece without any joint.
4. The rubber portion of step treads shall have the following characteristics:
 - A. Special compounding for good abrasion resistance and high coefficient of friction.
 - B. Flexibility so that it can be bent around a 1/2 inch mandrel both at 130 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 degrees Fahrenheit without breaking, cracking, or crazing.
 - C. Show a durometer hardness of 85 to 95.

Stirrup Step

There shall be one stirrup step on all Types C, and D buses on each side of the front of the body for use in cleaning the windshield and lamps. There shall be one handle on each side, at least eight inches in length suitably located for the driver to use while cleaning the windshield and lamps. The stirrup steps and the handles shall be of rust-resistant material. Transit buses shall have provisions for cleaning the windshield. Toe eyes in the bumper with a handle(s), above the windshield, are acceptable.

Stop Arm Signal

All stop arm signals shall be of the strobe-type and have high-intensity, retroreflective coating. The stop signal - arm(s) shall comply with the requirements of FMVSS 131.

Stop Arm Signal - Rear (Optional)

A rear stop arm is permissible when used in conjunction with the original stop arm. The rear stop arm location on dual stop arm-equipped buses shall be on the left side of the bus, as

close as is practical to the left rear corner of the body. Airlines, if used, must not be readily accessible to students inside or outside of the bus.

Storage Compartment

A lockable, waterproof, exterior storage compartment may be located on the bus body at the discretion of the local school system. The minimum size of the storage compartment shall be 12 inches high, 15 inches deep, and 25 inches wide and shall be marked "storage". Alternate storage compartment locations should be specified in local school system bid specifications.

All lockable interior storage compartments containing emergency equipment shall be equipped with a warning buzzer installed so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked. All such compartments shall be clearly labeled as to containing emergency equipment.

Sun Shield

Each Type C and D school bus shall have an interior adjustable sun visor with minimum measurements of 6 inches by 30 inches. It shall be installed in a position convenient for use by the driver, anchored on both ends, and shall be tinted transparent plastic or phlex-o-glass. On all Type A buses, the sun shield shall be the manufacturer's standard. An additional sun shield may be added over the left side driver window at option of the local school system.

Tailpipe

See Chassis Standard.

Traction-Assisting Devices

1. Where required or used, sanders shall:
 - A. Be of the hopper cartridge-valve type.
 - B. Have a metal hopper with all interior surfaces treated to prevent condensation of moisture.
 - C. Be of at least 100-pound (grit) capacity.
 - D. Have a cover on the filler opening of the hopper, which screws into place, sealing the unit airtight.
 - E. Have discharge tubes extending to the front of each rear wheel under the fender.
 - F. Have no-clogging discharge tubes with slush-proof, non-freezing rubber nozzles.
 - G. Be operated by an electric switch with a telltale pilot light mounted on the instrument panel.
 - H. Be exclusively driver controlled.

- I. Have a gauge to indicate the hopper needs refilling when it is down to one quarter full.
2. Automatic traction chains may be installed.

Trash Container and Holding Device

1. Where required or used, the trash container shall:
 - A. Be of fire resistant polyethylene or equivalent material.
 - B. Be no greater than 14-quart capacity.
 - C. Be secured by a holding device that is designed to prevent movement and allow easy removal and replacement.
 - D. Be installed in an accessible location in the driver's compartment, not obstructing passenger use of the service door or access to emergency equipment.

Undercoating

1. The entire underside of the bus body, including floor sections, the cross member and below floor line side panels, shall be coated with rust-proofing the compound for which compound manufacturer has issued notarized certification of compliance to the bus body builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C-250b using modified test procedures for the following requirements*:
 - A. Salt spray resistance-pass modified to 5% salt and 1000 hours.
 - B. Abrasion resistance-pass.
 - C. Fire resistance-pass.

*Test panels are to be prepared in accordance with paragraph 4.6.12 of TT-C-520b with the modified procedure requiring that the test be made on a 48-hour air-cured film at a thickness recommended by the compound manufacturer.

2. The undercoating compound shall be applied with suitable airless or conventional spray equipment to recommend film thickness and shall show no evidence of voids in cured film.

Ventilation

1. Auxiliary fans if installed shall meet the following requirements:
 - A. Fans for left and right sides shall be placed in a location where they can be adjusted for maximum effectiveness and do not obstruct vision to any mirror. **NOTE:** All Type A buses may be equipped with one fan.
 - B. Fans shall be a nominal 6" diameter.
 - C. Fan blades shall be covered with a protective cage. Each fan shall be controlled by a separate switch.

2. The body shall be equipped with a suitably controlled ventilating system of sufficient capacity to maintain the proper quantity of air under operating conditions, without having to open windows except in extremely warm weather.
3. A static-type, non-closeable exhaust ventilator shall be installed in the roof.

Video Surveillance Equipment

1. Video equipment may be installed at the discretion of the local school system. If installed, video equipment shall be digital with a minimum of two camera positions. One camera position must show driver compartment.
2. While video equipment does not have to be flush mounted, positioning of video surveillance equipment shall not interfere with the safe operation of the bus or student safety. It is recommended that the SDE be contacted prior to the installation of new video equipment.

Wheel Housing

1. The wheel-housing opening shall allow for easy tire removal and service.
2. The wheel housing shall be attached to the floor sheets in such a manner as to prevent any dust, water or fumes from entering the body. The wheel housing shall be constructed of at least 16-gauge steel or other material of equal tensile strength.
3. The inside height of the wheel housing above the floor line shall not exceed 12 inches.
4. The wheel housing shall provide clearance for installation and use of tire chains on single and dual (if so equipped) power-driving wheels.
5. No part of a raised wheel housing shall extend into the emergency door opening.

Windshield and Windows

1. All glass in the windshield, the windows, and doors shall be of approved safety glass so mounted that a permanent mark is visible and of sufficient quality as to prevent distortion of view in any direction.
2. Glass in the windshield shall be heat absorbent, laminated plate. The windshield shall be large enough to permit the driver to see the roadway clearly, shall be slanted to reduce glare, and shall be installed between the front corner posts that are so designed and placed as to afford minimum obstruction to the driver's view of the roadway.
3. All full side windows shall open vertically so as to provide an unobstructed opening of not less than 9 inches high and 22 inches wide, obtained by lowering the window. Windows shall be a split-sash type and so installed as to provide an emergency exit. There shall be no horizontal, transit or activity-style windows in the student compartment.

4. All exposed edges of glass shall meet FMVSS requirements.
5. A tinted and shaded windshield with 73% light transmitted and a six-inch shaded band across the top shall be installed at the factory. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturers one-piece windshield may be equipped with an O.E.M. shade band windshield with a band of approximately 4 inches in height.
6. All windows in the passenger compartment shall be tinted with 28% light transmitted. The driver's compartment side window and entrance door windows shall be tinted with 70- 75% light transmitted.

Windshield Washers

A windshield washer system shall be provided that will service the entire wiped surface area.

Windshield Wipers

1. A windshield wiping system, two speed or variable speed, with an intermittent feature shall be provided. The wipers shall meet the requirements of FMVSS 104.
2. The wipers shall be operated by one or more air or electric motors of sufficient power to operate the wipers. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-piece windshield may be equipped with two wipers driven by either one or two electric motors.

Wiring

1. All wiring shall conform to current standards of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
2. Circuits
 - A. Wiring shall be arranged in circuits as required with each circuit protected by a circuit breaker or electronic protection device. A system of color and number coding shall be used and an appropriate identifying diagram shall be provided to the end user along with the wiring diagram provided by the chassis manufacturer. **A system of color and number coding shall be used on buses. The following body interconnecting circuits shall be color-coded as noted:**

<u>Function</u>	<u>Color</u>
Left Rear Directional Light	Yellow
Right Rear Directional Light	Dark Green
Stoplights	Red
Back-up Lights	Blue
Taillights	Brown
Ground	White
Ignition Feed, Primary Feed	Black

The color of cables shall correspond to SAE J1128.

- B. Wiring shall be arranged in at least six regular circuits as follows:
- (1) Head, tail, stop (brake) and instrument panel lamps.
 - (2) Clearance and step well lamps. The step well lamp shall be actuated when the service door is opened.
 - (3) Dome lamp.
 - (4) Ignition and emergency exits signal.
 - (5) Turn signal lamps.
 - (6) Alternately flashing signal lamps.
- C. Any of the above combination circuits may be subdivided into additional independent circuits.
- D. Each heater and defroster shall have its own circuit breakers or other equivalent technology.
- E. Whenever possible, all other electrical functions (such as sanders and electric-type windshield wipers) shall be provided with independent and properly protected circuits.
- F. Each body circuit shall be coded by number or letter on a diagram of circuits and shall be attached to the body in readily accessible location.
- G. There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. The switch shall be labeled and alternately colored. This switch shall be an on/off-type that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. Noise suppression switch on Type AI buses shall be limited to bus body accessories.
3. The entire electrical system of the body shall be designed for the same voltage as the chassis on which the body is mounted.
 4. All wiring shall have an amperage capacity equal to or exceeding the designed load. All wiring splices are to be done at an accessible location and noted as splices on the wiring diagram.
 5. A body-wiring diagram of easily readable size shall be furnished with each bus body or affixed in an area convenient to the electrical accessory control panel.
 6. The body power wire shall be attached to a special terminal on the chassis.

7. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet.
8. Wires and tubing shall be enclosed within body panels.

SECTION IV –SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction

Equipping buses to accommodate students with special needs is discretionary depending upon the needs of the passengers. While one bus may be fitted with a lift, another may have seat belts installed to secure child seats. Buses so equipped are not to be considered a separate class of school bus, but simply a regular school bus, which is equipped for special accommodations.

The specifications in this section are intended to be supplementary to specifications in the chassis and body sections. In general, specially equipped buses shall meet all the requirements of the preceding sections plus those listed in this section. It is recognized by the entire industry that the field of special transportation is characterized by varied needs for individual cases and by a rapidly emerging technology for meeting those needs. A flexible, “common sense”, approach to the adoption and enforcement of specifications for these vehicle, therefore, is prudent.

By federal regulation, buses, including school buses, are defined as vehicles designed to carry eleven or more (passengers including the driver). Vehicles designed with 10 or fewer passenger positions (including the driver) cannot be certified as buses. For this reason, the federal vehicle classification Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle, or MPV, must be used by manufacturers for these vehicles in lieu of the School Bus. In determining passenger capacity, wheelchair positions are counted as passenger positions. This classification system, while requiring compliance with a less stringent set of Federal Standards for MPV’s does not preclude state or local agencies or these specifications from requiring compliance of school bus-type MPV’s with the more stringent Federal Standards for school buses.

The following standards address modifications as they pertain to school buses that, with a standard seating arrangement prior to modification, would accommodate more than 10 persons. If by addition of a power lift, mobile seating device positions or other modifications, the capacity is reduced such that vehicles become MPV’s, the intent of these standards is to have these vehicles be required to meet the same standards they would have had to meet prior to such modifications, and such MPV’s are included in all references to school buses and requirements for school buses which follow:

Definition – Specially-Equipped School Bus

A specially-equipped school bus is any school bus that is primarily designed, equipped, or modified to accommodate students with special needs.

General Requirements

1. School buses designed for transporting students with special transportation needs shall comply with these specifications and with FMVSS applicable to their GVWR category.
2. Any school bus to be used for the transportation of children who are confined to a wheelchair or other mobile positioning device, or who require life support equipment which prohibits use of the regular service entrance, shall be equipped with a power lift, unless a ramp is needed for unusual circumstances related to passenger needs.

3. School buses used to transport children confined to wheelchairs or other mobile positioning devices **shall meet either item A or B below.**
 - A. Type C and D buses with wheelchair positions mounted forward of the rear axle shall have a 30-inch aisle to both front entrance and rear emergency exit door.
 - B. Type C and D buses equipped with a rear-mounted wheelchair lift, and wheelchair seating positions in the rear shall have air-ride suspension on the rear. School buses using this configuration must employ 3-2 (39"-30") seating to allow access to the front door exit in case of emergency.

Type A school buses 14,500 lbs GVWR and below are exempt from these requirements.

Air Conditioning

Special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. **Refer to page 14, School Bus Body Standards, for minimum air conditioning standards.**

Aisles

All buses equipped with a power lift shall provide sufficient aisle space to enable emergency evacuation through front and rear exits. For specific requirements refer to 3A and 3B in the General Requirements above.

Communication System

Each special needs bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Crash Barriers

1. Crash barrier shall be placed between the lift and any seat position (bench seat or wheelchair position). Stanchions are not acceptable.
2. There shall be a padded crash barrier approximately 8 inches in front of the forward edge of the seat cushion of all passenger seats that do not have another seat approximately 27 inches in front of them. There shall be a padded crash barrier or seat in front of any wheelchair position unless it is contiguous with and behind another wheelchair position. The forward-most barrier on both sides of the bus shall have a full-width, aluminized courtesy panel extending to the floor.

Evacuation Blanket

A minimum of two fire-retardant, evacuation blankets, Tie Tech Evacuation Transporter Part # 1013, or prior approved equal, and storage pouch shall be provided. **The location to secure the evacuation blanket shall be easily accessible and determined by the purchaser at the time of the bid.**

Glazing

Tinted glazing may be installed in all doors, windows and windshield consistent with federal, state, and local regulations.

Identification

Buses with power lifts used for transporting physically handicapped students shall display three universal handicapped symbols located below the windowpane. Such emblems shall be white on blue background, shall not exceed 12 inches in size, and shall be of a high-intensity retroreflectorized material meeting U. S. Department of Transportation FHWA FP-85 Standards. Symbols shall be located on the lift door, the rear of the bus, and the front left side of the bus.

Passenger Capacity Rating

In determining the passenger capacity of a school bus for purposes other than actual passenger load (i.e., vehicle classification, or various billing/reimbursement models), any location in a school bus intended for securing an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid during vehicle operations may be regarded as four designated seating positions. Similarly, each lift area may be regarded as four designated seating positions.

Power Lift

1. The option shall be provided to the local purchaser to have the lift located either in front of or behind the rear wheels, on the right side of the bus, but confined within the bus body when not extended.
2. All lifts shall be fully automatic with sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility user to reach a securement location.
3. The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least 6 (six), based on the ultimate strength of the material. Non-working parts, such as the platform, frame, and attachment hardware, which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least 3 (three), based on the ultimate strength of the material.
4. The lifting mechanism and platform shall be able to lift a minimum of 800 pounds.
5. Controls shall be provided that enable the operator to activate the lift mechanism from either inside or outside the bus. The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, transmission, or door, as required by FMVSS 403 and 404. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

6. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied. No manual emergency operation shall require more than 2 (two) minutes to lower an occupied wheelchair to ground level.
7. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches per second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.
8. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the platform during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the platform is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform, which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position, shall have a barrier a minimum 1 and 1/2 inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier), which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically raise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the platform is more than 3 inches above the roadway or sidewalk and the platform is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged, or disengaged by the lift operator, provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.
9. The platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over 1/4 inch high and shall be slip resistant. The platform shall have a minimum width of 34 inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the platform surface to 30 inches above the surface of the platform, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface of the platform.
10. Any openings between the platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed 5/8 inches in width. When the platform is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and the vehicle floor shall not exceed 1/2 inches horizontally and 5/8 inches vertically.
11. The outboard entrance ramp or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp and the transition plate from the inboard edge of the platform to the vehicle floor shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of three inches, and the transition

from roadway or sidewalk to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to 1/4 inches.

Thresholds between 1/4 inch and 1/2 inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

12. The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than three degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll or pitch) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 60 pounds applied through a 26" by 26" test pallet at the centroid of the platform.
13. No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches per second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches per second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3 g.
14. The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchair and mobility aid users.
15. Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces, or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The platform may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.
16. Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1 and 1/4 inches and 1 and 1/2 inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than 1/8 inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1 and 1/2" knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle. Any wheelchair frame utilizing a horizontal overhead support shall have padding at least 1" in thickness extending the full width of support.
17. A re-settable circuit breakers or other equivalent technology shall be installed between the power source and the lift motor if electrical power is used. It shall be located as close to the power source as possible, but not within the passenger/driver compartment.
18. Lift design shall prevent excessive pressure that could damage the lift system when the platform is fully lowered or raised, or that could jack the vehicle.

19. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a lift:
 - A. A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - B. Detailed instructions regarding use of the lift and readily visible when the lift door is open, including a diagram showing the proper placement and positioning of wheelchair/mobility aids on lift.
20. The lift manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the lift. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
21. Each lift shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses. In addition, the lift manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request of the original titled purchaser, shall provide a **Notarized Certificate of Conformance**, either original or photocopied, which states that the lift system meets all the applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses.

Ramp

Emergency ramps may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Regular Service Entrance

1. Steps
 - A. The first step at the service door shall be not less than 10 inches and not more than 14 inches from the ground when measured from the top of the step based on standard chassis specifications.
 - B. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.
5. At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test.
6. An assist rail shall be provided on the right-hand side.

Restraining Devices

1. On power-lift equipped vehicles, seat frames may be equipped with attachments or devices to which belts, restraining harnesses or other devices may be attached. Attachment framework or anchorage devices, if installed, shall conform to FMVSS 210.
2. Seat belt assemblies are optional. Seat belt assemblies may be installed on special needs buses. If seat belt assemblies are installed on special needs buses, they shall be of the lap/shoulder belt configuration. Seat belt assemblies shall be installed by the manufacturer, and must conform to FMVSS 209. Type A school buses with a GVWR of 14,500 pounds or below are required to have lap/shoulder belt assemblies.
3. Child restraint systems, which are used to facilitate the transportation of children who in other modes of transportation would be required to use a child, infant, or booster seat, shall conform to FMVSS 213 and 222.
4. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "**Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-Age Children in School Buses.**"

Seating Arrangements

Flexibility in seat spacing to accommodate special circumstances shall be permitted to meet passenger requirements. All seating shall be forward facing. **Floor plans for special needs buses shall be designed with emphasis on placing wheelchair positions forward of the rear axle.**

Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant

For purposes of better understanding the various aspects and components of this section, the term securement or phrase securement system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s), which secure the wheelchair/mobility aid. The term restraint or phrase restraint system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s) used to restrain the occupant of the wheelchair/mobility aid. The phrase securement and restraint system is used to refer to the total system, which secures and restrains both the wheelchair/mobility aid and the occupant.

1. Securement and restraint system--general
 - A. The Wheelchair/Mobility Aid Securement and Occupant Restraint System shall be designed, installed, and operated to accommodate passengers in a forward-facing orientation within the bus and shall comply with all applicable requirements of FMVSS 222. Gurney-type devices shall be secured parallel to the side of each bus.
 - B. The securement and restraint system, including the system track, floor plates, pockets, or other anchorages shall be provided by the same manufacturer, or be certified to be compatible by manufacturers of all equipment/systems used.
 - C. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device and an occupant restraint share a common anchorage, including occupant restraint designs that attach the occupant

restraint to the securement device or the wheelchair/mobility aid, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the loads of both the securement device and occupant restraint applied simultaneously, in accordance with FMVSS 222 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).

- D. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) is shared with an occupant restraint, the wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a force twice the amount as specified in Section 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- E. The bus body floor and sidewall structures where the securement and restraint system anchorages are attached shall have equal or greater strength than the load requirements of the system(s) being installed.
- F. The occupant restraint system shall be designed to be attached to the bus body either directly or in combination with the wheelchair/mobility aid securement system, by a method, which prohibits the transfer of weight or force from the wheelchair/mobility aid to the occupant in the event of an impact.
- G. When an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the securement and restraint system shall limit the movement of the occupied wheelchair/mobility aid to no more than 2 inches in any direction under normal driving conditions.
- H. The securement and restraint system shall incorporate an identification scheme, which will allow for the easy identification of the various components and their functions. It shall consist of one of the following, or combination thereof:
 - (1) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement (webbing or strap assemblies) and the occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be of contrasting color or color shade.
 - (2) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assemblies) and occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be clearly marked to indicate the proper wheelchair orientation in the vehicle, and the name and location for each device or belt assembly; i.e., front, rear, lap belt, shoulder belt.
- I. All attachment or coupling devices designed to be connected or disconnected frequently shall be accessible and operable without the use of tools or other mechanical assistance.
- J. The securement and restraint system hardware and components shall be free of sharp or jagged areas and shall be of a non-corrosive material or treated to resist corrosion in accordance with Section 4.3(a) of FMVSS 209.

- K. The securement and restraint system shall be located and installed such that when an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured, it does not block access to the lift door or emergency door.
 - L. A device for storage of the securement and restraint system *shall* be provided. When the system is not in use, the storage device shall allow for clean storage of the system, shall keep the system securely contained within the passenger compartment, shall provide reasonable protection from vandalism, and shall enable the system to be readily accessed for use.
 - M. The entire securement and restraint system, including the storage device, shall meet the flammability standards established in FMVSS 302.
 - N. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) and restraint belt assembly shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable FMVSS requirements. In addition, the system manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request by the original titled purchaser, shall provide a notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system meets all of the requirements as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - O. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a securement and restraint system:
 - (1) A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - (2) Detailed instructions regarding use, including a diagram showing the proper placement of the wheelchair/mobility aids and positioning of securement devices and occupant restraints, including correct belt angles.
 - P. The system manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
2. Wheelchair/mobility aid securement system
- A. Each securement system location shall consist of a minimum of four anchorage points. A minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in front of the wheelchair/mobility aid and a minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in the rear. The securement anchorages shall be attached to the floor of the vehicle and shall not interfere with passenger movement or present any hazardous condition.
 - B. Each securement system location shall have a minimum clear floor area of

30" x 48". Additional floor area may be required for some applications. Consultation between the user and the manufacturer is recommended to ensure adequate area is provided.

- C. The securement system shall secure common wheelchair/mobility aids and shall be able to be attached easily by a person having average dexterity and who is familiar with the system and wheelchair/mobility aid.
 - D. As installed, each securement anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222. When multiple securement devices share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the force indicated above, multiplied by the number of securement devices sharing that anchorage.
 - E. Each securement device, if incorporating webbing or a strap assembly, shall comply with the requirements for Type 1 safety belt systems, in accordance with Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - F. The securement system shall secure the wheelchair/mobility aid in such a manner that the attachments or coupling hardware will not become detached when any wheelchair/mobility aid component deforms, when one or more tires deflate, and without intentional operation of a release mechanism (e.g., a spring clip on a securement hook).
 - G. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 2,500 pounds when tested in accordance with FMVSS 209.
 - H. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall provide a means of adjustment of manufacturer's design, to remove slack from the device or assembly.
 - I. Each securement device, webbing, or strap assembly shall be of the automatic, retractable type.
3. Occupant restraint system
- A. A Type II-A occupant restraint system, which meets all applicable requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210, shall provide for restraint of the occupant. *For buses equipped with track seating, the occupant restraint shoulder track for the lap shoulder belt assembly shall be installed the full length of all floor track.*
 - B. The occupant restraint system shall be made of materials, which do not stain, soil, or tear an occupant's clothing, and which are resistant to water damage and fraying.
 - C. Each restraint system location shall have not less than one anchorage, of manufacturer's design, for the upper end of the upper torso restraint.

- (1) The anchorage for each occupant's upper torso restraint shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 1,500 pounds (6,672 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
- D. Each wheelchair/mobility aid location shall have not less than two floor anchorages for the occupant pelvic and the connected upper torso restraint.
- (1) Each floor anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - (2) When multiple occupant restraints share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) multiplied by the number of occupant restraints sharing the common anchorage in accordance with FMVSS 222.
- E. Each floor and wall anchorage which secures the occupant restraint to the vehicle and which is not permanently attached, shall be of a "positive latch" design, and shall not allow for any accidental disconnection.

Special Light

Doorways, in which lifts are installed, shall have, lighting as required by FMVSS 403 and 404.

Special Service Entrance

1. Power lift equipped bodies shall have a special service entrance to accommodate the power lift. Door materials, panels and structural strength shall be equivalent to the conventional service and emergency doors. Color, rub rail extensions, lettering and other exterior features shall match adjacent sections of the body.
2. The special service entrance and door shall be located on the right side of the bus and shall be designed so as not to obstruct the regular service entrance. All doors shall have positive fastening devices to hold doors in the open position.
3. Each door shall have windows, set in a waterproof manner, which are visually similar in size and location to adjacent non-door windows. Glazing shall be of same type and tinting (if applicable) as standard fixed glass in other body location.
4. A drip molding shall be installed above the opening to effectively divert water from entrance.
5. Door posts and headers from entrance shall be reinforced sufficiently to provide support and strength equivalent to the areas of the side of the bus not used for special service entrance.

6. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with a device that will actuate a visible signal located in the driver's compartment when the door is open and ignition is in "on" position.
7. A switch shall be installed so that the lifting mechanism will not operate when the lift platform door is closed.
8. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of the door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

Support Equipment and Accessories

1. Each bus shall contain at least two belt cutters. One properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into his/her driver's seat. The second belt cutter shall be stored in a location in the passenger compartment that is accessible to the bus aide or driver, but not accessible to students. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use and must have a full handgrip.
2. Special equipment or supplies which are used on the bus for mobility assistance, health support, or safety purposes shall meet any local, federal, or engineering standards which may apply, including proper identification.

Equipment which may be used for these purposes includes, but is not limited to:

- A. Wheelchairs and other mobile seating devices (see section on Securement System for Mobile Seating Devices/Occupant).
 - B. Crutches, walkers, canes, and other ambulating devices.
 - C. Medical support equipment. This may include respiratory devices such as oxygen bottles (which should be no larger than 22 cubic feet for liquid oxygen and 38 cubic feet for compressed gas), or ventilators. Tanks and valves should be located and positioned to protect them from direct sunlight, bus heater vents, or other heat sources. Other equipment may include intravenous and fluid drainage apparatus. Appropriate medical placarding, if needed, shall be added by the LEA.
3. All portable equipment and special accessory items, including the equipment listed above, shall be secured at the mounting location to withstand a pulling force of five times the weight of the item, or shall be retained in an enclosed, latched compartment. The compartment shall be capable of withstanding forces applied to its interior equal to five times the weight of its contents without failure to the box's integrity and securement to the bus. Exception: If these standards provide specific requirements for securement of a particular type of equipment, the specific standard shall prevail (i.e., wheelchairs).

Technology and Equipment, New

It is the intent of these specifications to accommodate new technologies and equipment that will better facilitate the transportation of students with special needs. When a new technology, piece of equipment or component is desired to be applied to the school bus it must meet the following criteria:

- A. The technology, equipment, or component shall not compromise the effectiveness or integrity of any major safety system. (Examples of safety systems include, but are not limited to, compartmentalization, the eight-lamp warning system, emergency exits and the approved color scheme.
- B. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not diminish the safety of the interior of the bus.
- C. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not create additional risk to students who are boarding or exiting the bus or are in or near the school bus loading zone.
- D. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not require undue additional activity and/or responsibility for the driver.
- E. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall generally increase efficiency and/or safety of the bus, generally provide for a safer or more pleasant experience for the occupants and pedestrians in the vicinity of the bus or shall generally assist the driver and make his/her many tasks easier to perform.
- F. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

SECTION V – ALTERNATIVE FUEL STANDARDS

1. **School systems considering the use of alternative fuels such as bio-diesel, liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), compressed natural gas (CNG), electric or the purchase of alternative-fuel buses shall contact the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130 for information and written approval prior to initiating the bid process. Written requests must, at a minimum, provide the SDE with detailed specifications including the specific design, performance criteria, alternative-fuel type and safety specifications for the alternative fuel or buses.**
2. The guidelines contained herein shall pertain to school buses approved by the Alabama State Department of Education to operate on alternative-fuel sources.
 - A. Any company or individual providing alternative-fuel school buses to school systems shall provide appropriate certifications as well as, maintenance, repair and trouble-shooting information and safety training for each system. All maintenance on alternative-fuel buses shall be performed by personnel who are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency for the alternative fuel.
 - C. These companies or individuals shall submit to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130, documentation certifying that the requirements of this section have been met.
3. The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.
4. Fuel blends containing used cooking oil will not be allowed.

SECTION VI - OPTIONS

School systems should contact the their state school bus inspector or the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section prior to the purchase and/or installation of any optional or after-market equipment. This is to ensure that the equipment and/or its installation is in compliance with the current Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses.

Locking Fuel Compartment Door

Provide at the option of the purchaser a lock and key to secure the fuel compartment door.

Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment

Provide at the option of the purchaser a storage compartment located in the driver's compartment to house the emergency equipment. It shall be a locked compartment with a warning buzzer attached so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked.

SECTION VII - MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS (MFSAB)

DEFINITION:

A Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB) is a school bus constructed to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) and Alabama Minimum School Bus Specifications. It must be purchased or leased as a new bus and may only be used for extracurricular activities. **These buses may not be used to transport students to and from schools or between schools for the purpose of attendance.**

The following exceptions to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for regular route buses shall be allowed for these vehicles.

Identification:

1. The bus body shall bear the words “**ACTIVITY BUS**” in a contrasting color at least 8 inches high in the area where “school bus” is normally positioned. Lettering and numbering shall conform to FMVSS and Alabama Minimum Specifications and shall meet reflectivity standards. Bus numbering on this bus may be of a contrasting color.
2. The name of the school system shall be displayed in at least five-inch letters on both sides of the bus in the beltline area. **NO SIGNS OR LOGOS** shall be applied to any area of the bus including the bumpers. The name of the school may be displayed in the beltline area. No signs, logos, or other items shall be displayed on the windows of the bus.

Color:

The local school with school system approval may determine the color of the activity bus. The color scheme may utilize any combination of up to **THREE** colors. This combination may be in addition to an optional white roof. The color National School Bus Yellow (SBMTC-008 Publication) shall not be used as a part of the color scheme.

School systems and/or vendors shall submit preliminary color schemes to the Alabama Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section for approval **prior to the purchase or manufacture** of a Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB).

Seating:

Transit style seats, which meet all aspects of FMVSS 222 and 302, may be used in lieu of regular school bus seats.

Lighting and Warning Devices:

All activity buses shall meet state and federal standards for normal school bus lighting and warning device requirements with the following exceptions:

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with alternately flashing amber or red signal lamps used for loading and unloading students.

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with stop arm signals or crossing control arms.

INSPECTIONS:

Annual inspection by Alabama Department of Education (SDE) state school bus inspectors and monthly inspections by local school bus inspectors shall be performed on all Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) as required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

REGULATIONS:

These buses shall be owned by the local school system or leased from private school bus transportation contractors. All Alabama laws, Rules of the State Board of Education, and other applicable regulations pertaining to the operation of school buses and certification of school bus drivers shall apply to Multifunctional School Activity Buses.



Disposal of Used School Buses



The procedures outlined in this document should be used in order to assure the proper disposal of school buses that are sold or otherwise removed from your school system's school bus fleet.

If the bus is sold to another school system, private school, or other agency that will continue to use the vehicle as a school bus, only the name of your system, the state inspection sticker, and the tag should be removed. **If the bus is sold or traded to a dealer only state inspection sticker and the tag should be removed.** The school bus dealer will remove the name of the school system, which could increase the value of the bus.

Alabama law requires that school buses be equipped with signal lamps and other visual signals and markings that clearly identify the vehicle as a school bus. School buses are also equipped with specialized equipment in order to help protect students, school bus drivers, and motorists. These visual markings, signals, and other specialized equipment, which include amber and red flashing lights, stop signs, warning signs on the rear of the bus, school bus lettering, and crossing control arms, are peculiar to school buses and may not be used on other vehicles, except as provided under Alabama law. Accordingly, the disposal of school buses requires measures above and beyond those necessary for the disposal of other school system vehicles.

To avoid possible liability, improve security, and also ensure compliance with the law, the following procedures should be followed when disposing of buses that will no longer be used as school buses:

1. Disable the overhead amber and red flashing lamps and stop arm used when loading and unloading students.
2. Disable the crossing control arm.
3. Remove all references to the entire name of the system on the sides of the bus, not just the name of the county or city.
4. Remove the words "SCHOOL BUS" on the **front and rear** of the bus.
5. Remove the Alabama State Inspection Sticker from the windshield.
6. Remove the county or municipal tag from the vehicle before the sale.

Questions regarding the proper disposal of used school buses should be addressed to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama at 334-242-9730.

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS QUICK REFERENCE CHART

TYPE A-I SCHOOL BUS

Type A-I and A-II buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
All type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE A-II SCHOOL BUS (Over 14,500 pounds)

CAPACITY	BRAKE LINING SIZE	GAWR FRONT	GAWR REAR	GVWR TOTAL	TIRE SIZE
10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply

Type A-II school buses exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have air brakes.

TYPE C SCHOOL BUS

10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	15,000	24,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
48-54	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	17,000	26,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
55-72	4" Front 7" Rear	9,000	19,000	29,000	10R x 22.5 14 ply

Type C school buses exceeding 72 capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C-1 SCHOOL BUS

10-36	Four-wheel disc	6,000	13,000	19,000	225 x 70R 19.5 - 12 Ply
-------	-----------------	-------	--------	--------	-------------------------

TYPE D FRONT ENGINE

10-53	4" Front 6" Rear	10,000	17,000	27,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
54-66	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	17,000	28,000	10R x 22.5 12 ply
67-78	5" Front 7" Rear	13,000	19,000	32,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	20,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

TYPE D REAR ENGINE

42-66	5" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	31,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
67-78	6" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	31,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	21,000	34,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

Type D school buses exceeding 84-capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses



Alabama Department of Education
Division of Administrative and Financial Services
Pupil Transportation Section
Montgomery, Alabama
334-242-9730

Joseph B. Morton
State Superintendent of Education

Warren Craig Pouncey
Deputy State Superintendent of Education
Administrative and Financial Services

Joe Lightsey
Director of Pupil Transportation

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

**Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses
Changes Document**

Changes to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses 2012 occur on the following pages and headings. All changes appear in italics with the exception of deletions. For noted deletions refer to the 2011 specifications for comparison.

NOTE: Page numbers in 2011 specifications and 2012 specifications may not coincide

Page	Section	General Description of Change
<i>1</i>	<i>Certification</i>	<i>Wording clarification on bus design capacity</i>
<i>4</i>	<i>Brakes</i>	<i>#3A Allows air operated disc brakes on Type C & D buses as an option with SDE approval.</i>
<i>4</i>	<i>Brakes</i>	<i>#3A item 2 Wording change to support inclusion of air-operated disc brakes</i>
<i>7</i>	<i>Engine</i>	<i>Reference to alternative fuel information added to engine section</i>
<i>7</i>	<i>Engine</i>	<i>Retrofitting of existing engines prohibited</i>
<i>16</i>	<i>Construction</i>	<i>New language regarding body construction requirements</i>
<i>27</i>	<i>Lamps and Signals</i>	<i>Item #9 Momentary switched required for strobe light.</i>
<i>42</i>	<i>Special Needs</i>	<i>Item #9 Power Lift Platform width must be a minimum of 34"</i>
<i>52</i>	<i>Alternative Fuels</i>	<i>Wording change on alternative fuel buses</i>
<i>52</i>	<i>Alternative Fuels</i>	<i>Item #4 Retrofitting of existing engines prohibited</i>



INTRODUCTION

Alabama law (32-5-8) requires the Alabama State Board of Education to adopt minimum standards to govern the specifications for all new school buses and the overall operation of all school buses in the state of Alabama. This responsibility also extends to the inspection of school buses being sold and operated in the state of Alabama. The primary reason for the development of specifications and the inspection of school buses is to enhance the safety of our school buses. We must ensure that Alabama school buses continue to provide the safest ride available for our most precious cargo—our children.

My deepest thanks are extended to each member of the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) School Bus Specifications Committee for their service, hard work, and commitment to the task. Special thanks are also extended to Specifications Committee Chairperson, Greg Ray. For many years, his experience, dedication, and leadership have helped to ensure a successful meeting as well as exceptional specifications. School bus specifications always begin as a product of many individual thoughts and ideas. However, they culminate in standards, which help assure the safest school buses possible for Alabama's students as well as vehicles, which provide a true value for Alabama's taxpayers.

Special thanks must also be expressed to Alabama's school bus dealers, their school bus manufacturers and the many vendors and others in the school bus industry that assist in the SDE and the Committee in the development of these standards. Without their participation, the specifications process would be significantly weakened.

The Minimum Specifications for Alabama School Buses become effective on April 1, 2010. If you have questions or recommendations regarding any of the specifications in this document, please contact Mr. Ray or any member of the specifications committee. Committee members are listed on the following page.

Joe Lightsey, Director
Pupil Transportation
Alabama State Department of Education
Montgomery, Alabama 36130
334-242-9730
joel@alsde.edu

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

Alabama Department of Education (SDE)
School Bus Specifications Committee
February 1, 2011

Vernon Ash
cobra@gulfcoastuniversalriders.com
Mobile County Schools
3274 International Drive
Mobile, AL 36606
(251) 221-5242

Harvey Barger
hbarger@tcss.net
Tuscaloosa County Schools
3700 68th Avenue
Northport, AL 35476
(205) 342-2636

Joey Barnett
jbarnett@mcbe.net
Marion County Schools
188 Winchester Drive
Hamilton, AL 35570
(205) 921-3771

Jerry Cataldo
jerry.cataldo@trussvillecityschools.com
Trussville City Schools
113 N. Chalkville Road
Trussville, AL 35173
(205) 228-3033

Keith Clark
khclark@morgank12.org
Morgan County Schools
1325 Point Mallard Parkway SE
Decatur, AL 35601
(256) 353-6442

David Gibson
dgibson@pcboe.net
Phenix City Schools
P. O. Box 460
Phenix City, AL 36867
(334) 298-2823

Don Ingram
dingram@auburnschools.org
Auburn City Schools
P. O. Box 3270
Auburn, AL 36831-3270
(334) 887-4915

Bob Brunson, ASTA President
rbbrunson@mcpss.com
3274 International Drive
Mobile, AL 36606
(251) 221-5260

Leslie Mathison
mathison.leslie@aidb.state.al.us
AIDB
P.O. Box 698
Talladega, AL 35160
(256) 761-3443

Tony Morris
morristrn@yahoo.com
Pell City Schools
1000 Bruce Etheredge Parkway
Pell City, AL 35128-3213
(205) 884-4800

Fay Parker
fay.parker@lcschools.org
Lauderdale County Schools
P. O. Box 278
Florence, AL 35631
(256) 760-1338

Bobby Martin
bmartin@chilton.k12.al.us
Chilton County Schools
1705 Lay Dam Road
Clanton, AL 35045
(205) 280-2950

Turner Oliver
olivert@pcboe.org
Pickens County Schools
P. O. Box 32
Carrollton, AL 35447
(205) 367-8244

Harold Pearson
pearsonssr@powernet.org
Cherokee County Schools
130 E. Main Street
Centre, AL 35960
(256) 927-2671

Joe Lightsey
joel@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerome Cook
cook8500@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Jeff Duke
papajd@charter.net
State Department of Education

Obie Fuller
ofuller@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Brad Holley
bholley@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Greg Ray
gwrap@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jeff Snider
jsnider@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Sammy Weatherspoon
sammy_weatherspoon@att.net
State Department of Education

Jerry Lassiter
jlassiter@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Joe Beams
joebeams@aol.com
State Department of Education

Cathy Staggs
ctstaggs@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Ray Jones
No email
State Department of Education

ALABAMA
SCHOOL BUS INSPECTION
HANDBOOK



PREPARED BY
ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
DIVISION OF ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL SERVICES
TRANSPORTATION SECTION
MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA

The **Alabama School Bus Inspection Handbook** was developed by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) Pupil Transportation Section as a standard for school bus safety inspections at the local school system level. This handbook is provided as a guideline for local school system school bus inspectors, shop foremen, technicians, maintenance supervisors, and transportation directors in conducting the monthly inspections required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

The goal of this handbook is to provide uniform standards for state and local school bus inspections. The manual also identifies the critical items to be inspected on Alabama school buses, how they are to be inspected, and which items should remove a school bus from service until the item is repaired (“out of service” items).

Copies of the handbook have been distributed to all local school systems.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<u>SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS</u>	1
<u>SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS</u>	3
Air Cleaner.....	3
Axles.....	3
Brakes.....	3
Bumper (Front).....	5
Certification.....	5
Color.....	5
Directional Lights.....	5
Drive Shaft.....	6
Electrical System.....	6
Engine.....	7
Exhaust System.....	7
Fenders, Hoods.....	8
Frame.....	8
Fuel Tank.....	9
Governor.....	9
Heating System, Provision for.....	10
Horn.....	10
Instruments & Instrument Panel.....	10
Oil Filter.....	11
Openings.....	11
Passenger Load.....	11
Retarder System (Optional).....	11
Road Speed Control	11
Shock Absorbers.....	11
Springs/Suspension Systems	11
Steering Gear.....	12
Tires and Rims.....	12
Transmission.....	13
Turning Radius.....	13
Undercoating.....	13
Weight Distribution.....	13

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

PAGE

Air Conditioning.....	14
Aisle.....	14
Back-up Warning Alarm.....	14
Battery/Batteries.....	14
Bumper (Front).....	15
Bumper (Rear).....	15
Ceiling.....	15
Certification.....	15
Chains (Tire).....	15
Color.....	15
Communication Systems	16
Construction.....	16
Crossing Control Arm.....	17
Defrosters.....	17
Doors.....	18
Emergency Exits.....	18
Emergency Equipment.....	20
Fire Extinguishers.....	20
First-Aid Kit.....	20
Body Fluid Clean-up Kit.....	21
Warning Devices.....	21
Fire Suppression	21
Floor and Floor Coverings.....	21
Handrail(s)	22
Heaters.....	22
Hinges	23
Identification.....	23
Inside Height.....	24
Insulation.....	24
Interior.....	25
Lamps and Signals.....	25
Metal Treatment.....	27
Mirrors.....	27
Mounting.....	28

<u>SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS (Continued)...</u>	PAGE
Noise Suppression Switch.....	28
Overall Length.....	28
Overall Width.....	28
Public Address System	28
Retroreflective Material.....	29
Rub Rails.....	29
Seat Belt for Driver.....	30
Seat and Crash Barriers.....	30
Steering Wheel (See Chassis Standards).....	31
Steps.....	32
Step Treads.....	32
Stirrup Step.....	32
Stop Arm Signal.....	32
Stop Arm Signal-Rear (Optional)	32
Storage Compartment.....	33
Sun Shield.....	33
Tailpipe.....	33
Traction-Assisting Devices.....	33
Trash Container and Holding Device.....	34
Undercoating.....	34
Ventilation.....	34
Video Surveillance Equipment.....	35
Wheel Housing.....	35
Windshield and Windows.....	35
Windshield Washers.....	36
Windshield Wipers.....	36
Wiring.....	36

SECTION IV - SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction.....	39
Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus	39
General Requirements.....	39
Air Conditioning.....	40
Aisles.....	40

Communication System	40
Crash Barriers	40
Evacuation Blanket.....	40
Glazing.....	41
Identification	41
Passenger Capacity Rating.....	41
Power Lift.....	41
Ramp.....	44
Regular Service Entrance.....	44
Restraining Devices.....	45
Seating Arrangements.....	45
Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant.....	45
Special Light.....	49
Special Service Entrance.....	49
Support Equipment and Accessories.....	50
Technology and Equipment New.....	50
<u>SECTION V - ALTERNATE FUEL SOURCE STANDARDS</u>	52
<u>SECTION VI - OPTIONS</u>	52
Locking Fuel Compartment Door	52
Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment.....	52
<u>SECTION VII – MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS</u>	53
Definition	53
Identification	53
Color	53
Seating	53
Lighting and Warning Devices.	53
Inspections	54
Regulations	55
<u>DISPOSAL OF USED SCHOOL BUSES</u>	55
<u>SECTION VIII – QUICK REFERENCE CHART</u>	56

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS FOR SCHOOL BUSES
EFFECTIVE April 1, 2010

SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Standards

1. All school buses ordered by local education agencies beginning **April 1, 2010**, shall (1) meet the applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS), and (2) meet Alabama minimum specifications for school buses. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of an applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard, as referred to in this section, and the Alabama minimum specifications, the requirements of the FMVSS shall control. **School buses not meeting minimum specifications will not be certified by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE). Under unusual circumstances and with adequate justification, exceptions to these specifications may be granted by the SDE director of pupil transportation.**

Certification

2. All school buses shall display a **durable, legible** certification data plate mounted in the driver's compartment of the vehicle. On this data plate, the manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and the local education agency that the school bus meets or exceeds all standards as specified herein, is in compliance with the applicable FMVSS, and is manufactured from all new components. All chassis and body information shall appear on this certification data plate. *The bus body data plate shall specify the maximum design capacity of the body. The maximum design capacity of any bus body size shall be the number of passengers the bus can transport before special needs modifications.*

Used School Buses

3. Used school buses purchased for use by a school system in Alabama shall meet all of the legal Federal and Alabama requirements for school buses that were in effect on the date the vehicle was manufactured. It is recommended that school systems contact the SDE Pupil Transportation prior to the purchase of any used school bus.

Bid Requirements

4. In order to be in compliance with the State Bid Law, school bus purchases shall be by competitive bidding. Bid forms to the body manufacturer shall contain certain options required by the chassis manufacturer, which may result in changes in normal Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or alterations to the body. For special needs buses, the school bus body manufacturer shall submit floor plans which include dimensions at the time bid quotations are submitted showing:
 1. Location of the emergency door, emergency windows and roof hatches.
 2. Aisle and staging areas and seat spacing.
 3. Track locations and/or wheelchair securement positions.

4. Location of air conditioning evaporator(s) **for all buses** ordered with air conditioning.
5. **Service Manual/Diagnostic Equipment**
Body and/or chassis suppliers, including integral (forward control) suppliers, shall provide each school district purchasing school buses with one complete set of the most current service manuals, as specified by the school system, available to include both body and chassis at no additional cost upon delivery of bus. Provisions for manuals and diagnostic equipment, including, but not limited to code books, software, and training, etc, shall be agreed upon during the pre-bid process. Diagnostic equipment shall not be included as a part of the bus bid and cannot be used to determine low bidder.
6. **New Technology**

New technology not in the present specifications shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

7. **School Bus Definitions**

School bus capacity is determined based on body size before modifications are made.

TYPE A: A Type A school bus is a conversion or body constructed upon a van-type or cutaway front-section vehicle with a left side driver's door designed for carrying more than 10 persons. This definition shall include two classifications: Type A-I with a GVWR of 10,000 or under; and Type A-II, with a GVWR over 10,000 pounds. All Type A buses shall have dual rear wheels. **Type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.**

Type A buses exceeding a GVWR of 14,500 pounds shall have air brakes.

TYPE B: A Type B school bus is a conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section vehicle chassis, or stripped chassis, with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels. All Type B buses 14,500 pounds or under shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE C: A Type C school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The entire engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.

Type C buses may not exceed 72-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C1 A Type C1 school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and a maximum of 19,000 pounds and designed for carrying a maximum of 36 persons. This is a special category

of a Type C school bus designed to be an alternate to a Type A1, Type A2.
This bus shall not exceed a maximum capacity of 36 persons.

TYPE D: A Type D school bus is a body installed upon a chassis, with the engine mounted in the front, midship, or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or midship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels.
Type D buses may not exceed 84-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS

Air Cleaner

1. The engine intake air cleaner shall be furnished and properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

The intake air system for diesel engines shall have an air cleaner restriction indicator properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

Axles

1. The front and rear axles and suspension systems shall have a gross axle weight rating (GAWR) at ground commensurate with the respective front and rear weight loads of the bus loaded to the rated passenger capacity.
2. Vehicle minimum axle capacities at ground when loaded shall meet the body manufacturer's GVWR specified by the FMVSS. Axle assemblies shall have minimum capacities at ground as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
3. Front wheel bearings must be oil filled on all Type C and D buses.

Brakes

1. A braking system, including service brake and parking brake, shall be provided and shall comply with all CDL pretrip inspection requirements. All Type A-1 and A-II school buses below 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications. Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
2. Buses using air in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals located within the interior of the driver compartment and clearly audible and visible to the driver, that will give a continuous warning when the air pressure available in the system for braking is 60 psi (pounds per square inch) or less. An air pressure gauge shall be provided in the instrument panel capable of complying with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.

3. Antilock brake systems for either air or hydraulic brakes shall include control of all axles in compliance with FMVSS 105 or 121.

A. Air brakes shall be installed on **all** chassis exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR.

Exception: Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes. *Air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses with approval from the SDE.*

All air-operated brake systems shall:

- (1) Meet all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for air brakes.
 - (2) Be S-cam *or four-wheel-disc-type* brakes. *Air-disc brakes may be installed on Type C and D school buses with approval from the SDE.* If S-cam-type, the camshaft, when applying brakes, shall rotate in the same direction as the wheels. Automatic slack adjusters shall be the same design on all wheels. Dust covers shall be installed on all wheels unless deleted through local option at the time of the bid.
 - (3) Have at least a 12 CFM air compressor.
 - (4) Be equipped with a parking and emergency brake. A manual control, clearly identified, shall be within easy reach of the driver. The parking brake valve shall comply with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.
 - (5) S-cam air brakes shall have brake lining sizes as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
 - (6) Have a reservoir capacity, which is equal to or greater than two (2) times total volume of all brake activators at full travel.
 - (7) Have air dryers installed. (Bendix AD-9, Midland DA33100 or prior written approved equal). Air dryers shall be serviceable at the local level.
- B. Buses using a hydraulic assist-booster in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals, readily audible and visible to the driver, that will provide continuous warning in the event of a loss of fluid flow from the primary source, or loss of electric source powering the back-up system.
- (1) The system shall be equipped with a source of hydraulic pressure, automatically initiated upon loss of power from primary source, and operating independently of the primary power source.
 - (2) All brake systems shall be designed to permit visual inspection of brake lining wear without the removal of any chassis components.

Bumper, Front

1. The front bumper shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer for all school bus types, unless there is specific agreement between the chassis manufacturer and the body manufacturer. When Type D chassis are supplied to a body company by a chassis manufacturer, the body company shall supply the front bumper as part of the body installation.
2. The front bumper shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material at least 3/16 inch thick, not less than 8 inches wide (high) and shall extend beyond forward-most part of the body, grille, hood, and fenders and shall extend to the outer edges of the fenders at the bumper's top line. Bumpers on Type A buses may be built to manufacturers' specifications.
3. Tow eyes or hooks shall be furnished and attached so as not to project beyond the front bumper. Tow eyes or hooks, attached to the frame chassis, shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer. This installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's standards. Type A buses are exempt from tow hook requirements.
4. The bumper shall be designed or reinforced so that it will not deform, when the bus is lifted by a chain that is passed under the bumper (or through the bumper if holes are provided for this purpose) and attached to both tow eyes. For the purpose of meeting this standard, the bus shall be empty and positioned on a level, hard surface, and both tow eyes shall share the load equally. Front bumper shall not be deformed when lifted by a bumper jack positioned on the bumper attachment points.

Certification

The chassis manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Color

1. The chassis, including the front bumper, shall be black. The hood, cowl and fenders shall be in national school bus yellow. The hood may be painted with non-reflective paint.
2. Wheel rims shall be painted black, gray, or yellow on all buses.
3. Multifunctional School Activity Buses shall be exempt from these requirements. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Directional Lights

1. Each Type C chassis may be equipped with Type A front directional lights of the two-faced type mounted on the top of the fender and the hood side panel, or have an amber turn signal and marker light that is an integral part of the headlight assembly. This turn signal/marker light shall be seen from the front and the side of the vehicle.

Drive Shaft

1. Torque capacity of the drive shaft assembly shall at least equal maximum engine torque as developed through lowest transmission gear reduction.
2. Each drive shaft shall be equipped with protective metal guard or guards to reduce the possibility of it whipping through the floor or dropping to ground if broken. (Body manufacturer is responsible for Mini Bus.)

Electrical System

1. Battery
 - A. The storage batteries shall have a minimum total of 1,500 cold cranking amps at 0 degrees Fahrenheit. Type A buses shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
 - B. Since all batteries in Type, C, and D buses are to be located in a sliding tray, the battery shall be temporarily mounted on the chassis frame by the chassis manufacturer.

In these cases, the final location of the battery and the appropriate cable lengths shall be according to the current SBMTC Design Objectives.

2. Alternator
 - A. All Type A and B buses up to 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall have a minimum 130 amperes alternator.
 - B. All C and D buses over 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall be equipped with a heavy-duty truck or bus-type alternator capable of producing a minimum output rating of 185 amperes; The alternator shall be capable of producing a minimum of 50 percent of its maximum rated output at the engine manufacturer's recommended idle speed.
 - C. All C and D, buses equipped with an air conditioner or electrical power lift shall have a minimum 270 amperes alternator.
 - D. A direct-drive alternator is permissible in lieu of a belt drive. A belt drive shall be capable of handling the rated capacity of the alternator with no detrimental effect on other driven components.
 - E. Refer to SBMTC Design Objectives, most current edition, for estimating required alternator capacity.
3. Wiring
 - A. All wiring shall conform to current applicable recommended practices of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
 - (1) All wiring shall use standard colors and number coding and each chassis shall be delivered with a wiring diagram that coincides with the wiring of the chassis. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet or loom.

B. The chassis manufacturer shall install a readily accessible terminal strip or plug on the body side of the cowl, or at an accessible location in the engine compartment of vehicles designed without a cowl, that shall contain the following terminals for the body connections:

- (1) Main 100-amp body circuits
- (2) Tail lamps
- (3) Right turn signal
- (4) Left turn signal
- (5) Stop lamps
- (6) Back-up lamps
- (7) Instrument panel lights (rheostat controlled)

C. Daytime running lamps shall be provided.

4. Circuits

A. An appropriate identifying diagram (color and number coded) for electrical circuits shall be provided to the body manufacturer for distribution to the end user.

Engine Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

See Fire Suppression System page 21.

Engine Information

1. Buses shall be equipped with diesel engines with minimum horsepower requirements as follows:

Type A buses under 29 passenger – manufacturer’s specifications

Type C or D buses –210 hp minimum

Type D buses 78 passengers and above – 230 hp minimum

An engine heater may be installed as per the manufacturer's specifications.

Alternative-fuel engine information can be found on page 51, under Alternative Fuel Standards.

The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.

Exhaust System

1. The exhaust pipe, muffler/ after treatment device, and tail pipe shall be outside the bus body and securely attached to the bus frame. The chassis manufacturer shall furnish an exhaust system with a tail pipe of sufficient length to exit the rear of the bus or at the left side of the bus body no more than 18 inches forward of the front edge of the rear wheelhouse opening. If designed to exit on the side of the bus, the tailpipe shall extend to the skirtline with a turndown angle of approximately 45 degrees. With the exception of special needs buses, Type A vehicles may have the manufacturers standard exhaust system. The bus shall not automatically begin to regenerate the diesel particulate filter while the bus is not moving. The switch to

regenerate the diesel particulate filter shall be readily accessible to the technician, but not accessible to the driver

2. The muffler and the tail pipe shall be constructed of aluminized, or equivalent corrosion resistant material. The tailpipe shall be made of at least 16 gauge material and shall be mounted in such a way that it will not cause damage to brake lines
3. The muffler/ after treatment device, and exhaust pipe shall be properly insulated from the fuel tank, lines, and connections by a protective shield at any point where it is 4 inches or less from fuel tank, lines or connections.
4. The tailpipe on all special needs vehicles shall be routed to the left of the left frame rail to allow for the installation of a lift on the right side of the vehicle.
5. No exhaust pipe shall exit beneath an emergency exit or the fuel fill.
6. On all Type C and D buses, the tailpipe shall exit at the bottom edge of the rear bumper or through the rear bumper. If tailpipe exits through the rear bumper sufficient clamps or brackets must be provided to eliminate rattles. If the tailpipe exits beneath the rear bumper, it shall be turned down approximately 45 degrees and positioned in such a way that it cannot be crushed beneath the rear bumper.

The opening in the tailpipe shall direct all exhaust gases clear of the perimeter of the bus body. Manufacturers must make reasonable efforts to ensure that exhaust gases will not produce burns on students or other individuals present.

Fenders, Hoods

1. The total spread of outer edges of front fenders, measured at the fender line, shall exceed the total spread of the front tires when the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
2. Front fenders shall be properly braced and free from any body attachments.
3. A fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite tilt hood shall be provided. The hood opening and closing effort shall be minimized to aid the driver with pre-trip inspections and service. If the hood is not designed to remain secure in the open position, a safety prop will be required. The wiring harness shall be a “quick disconnect” type to aid with servicing.

Frame

1. The frame or equivalent shall be of such design and strength characteristics as to correspond at least to standard practice for trucks of the same general load characteristics, which are used for highway service.
2. Any secondary manufacturer that modifies the original chassis frame shall guarantee the performance of workmanship and materials resulting from such modification.

3. Any frame modification shall not be for the purpose of extending the wheelbase.
4. Holes in top or bottom flanges or side units of the frame, and welding to the frame, shall not be permitted except as provided or accepted by the chassis manufacturer.
5. Frame lengths shall be provided in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.

Fuel Tank

1. All Type C, and D chassis above 170-inch wheelbase shall have a minimum 60-gallon fuel tank with a 55-gallon actual draw. The tank shall be filled and vented to the outside of the body, the location of which shall be so that accidental fuel spillage will not drip or drain on any part of the exhaust system. **Type C-1 school buses are exempt from this tank size requirement.**
2. No portion of the fuel system, which is located to the rear of the engine compartment, except the filler tube, shall extend above the top of the chassis frame rail. Fuel lines shall be mounted to obtain maximum possible protection from the chassis frame.
3. Fuel filters shall be installed as per manufacturer's specifications. Fuel filtration shall include water detection and separation. At least one fuel filter shall have a replaceable spin-on or cartridge-type element.
4. Fuel tank installation shall be in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives for location on the chassis right frame rail or between frame rails; the filler tube shall be located on the right side of the bus.
5. Type A buses may meet manufacturer's specifications.
6. The fuel tank on vehicles constructed with a power lift unit may be mounted on left chassis rail or behind rear wheels.
7. Installation of alternative fuel tanks shall comply with all applicable fire codes.
8. The fuel tank on buses equipped with diesel engines shall have interior baffles to help prevent fuel starvation on inclines.

Governor

1. An engine governor is permissible. When it is desired to limit road speed, a road speed governor should be installed.
2. An electronic engine speed limiter shall be provided and set to limit engine speed not to exceed the maximum revolutions per minute as recommended by the engine manufacturer. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Heating System, Provision for

1. The chassis engine shall have plugged openings for the purpose of supplying hot water for the bus heating system. The opening shall be suitable for attaching a pipe thread/hose connector. The engine shall be capable of supplying water having a temperature of at least 170 degrees Fahrenheit at a flow rate of 50 pounds/per minute at the return end of 30 feet of one inch inside diameter automotive hot water heater hose (SBMI Standard No. 001--Standard Code for Testing and Rating Automotive Bus Hot Water Heating and Ventilating Equipment).

Horn

Buses shall be equipped with a horn or horns of standard make with each horn capable of producing a complex sound in bands of audio frequencies between 250 and 2,000 cycles per second and tested per the Society of Automotive Engineers Standard J--377. There shall be no air horns.

Instruments and Instrument Panel

1. Chassis shall be equipped with the following instruments and gauges (lights in lieu of gauges are not acceptable except as noted):
 - A. Speedometer
 - B. Odometer shall show accrued mileage to six digits not including tenths.
 - C. Tachometer
 - D. Voltmeter
 - (1) An ammeter with graduated charge and discharge with the ammeter and its wiring compatible with generating capacities is permitted in lieu of a voltmeter
 - E. Oil-pressure gauge
 - F. Water temperature gauge
 - G. Fuel gauge
 - H. Upper beam headlight indicator
 - I. Air brake indicator gauge
 - (1) A light indicator in lieu of a gauge is permitted on vehicles equipped with hydraulic-over-hydraulic brake system.
 - J. Turn signal indicator
 - K. Glow-plug indicator light where appropriate
 - L. A twelve-volt accessory outlet with cover

2. All instruments shall be easily accessible for maintenance and repair.
3. Instruments and gauges shall be mounted on the instrument panel in such a manner that each is clearly visible to the driver while in a normal seated position in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.
4. The instrument panel shall have lamps of sufficient candlepower to illuminate all instruments and gauges and the shift selector indicator for an automatic transmission.

Oil Filter

An Oil filter with replaceable element shall be provided and connected by flexible oil lines if it is not of built-in or engine-mounted design. The oil filters shall have a capacity of at least one (1) quart.

Openings

All openings in the floorboard or firewall between the chassis and the passenger-carrying compartment, such as for gearshift selector and parking brake lever, shall be sealed.

Passenger Load

1. Actual GVW is the sum of the chassis weight, plus the body weight, plus the driver's weight, plus total seated pupil weight. For purposes of calculation, the driver's weight is 150 pounds. For purposes of calculation, the pupil weight is 120 pounds per pupil.
2. Actual GVW shall not exceed the chassis manufacturer's GVWR for the chassis, nor shall the actual weight carried on any axle exceed the chassis manufacturer's Gross Axle Weight Rating. (GAWR)

Retarder System (Optional)

A retarder system, if used, shall limit the speed of the fully loaded school bus at 19.0 mph or 30 km/hr on a 7% grade for 3.6 miles or 6 km.

Road Speed Control

When it is necessary to control vehicle maximum speed, a vehicle speed limiter shall be utilized. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Shock Absorbers

Buses shall be equipped with front and rear double-action shock absorbers compatible with the manufacturer's rated axle capacity at each wheel location.

Springs/Suspension Systems

1. The capacity of the springs or suspension assemblies shall be commensurate with the chassis manufacturer's GVWR.
2. Front springs shall be of the leaf type, shall have a stationary eye at one end, and shall

be protected by a wrapper leaf in addition to the main leaf. Rear leaf springs shall be of the progressive type.

3. Air ride suspension may be used on the front and rear of Type C and D buses in lieu of leaf-type springs. Body and chassis parts must clear tires with air bags in fully deflated condition or steering wheel turned fully to the left or right. If brake dust covers are used, inspection holes of adequate size and location for easily viewing brake linings shall be provided.

Steering Gear

1. The steering gear shall be approved by the chassis manufacturer and designed to assure safe and accurate performance when the vehicle is operated with maximum load and at maximum speed.
2. If external adjustments are required, the steering mechanism must be accessible to accomplish the same.
3. No changes shall be made in the steering apparatus, which are not approved by the chassis manufacturer.
4. There shall be a clearance of at least two inches between the steering wheel and the cowl, instrument panel, windshield, or any other surface.
5. Power steering is required and shall be of the integral type with integral valves.
6. The steering system shall be designed to provide a means for lubrication of all wear-points, if wear-points are not permanently lubricated.
7. The steering wheel shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Tires and Rims

1. Radial tubeless tires and rims of proper size and tires with a load rating commensurate with chassis manufacturer's GVWR shall be provided. Hubcaps are not permitted.
2. Dual rear tires shall be provided on all school buses.
3. All tires on any given vehicle shall be of the same size and the load range of said tires shall meet or exceed the gross axle weight rating as required by FMVSS 120.
Low profile tires are acceptable. However, they must meet the load range and ply requirements as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet. It is recommended that dish-type rims be used with low profile tires.
4. If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire and rim assembly, it shall be of the same size as those mounted on the vehicle.
5. If a tire carrier is required, it shall be suitably mounted in an accessible location outside the passenger compartment.

Transmission

An automatic transmission shall be required on all buses. Type A buses may be built to manufacturer's specifications. Types C, and D buses must have a PTS 2500 series or prior approved equal. The automatic transmission shall have at least four forward-gear ratios, plus integral torque converter. The transmission shift quadrant shall provide at least four forward drive ranges plus neutral and reverse ranges. Within the range selected, ratio changes shall be effected automatically and at full engine power if desirable, and without use of an engine disconnect clutch. A PTS3000 or prior approved equal is required for chassis over 33,000 pounds GVWR.

Type C-1 school buses may use Allison PTS 1000 or PTS 2200 automatic transmission or prior approved equal.

Turning Radius

1. Chassis with a wheelbase of 264 inches or less shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 42 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.
2. Chassis with a wheelbase of 265 inches or more shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 44 and 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.

Undercoating

The chassis manufacturer, or agent thereof, shall coat the undersides of steel or metallic-constructed front fenders with rust-proofing compound for which compound manufacturers have issued notarized certification of compliance to the chassis builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C520B using modified test.

Weight Distribution

The weight distribution of a fully loaded bus on a level surface shall be such as not to exceed the manufacturer's front gross axle rating and rear gross axle weight rating.

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

Air Conditioning

All special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. Other buses **may** be equipped with an air conditioning unit at the discretion of the local school system.

Type A school buses may be built to manufacturers standards to include dash mounted evaporator and air duct systems. All Type C and D buses are required to have bulkhead mounted **rear** air conditioner evaporator systems. Front mounted evaporator units on Type C and D buses may include bulkhead-mounted or dash-mounted evaporator units. All other evaporator units shall be mounted on the left side behind the driver position so as not to interfere with entrance or exit or any wheelchair position.

All buses ordered with air conditioning shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Floor--All flooring shall be 5/8-inch exterior-grade plywood over steel flooring.
2. All buses shall have a white roof.
3. Windows--All passenger windows shall be tinted with 28% light transmission.
4. All buses shall meet insulation standards as per Alabama bus specifications.
5. **Optional** mud flaps to protect the condenser may be installed.
6. Be equipped with a high-idle feature.

Minimum Btu air conditioning system per passenger size:

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. 10-30-passenger | 40,000 Btu |
| 2. 31-48-passenger | 53,000 Btu |
| 3. 49-60-passenger | 78,000 Btu |
| 4. 61-84-passenger | 100,000 Btu |

Aisle

1. All emergency doors shall be accessible by a 12-inch minimum aisle. The aisle shall be unobstructed at all times.

Back-Up Warning Alarm

An automatic, audible alarm with a minimum of 87dbA and maximum of 112dbA shall be installed behind the rear axle and shall comply with the Society of Automotive Engineers published Back-up Alarm Standards (SAE 994). The alarm shall have a protective deflector shield.

Battery/Batteries

1. Batteries are to be furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
2. When the battery/batteries is mounted as described in the Chassis Standard, the body manufacturer shall securely attach the battery on a slide-out or swing-out tray in a closed, vented compartment in the body skirt, so that the battery is accessible for convenient servicing from the outside. The battery compartment door or cover shall be hinged at the front and secured by an adequate and conveniently-operated latch or other type fastener.

Bumper (Front)

On a Type D school bus, if the chassis manufacturer does not provide a bumper, it shall be provided by the body manufacturer. The bumper will conform to the standards in the chassis section.

Bumper (Rear)

1. Bumpers shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material, at least 3/16-inch thick, and shall be a minimum of 9-1/2 inches wide (high) on all Types C, and D buses. Type A buses shall have a minimum of an 8-inch rear bumper.
2. Bumpers shall be wrapped around the back corners of the bus. It shall extend forward at least 12 inches, measured from the rear-most point of the body at the floor line.
3. Bumpers shall be attached to the chassis frame in such a manner that it may be easily removed. It shall be so braced as to withstand impact from a rear or side impact. It shall be so attached as to discourage hitching of rides.
4. Bumpers shall extend at least one inch beyond rear-most part of body surface measured at the floor line.
5. Tow eyes or hooks may be furnished on the rear and attached so they do not project beyond the rear bumper. The installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's specifications.
6. The bottom of the rear bumper shall not be more than 30 inches above ground level.

Ceiling

See Insulation and Interior, Body Standard.

Certification

The body manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Chains (Tire)

See Wheel Housing Body Standard.

Color

1. The school bus body shall be painted National School Bus Yellow.
2. The body exterior paint trim, bumper, lamp hoods and lettering shall be black.
3. The roof of the bus must be painted white not to extend below the drip rails on the sides of the body.

4. Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) shall be exempt from this requirement. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Communication Systems

Each bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Construction

1. Construction shall be of prime commercial quality steel or other material with strength at least equivalent to all-steel as certified by the bus body manufacturer. All such construction materials shall be fire resistant. *No exterior structural, fiberglass roof or side panels are allowed. All Type C and D school buses shall meet the requirements of Section A below.*

A. Side Intrusion Test: The bus body shall be constructed to withstand an intrusion force equal to the curb weight of the vehicle or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less. Each vehicle shall be capable of meeting this requirement when tested in accordance with the procedures set forth below. The complete body structure, or a representative seven-body section mock up with seats installed, shall be load-tested at a location 24±2 inches above the floor line, with a maximum 10 inch diameter cylinder, 48 inches long, mounted in a horizontal plane.

The cylinder shall be placed as close as practical to the mid-point of the tested structure, spanning two internal vertical structural members. The cylinder shall be statically loaded to the required force of curb weight or 20,000 pounds, whichever is less, in a horizontal plane with the load applied from the exterior toward the interior of the test structure. When the minimum load has been applied, the penetration of the loading cylinder into the passenger compartment shall not exceed 10 inches from its original point of contact. There can be no separation of lapped panels or construction joints. Punctures, tears or breaks in the external panels are acceptable but are not permitted on any adjacent interior panel. Body companies shall certify compliance with this intrusion requirement to the Alabama Department of Education and include test results, as requested.

2. Construction shall be dust proof and watertight, so the bus does not leak under normal operating conditions.
3. Body joints present in that portion of a Type A school bus body furnished exclusively by the body manufacturer shall conform to the performance requirements of FMVSS 221, "School Bus Body Joint Strength." This does not include the body joints created when body components are attached to components furnished by the chassis manufacturer.

4. Type A school bus bodies shall be equipped with restraining barriers conforming to FMVSS 222, "School Bus Passenger Seating--Crash Protection," Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

Crossing Control Arm

1. Buses shall be equipped with a crossing control arm mounted on the right side of the front bumper, which shall not open more than 90 degrees.
2. All components of the crossing control arm and all connections shall be weatherproofed.
3. The crossing control arm shall incorporate system connectors (electrical or air) at the gate and shall be easily removable to allow for towing of the bus.
4. The crossing control arm shall meet or exceed SAE Standard J1133.
5. The crossing control arm shall be constructed of non-corrosive or nonferrous material or treated in accordance with the body sheet metal standard (see Metal Treatment).
6. There shall be no sharp edges or projections that could cause hazard or injury to students.
7. The crossing control arm shall extend at least 70" from the front bumper when in the extended position.
8. The crossing control arms shall extend simultaneously with the stop arm(s) by means of the stop arm controls. An automatic recycling interrupt switch shall be installed to allow the driver to deactivate the control arm when necessary.
9. An electromagnetic device or a stowed bracket shall be installed to stabilize the arm when in the stored position.
10. Crossing control arm shall be Specialty Manufacturing Company, Part #58600, Transpec 4000 series, or prior approved equal.

Defrosters

1. The windshield defroster and defogging system shall provide defogging of the entire windshield, driver's side window, and entrance door glasses by utilizing hot air taken from the heater core with vents across the entire windshield.
2. The defrosting system shall conform to Society of Automotive Engineers' Standards J381 and J382.
3. The defroster and defogging system shall be capable of furnishing heated outside ambient air.
4. Auxiliary fans are not considered defrosting or defogging systems.

5. Portable heaters shall not be used.

Doors

1. Service Door:

- A. The service door shall be in the driver's control, and designed to afford easy release and provide a positive latching device on manual operating doors to prevent accidental opening. When a hand lever is used, no part shall come together that will shear or crush fingers. Manual door controls shall not require more than 25 pounds of force to operate at any point throughout the range of operation.
- B. The service door shall be located on the right side of the bus, opposite and within direct view of the driver.
- C. The service door shall have a minimum horizontal opening of 24 inches and a minimum vertical opening of 68 inches.
- D. The service door shall be a split type, both sections opening outward.
- E. Lower, as well as upper door panels, shall be of approved safety glass. The bottom of each lower glass panel shall not be more than 10 inches from the top surface of the bottom step. The top of each upper glass panel shall not be more than 6 inches from the top of the door.
- F. Vertical closing edges on split type entrance doors shall be equipped with flexible material to protect the children's fingers.
- G. There shall be no door to the left in driver compartment on Types C or D vehicles.
- H. All doors shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.
- I. If air or electric doors are used, the amber warning lights shall be activated from a momentary switch. A three-position switch shall activate the sequence as follows:
 - Position One – door closed; lights off.
 - Position Two – activate red lights, stop arm, and crossing control arm.
 - Position Three – red lights activated, door open, stop arm activated, and crossing control arm activated.

Emergency Exits

1. Emergency Door:

- A. The emergency door shall be hinged on the right side if in the rear end of bus and on the front side if on left or right side of the bus. It shall open outward and be labeled inside to indicate how it is to be opened. If double emergency doors are used on

Type A vehicles, they shall be hinged on the outside edge and shall have a three-point fastening device. A device shall be used that holds the door open to prevent the emergency door from closing during emergencies and school bus evacuation drills. If emergency door locks are used, the vehicle ignition must be disabled until the emergency door lock is deactivated.

- B. The upper portion of the emergency door shall be equipped with approved safety glazing, the exposed area of which shall be at least 400 square inches. The lower portion of the rear emergency door on Types C, and D vehicles shall be equipped with a minimum of 350 square inches of approved safety glazing.
- C. There shall be no steps leading to an emergency door.
- D. The words **EMERGENCY DOOR**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed at the top of or directly above the emergency door or on the door in the metal panel above the top glass, both inside and outside of the bus. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT** in letters at least 2 inches high shall be placed on the exterior body directly above each emergency window.
- E. The emergency door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Padding shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick, and extend the full width of the door opening.
- F. The side emergency door, if installed, must meet the requirements as set forth in FMVSS 217 (a), regardless of its use with any other combination of emergency exits.
 - (1) A left side emergency door shall have a 20 inch unobstructed passageway and no flip seat is to be used. A barrier shall be used just before the door opening.
- G. There shall be no obstruction higher than 1/4 inch across the bottom of any emergency door opening.

2. Additional Emergency Exits:

- A. All school buses shall be equipped with emergency exits in the following capacity vehicles:
 - 0 to 54 passenger: one emergency window exit per side and one roof hatch located midpoint.
 - 55 passenger and above: two emergency window exits per side, and two roof hatches.
- B. Each emergency exit shall comply with FMVSS 217. These emergency exits are in addition to the rear emergency door or exit. Roof hatches must be Transpec

Standard Vent, Model 1970, Specialty Manufacturing 8600, 8900, or 9000 series or prior approved equal.

- (1) Emergency exit windows shall be as evenly spaced as possible under FMVSS 217 guidelines and shall not be obstructed by any devices.
- C. In addition to the audible warning required on emergency doors by FMVSS 217, additional emergency exits shall also be like protected. Warnings for these exits shall be clearly audible to the bus driver.
- D. School bus emergency exits shall be marked with a minimum one inch wide strip of retroreflective tape red, white or yellow in color, to be placed around the outside perimeter of the emergency exit opening, not the emergency exit itself. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed on the body directly above each emergency window.

Emergency Equipment

All emergency equipment shall be installed forward of the front barriers with the exception of the warning devices.

1. Fire Extinguishers:

- A. The bus shall be equipped with at least one pressurized, dry chemical fire extinguisher complete with hose to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., approval. A pressure gauge shall be mounted on the extinguisher and easily read without moving the extinguisher from its mounted position.

The bracket shall be a heavy-duty, snap-in, spring type. Band type holders are not acceptable. Fire extinguisher brackets shall be Brooks Equipment Company # 4SC or Ridgeway Bus Products # 51-05 or prior approved equal.

- B. The fire extinguisher shall have a capacity of **five pounds** with an Underwriters Laboratories total rating of 2A10BC or greater. The operating mechanism shall be sealed with a type of seal that will not interfere with the use of the fire extinguisher.
- C. Fire extinguishers must comply with State Fire Codes.

2. First-Aid Kit:

- A. Bus shall have a removable, moisture-proof and dust-proof first-aid kit stored in a metal container and mounted with a separate bracket in an accessible place in driver's compartment. This place shall be marked to indicate its location. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable.

B. Contents shall include:

- 2 1" x 2 1/2 yards adhesive tape rolls

- 24 sterile gauze pads 3" x 3"
- 100 3/4" x 3" adhesive bandages
- 8 2" bandage compress
- 10 3" bandage compress
- 2 2" x 6" sterile gauze roller bandages
- 2 non-sterile triangular bandages approximately 40" x 36" x 54" with
- 2 safety pins
- 3 sterile gauze pads 36" x 36"
- 3 sterile eye pads
- 1 pair rounded-end scissors
- 1 pair latex gloves
- 1 mouth-to-mouth airway

3. Body Fluid Clean-up Kit:

- A. Each bus shall have a removable and moisture-proof body fluid clean-up kit stored in a metal container. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable. It shall be properly mounted and identified as a body fluid clean-up kit. Must meet OSHA regulations.

4. Warning Devices:

- A. Each school bus shall contain at least three (3) reflectorized triangle road warning devices mounted in an accessible place in the driver's compartment or outside storage compartment. The mounting location in Type A vehicles is optional. These devices must meet requirements in FMVSS 125.

Fire Suppression (Optional)

When a fire suppression system is used, nozzles for suppression systems shall be located in the engine compartment, under the bus, in the electrical panel, or under the dash, but shall not be located in the passenger compartment. The system must include a light or buzzer to alert the driver that the system has been activated.

Floor and Floor Coverings

1. The floor in the underseat area, including the tops of the wheel housing, driver's compartment and toe board, shall be covered with a rubber floor covering or equivalent, having a minimum overall thickness of 1/8 inch and a calculated burn rate of 0.1 or less using the test measures, procedure and formulas in FMVSS 302 Flammability of Interior Materials.
2. The floor covering in the aisle shall be of aisle-type rubber or equivalent, wear resistant, and ribbed. The minimum overall thickness shall be 3/16 inch measured from tops of ribs.
3. The floor covering must be permanently bonded to the floor and must not crack when subjected to sudden changes in temperature. Bonding or adhesive material shall be waterproof and shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the floor-covering material. All seams must be sealed with waterproof sealer.

4. For Type C and D school buses, the manufacturer shall provide a screw-down plate to access fuel tank sending unit that is secured and insulated. The plate shall be mounted so that access is readily available to repair personnel and so that the floor covering is not disturbed during the repair process.
5. The floor shall be of metal or alloy at least equal in strength to 14-gauge prime commercial quality steel and so constructed that exhaust gases cannot enter the passenger compartment.
6. All closures between the bus body and the engine compartment shall be fitted with gas-tight gaskets and pedal openings shall be closed bellows type, gas-tight boots.
7. There shall be a plate, of adequate size, provided to allow for transmission access or service.

Handrail(s)

At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test. A right-hand side assist rail may be provided at the discretion of the local school system.

Heaters

1. The heating system shall be capable of maintaining the temperature throughout the bus of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit during average minimum January temperatures as established by the U. S. Department of Commerce, Weather Bureau, for the area in which the vehicle is to be operated. Shall be capable of defrosting the total windshield area and the service door glass within thirty minutes after initial start with engine at idle speed. The system shall exceed SAE standards J-381 and J-382 performance requirements. **Fuel-fired auxiliary heaters will not be allowed.**

Heater performance shall be measured by the following:

A temperature measurement shall be taken at three locations within the body. These locations taken in the center aisle, thirty-six inches above the floor. The first location is to be thirty-nine inches from the windshield; the second location midpoint of the passenger compartment and the third will be thirty-nine inches from the rear emergency door.

After soaking the bus at twenty degrees F. for fifteen (15) hours, the bus will be started and after thirty (30) minutes, the temperature at each measuring point shall be fifty-five (55) degrees F.

2. If only one heater is used, it shall be a fresh-air or combination fresh-air and recirculation type.

3. If more than one heater is used, additional heaters shall be a recirculating-air type.
4. All heaters installed by body manufacturers shall bear a name plate that shall indicate the heater rating in accordance with SBMI Standard No. 001, with said plate to be affixed by the heater manufacturer which shall constitute certification that the heater performance is as shown on the plate.
5. Heater hoses shall be adequately supported to guard against excessive wear due to vibration. The hoses shall not dangle or rub against the chassis or sharp edges and shall not interfere with or restrict the operation of any engine function.
Heater hoses shall conform to the Society of Automotive Engineers' Standard J20c.
Heater lines on the interior of the bus shall be shielded to prevent scalding of the driver or passengers.
6. Each hot water system installed by a body manufacturer shall include one shut-off valve in the pressure line and one shut-off valve in the return line with both valves at or near the engine in an accessible location.
7. There shall be a water flow-regulating valve, or an electronic valve actuator, installed in the pressure line for convenient operation by the driver while seated.
8. Accessible bleeder valves shall be installed in an appropriate place in the return lines of body company-installed heaters to remove air from the heater lines.
9. Access panels shall be provided to make heater motors, cores, and fans readily accessible for service. An outside access panel may be provided for the driver's heater.

Hinges

All exterior metal door hinges which do not have stainless steel, brass, or nonmetallic hinge pins or other designs that prevent corrosion shall be designed to allow lubrication to be channeled to the center 75% of each hinge loop without disassembly.

Identification

1. School bus bodies shall bear the words, **SCHOOL BUS**, in eight-inch black letters on National School Bus Yellow, on the front and back of the bus (lettering between flasher lights). (See page 51 for Multifunctional School Activity Bus identification requirements.) The name of the school system shall be on each side of the bus in at least 5-inch, black standard, unshaded letters. Lettering shall conform to "Series B" of Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs. Each bus shall be numbered on both sides, front left side and the rear, before being put into service. Bumper numbers may be white or yellow. An agreement between manufacturer and purchaser shall be reached at time order is placed as to who will put the numbers on the buses. Any other numbering shall be optional.
2. Only signs and lettering approved by state law or regulation, limited to the name of the owner or operator and any marking necessary for identification, shall appear on the bus.

3. School bus bodies shall display a high quality 6" x 9" warning sticker on permanent, adhesive, vinyl, bumper-sticker material. To increase visibility, this sticker shall be mounted just under the first or second rub rail at left side of the passenger entrance door. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

UNAUTHORIZED ENTRY ILLEGAL

Any person who attempts to enter a school bus without prior authorization of the driver or other appropriate school official and refuses to leave will be subject to prosecution that may result in fines of up to \$2,000 and up to one year in jail.

Alabama Code Sections 13A-10-2, 13A-7-4

4. Driver Alert Transpec Model 7500 or prior approved equal electronic signage warning traffic when the school bus stops to load or unload students and at railway grade crossings is required.
5. A high quality, 4" x 6", permanent, adhesive, vinyl, warning sticker prompting drivers that driver seat belt use is mandatory on all school buses shall be affixed in the driver compartment in a highly visible location. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

DRIVER SEAT BELT USE REQUIRED

Driver seat belt use is required at all times when driving this vehicle. Failure to do so could result in disciplinary action up to and including suspension or revocation of your Alabama School Bus Driver Certificate or termination.

Alabama Code Section 16-27-6.

Unauthorized Entry Decals and Driver Seat Belt Use Decals are provided by the Alabama State Department of Education.

Inside Height

The inside body height shall be 72 inches or more, measured metal to metal, at any point on the longitudinal center line from the front vertical bow to the rear vertical bow. The inside body height of Type A buses shall be 62 inches or more.

Insulation

1. Ceilings and walls shall be insulated with proper material to deaden sound and reduce vibration to a minimum. If thermal insulation is specified, it shall be fire-resistant and approved by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. If buses are equipped with air conditioning, walls and ceilings must be insulated to improve air conditioner efficiency.
2. If floor insulation is required, it shall be either 5-ply nominal 19/32 inches thick plywood, or a material of equal or greater strength and insulation R value, and it will equal or exceed properties of exterior-type softwood plywood, C-D Grade as specified in standard issued by U. S. Department of Commerce. When plywood is used, all exposed edges shall be sealed.

Interior

1. The interior of the bus shall be free of all unnecessary projections, which include luggage racks and attendant handrails, likely to cause injury. This standard requires inner lining on ceilings and walls. If the ceiling is constructed to contain lapped joints, the forward panel shall be lapped by the rear panel and exposed edges shall be beaded, hemmed, flanged, or otherwise treated to minimize sharp edges.
2. The driver's area forward of the foremost padded barriers will permit the mounting of required safety equipment and vehicle operation equipment.
3. Every school bus shall be constructed so that the noise level taken at the ear of the occupant nearest to the primary vehicle noise source shall not exceed 85 dbA when tested.
4. Any added equipment shall be flush mounted with the exception of the video system.

Lamps and Signals

1. Interior lamps shall be provided which an adequately illuminated aisle and step well. Step well lights shall be illuminated by a service door operated switch, to illuminate only when headlights and clearance lights are on and the service door is opened. An optional driver dome light with a separate switch may be installed at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Clearance lamps shall automatically illuminate when the headlights are in the "on" position.
3. L.E.D. lighting shall be used in all exterior body lamps and signals. Eight-way flashing lights and stop arm shall be strobe-type L.E.D. Manufacturers' front chassis lamps are exempt from this requirement.
4. Definition--School bus alternately flashing red and amber signal lamps are lamps mounted at the same horizontal level, intended to identify the vehicle as a school bus and to inform other users of the highway that such vehicle is preparing to stop, or is stopped, on the roadway to take on or to discharge schoolchildren.
 - A. Master switches will not be allowed on the eight-way, alternately flashing signal lamps.
 - B. Buses shall be equipped with two red lamps and two amber lamps at the rear of the vehicle and two red lamps and two amber lamps at the front of the vehicle. One amber lamp shall be located near each red signal lamp at the same level, but closer to the vertical centerline of the bus.
 - C. The signaling system, including red and amber signal lamps and a stop arm with alternating flashing lamps, shall be so designed and wired as to have the following characteristics:

(1) When the entrance door is closed, a manual push button may be depressed and the amber pilot light and amber warning lights will flash.

(2) When the entrance door is opened, the amber pilot and amber warning lights will go off, and the red pilot and red warning lights will flash; also, the stop arm will be extended and lights on the stop arm will flash.

(3) On closing the entrance door, all lights will go out and the stop arm retract automatically.

(4) If the entrance door is opened without depressing the manual push button, no lights will flash, nor will the stop arm be extended.

D. The area around the lenses of alternately flashing signal lamps shall have a readily visible black border for contrast purposes. Hoods/guards may be provided over front and rear amber warning lights and red warning lights.

5. Bus body shall be equipped with amber rear turn signal lamps at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area. These signal lamps must be connected to the chassis hazard-warning switch to cause simultaneous flashing of signal lamps when needed as a vehicular traffic hazard warning.
6. Rear directional lights shall be mounted not more than 15 inches from the plane of the side of the body, and not more than 14 inches below the glass in the rear of the body. All buses shall have side turn indicators on both sides located within six inches of the floor line.
7. Buses shall be equipped with two red, brake/tail combination lights at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area and shall be mounted on the rear of the bus just inside the turn signal lamps.
 - A. Type A conversion vehicle lamps must be 21 square inches in the lens area. Two combination lamps with a minimum diameter of four inches, or if a shape other than round, a minimum 12 square inches of illuminated area shall be placed on the rear of the body between the beltline and the floor line. The rear license plate lamp may be combined with one lower tail lamp. Stop lamps shall be activated by the service brakes and shall emit a steady light when illuminated.
 - B. In addition to these requirements, all lamps and signals shall comply with applicable SAE specifications.
8. On all buses equipped with a monitor for the front and rear lamps of the school bus, the monitor shall be mounted in full view of the driver. If the full circuit current passes

through the monitor, each circuit shall be protected by a fuse or circuit breakers or other equivalent technology against any short circuit or intermittent shorts.

9. A white flashing strobe light shall be installed on the roof of a school bus not to exceed 1/3 the body length forward from the rear of the roof edge. This light shall have a single white lens emitting light 360 degrees around its vertical axis and may not extend above the roof more than the maximum legal height. *A momentary, latching-type* switch and a pilot light of low intensity must be included to indicate when the light is in operation. The pilot light shall be incorporated into the switch.
10. If alternating headlights are used (i.e., wig-wag), they must operate in conjunction with the red overhead flashers and stop arm.
11. As an option, other lighting devices may be used with prior approval from SDE.

Metal Treatment

1. All metal used in construction of a bus body shall be zinc-coated or aluminum-coated or treated by an equivalent process before the bus is constructed. Included are such items as structural members, inside and outside panels, door panels and floor sills. Excluded are such items as door handles, grab handles, interior decorative parts and other interior plated parts.
2. In addition to the above requirements, all metal parts that will be painted shall be chemically cleaned, etched, zinc-phosphate-coat and zinc-chrome or epoxy primed or conditioned by equivalent process.
3. In providing for these requirements, particular attention shall be given to lapped surfaces, welded connections of structural members, cut edges punched or drilled hole areas in sheet metal, closed or box sections, unvented or undrained areas and surfaces subjected to abrasion during vehicle operation.
4. As evidence that the above requirements have been met, samples of materials and sections used in construction of the bus body, when subjected to 1,000-hour salt spray test as provided for in latest revision of ASTM Standard B-117 "Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing" shall not lose more than 10 percent of its material by weight.

Mirrors

1. Interior mirrors shall be either clear laminated glass or clear view glass bonded to a backing, which retains the glass in the event of breakage. Mirrors shall have rounded corners and protected edges. Type A buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 16" mirror and Type C, and D buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 30" mirror. It shall be securely attached on the windshield header and so located as to give the driver a clear view of the entire interior of the bus and the road behind.
2. Each school bus shall be equipped with a system of exterior mirrors as defined in FMVSS 111.
 - A. Rear vision mirrors shall be capable of providing a view along the left and right sides of the vehicle which will provide the driver with a view of the rear tires at

ground level, a minimum distance of 200 feet to the rear of the bus and at least 12 feet perpendicular to the side of the bus at a distance of 32 feet back from the front bumper.

- B. The cross view mirror system shall provide the driver with indirect vision of an area at ground level from the front bumper forward and the entire width of the bus to a point where the driver can see by direct vision. The cross view system shall also provide the driver with direct vision of the area at ground level around the left and right front corners of the bus to include the tires and service entrance on all types of buses to a point where it overlaps with the rear vision mirror system. A metal reinforcement plate shall be installed under the hood area of fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite hoods in order to reinforce cross view mirror mounting base area.
 - C. This system of mirrors shall be easily adjustable but be rigidly braced to reduce vibration.
3. Heated and/or remote controlled external, rearview mirrors may be used.

Mounting

- 1. The chassis frames shall support the rear body cross member. The bus body shall be attached to the chassis frame at each main floor sill, except where chassis components interfere, in such a manner as to prevent shifting or separation of the body from the chassis under severe operating conditions.
- 2. Insulation material shall be placed at all contact points between the body and chassis frame on Types A, C and D buses, and shall be so attached to the chassis frame or body that it will not move under severe operating conditions.

Noise Suppression Switch

There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. This switch or switch background shall be red or yellow and labeled. This switch shall be an on/off-type (not momentary) that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. For Type A buses, all radios or communication devices shall be ordered as a body accessory and must be wired thru the noise suppression switch.

Overall Length

The overall length of the bus shall not exceed 45 feet excluding accessories.

Overall Width

The overall width of the bus shall not exceed 102 inches excluding accessories.

Public Address System

Buses may be equipped with a public address system having interior and exterior speakers. Interior speakers shall be flush mounted with bulkhead. No internal speakers other than the driver's communication systems may be installed within four feet of the driver's seat back in its rearmost, upright position.

Retroreflective Material

1. The front and/or rear bumper may be marked diagonally 45 degrees down to the centerline of the pavement with 2” x 1/4” wide strips of non-contrasting retroreflective material.
2. The rear of the bus body shall be marked with strips of retroreflective National School Bus Yellow (NSBY) material to outline the perimeter of the back of the bus using material which conforms with the requirements of FMVSS 571.131 (Table I). The perimeter marking of rear emergency exits per FMVSS 217 and/or the use of retroreflective SCHOOL BUS signs partially accomplish the objective of this requirement. To complete the perimeter marking of the back of the bus, strips of at least one-inch retroreflective NSBY material shall be applied horizontally above the rear windows and above the rear bumper, extending from the rear emergency exit perimeter marking outward to the left and rear corners of the bus. Vertical strips shall be applied at the corners connecting these horizontal strips.
3. **SCHOOL BUS** signs, if not of a lighted design, shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material comprising a background for lettering of the front and/or rear **SCHOOL BUS** signs.
4. The sides of the bus body shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material at least one inch in width, extending the length of the bus body and located (vertically) between the floor line and the belt line.

Rub Rails

1. There shall be one rub rail located on each side of the bus approximately at seat level which shall extend from the rear side of the entrance door completely around the bus body (except emergency door or any maintenance access door) to a point of curvature near the outside cowl on the left side.
2. There shall be one additional rub rail located approximately at the floor line which shall cover the same longitudinal area as the upper rub rail, except at the wheel housing, and shall extend only to radii of the right and left rear corners.
3. Rub rails above the floor line shall be attached at each body post and all other upright structural members.
4. Each rub rail shall be 4 inches or more in width in their finished form, shall be of 16-gauge metal or other suitable material of equivalent strength, suitable to protect body side panels from damage. Rub rails shall be constructed in a corrugated or ribbed fashion.
5. Rub rails shall be applied to the outside of the body or outside body posts. Pressed-in or snap-on rub rails do not satisfy this requirement. For Type A1 vehicles using a chassis manufacturer’s body, or for Types A2, C, and D buses using rear luggage or rear engine compartments, rub rails need not extend around rear corners.

6. The bottom edge of the body side skirts shall be stiffened by application of a rub rail, or the edge may be stiffened by providing a flange or other stiffeners.

Seat Belt for Driver

1. The driver's seat shall be equipped with the seat belt anchored to the floor, housed in scabbard and equipped with an emergency locking retractor (one side only). The driver's seat shall be equipped with a Type II occupant protection (lap and shoulder belt). Adjustability of the mounting point for the driver's seat belt pillar loop shall be provided to accommodate all heights and weights of bus drivers without interference with the driver's face or neck. The requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210 shall be met. Integrated seat belts in the driver's seat may be used at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Buses equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts for student seating shall contain at least two belt cutters. One belt cutter must be properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into the driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
3. **The driver's seat belt shall be high visibility orange or lime green in color on all buses except Type A. All Type C and D buses must be equipped with a continuous audible and visual warning signal activated when the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the ignition is in the on position. The warning signal shall be different from low air or emergency exit buzzer. Type A buses must be equipped with warning buzzers as per manufacturer's standard.**

Seats and Crash Barriers

All Type A1 buses, 14,500 pounds GVWR and under shall be equipped with lap/shoulder belts and must meet FMVSS 209 requirements.

1. Seats shall be spaced to obtain a minimum of 24-inch hip-to-knee room measured horizontally at the seat cushion level at the transverse centerline of the seat. In making this measurement from the back of the seat cushion to the back of the seat or barrier in front, upholstery may be placed against padding both forward and rear but padding may not be compressed. Greater seat spacing may be specified on local bids not to exceed the maximum allowable per FMVSS 222.
2. In determining seating capacity of standard school buses, the allowable average rump width shall be 13 inches where a 3-3 seating plan is used, and thirteen (13) or 15 inches where 3-2 seating plan is used on specially-equipped buses.
3. All seats shall be bench style, forward facing, have a minimum depth of 15 inches and conform to the seatback height requirements of FMVSS 222. No transit or activity seat will be used. There shall be no armrest on student seats. No bus shall be equipped with jump seats or portable seats.

4. All seat frames attached to the seat rail shall be fastened with two (2) bolts, washers and nuts or flange-headed nuts. Each seat leg shall be secured to the floor by a minimum of two (2) bolts, washers and nuts. Flange-head nuts may be used in lieu of nuts and washers, or seats may be track-mounted in conformance with FMVSS 222. If track seating is installed, the manufacturer shall supply minimum and maximum seat spacing dimensions applicable to the bus, which comply with FMVSS 222. This information shall be on a label permanently affixed to the bus.
5. The forward most pupil seat on the right side of the bus shall be located so as not to interfere with the driver's vision, not farther forward than the barrier behind the driver or the rear of the driver's seat when adjusted to its rear-most position.
6. All seats and backs shall be a standard color unless changed by purchaser. Seat and back cushions of all seats shall be designed to safely support the designated number of passengers under normal road conditions encountered in school-bus service. All seat coverings shall meet FMVSS regulations and School Bus Manufacturer Technical Council Guidelines.
7. The driver seat shall be of the high back, air **or** mechanical suspension, box pedestal-type with a minimum seat back adjustment of 15 degrees and with a head restraint to accommodate a 95 percentile adult male (95 percentile adult male as defined in FMVSS 208). The driver's seat shall be secured with nuts, bolts, and washers or flanged-headed nuts. The driver's seat shall have a minimum distance between the steering wheel and seatback of not less than eleven inches, with a minimum aft adjustment of six inches. The seat shall be contoured with adequate padding and support on the sides and shall have a cloth cover. It shall be designed to provide lumbar support and shall be positioned on the centerline of the steering wheel.
8. All restraining barriers and passenger seats shall be constructed with materials that, at a minimum, meet the criteria contained in the School Bus Seat Upholstery Fire Resistant Test.
9. A driver storage pouch shall be provided on the front of the barrier behind driver's seat. This pouch shall be fire resistant and the same color as the bus seats.
10. Crash barriers shall be placed behind the driver's seat and step well. An aluminized courtesy panel on the right side of the bus shall extend to the floor and to the wall. Stanchions are not acceptable.
11. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-age Children in School Buses."

Steering Wheel

See Chassis Standard.

Steps

1. The first step at the service door shall be no less than 10 inches and no more than 14 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step. Ground clearance shall be no less than 10 inches.

A. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step.

2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by the thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

Step Treads

1. All steps, excluding the floor line platform area, shall be covered with a 3/16-inch pebble-tread-type, rubber floor covering or other materials equal in wear and abrasion resistance to top grade rubber.
2. The backing of the step tread may be a minimum 24-gauge cold roll steel or polymer and shall be permanently bonded to the rubber surface.
3. The step tread shall have a 1 and 1/2 inch white nosing as an integral piece without any joint.
4. The rubber portion of step treads shall have the following characteristics:
 - A. Special compounding for good abrasion resistance and high coefficient of friction.
 - B. Flexibility so that it can be bent around a 1/2 inch mandrel both at 130 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 degrees Fahrenheit without breaking, cracking, or crazing.
 - C. Show a durometer hardness of 85 to 95.

Stirrup Step

There shall be one stirrup step on all Types C, and D buses on each side of the front of the body for use in cleaning the windshield and lamps. There shall be one handle on each side, at least eight inches in length suitably located for the driver to use while cleaning the windshield and lamps. The stirrup steps and the handles shall be of rust-resistant material. Transit buses shall have provisions for cleaning the windshield. Toe eyes in the bumper with a handle(s), above the windshield, are acceptable.

Stop Arm Signal

All stop arm signals shall be of the strobe-type and have high-intensity, retroreflective coating. The stop signal - arm(s) shall comply with the requirements of FMVSS 131.

Stop Arm Signal - Rear (Optional)

A rear stop arm is permissible when used in conjunction with the original stop arm. The rear stop arm location on dual stop arm-equipped buses shall be on the left side of the bus, as

close as is practical to the left rear corner of the body. Airlines, if used, must not be readily accessible to students inside or outside of the bus.

Storage Compartment

A lockable, waterproof, exterior storage compartment may be located on the bus body at the discretion of the local school system. The minimum size of the storage compartment shall be 12 inches high, 15 inches deep, and 25 inches wide and shall be marked "storage". Alternate storage compartment locations should be specified in local school system bid specifications.

All lockable interior storage compartments containing emergency equipment shall be equipped with a warning buzzer installed so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked. All such compartments shall be clearly labeled as to containing emergency equipment.

Sun Shield

Each Type C and D school bus shall have an interior adjustable sun visor with minimum measurements of 6 inches by 30 inches. It shall be installed in a position convenient for use by the driver, anchored on both ends, and shall be tinted transparent plastic or phlex-o-glass. On all Type A buses, the sun shield shall be the manufacturer's standard. An additional sun shield may be added over the left side driver window at option of the local school system.

Tailpipe

See Chassis Standard.

Traction-Assisting Devices

1. Where required or used, sanders shall:
 - A. Be of the hopper cartridge-valve type.
 - B. Have a metal hopper with all interior surfaces treated to prevent condensation of moisture.
 - C. Be of at least 100-pound (grit) capacity.
 - D. Have a cover on the filler opening of the hopper, which screws into place, sealing the unit airtight.
 - E. Have discharge tubes extending to the front of each rear wheel under the fender.
 - F. Have no-clogging discharge tubes with slush-proof, non-freezing rubber nozzles.
 - G. Be operated by an electric switch with a telltale pilot light mounted on the instrument panel.
 - H. Be exclusively driver controlled.

- I. Have a gauge to indicate the hopper needs refilling when it is down to one quarter full.
2. Automatic traction chains may be installed.

Trash Container and Holding Device

1. Where required or used, the trash container shall:
 - A. Be of fire resistant polyethylene or equivalent material.
 - B. Be no greater than 14-quart capacity.
 - C. Be secured by a holding device that is designed to prevent movement and allow easy removal and replacement.
 - D. Be installed in an accessible location in the driver's compartment, not obstructing passenger use of the service door or access to emergency equipment.

Undercoating

1. The entire underside of the bus body, including floor sections, the cross member and below floor line side panels, shall be coated with rust-proofing the compound for which compound manufacturer has issued notarized certification of compliance to the bus body builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C-250b using modified test procedures for the following requirements*:
 - A. Salt spray resistance-pass modified to 5% salt and 1000 hours.
 - B. Abrasion resistance-pass.
 - C. Fire resistance-pass.

*Test panels are to be prepared in accordance with paragraph 4.6.12 of TT-C-520b with the modified procedure requiring that the test be made on a 48-hour air-cured film at a thickness recommended by the compound manufacturer.

2. The undercoating compound shall be applied with suitable airless or conventional spray equipment to recommend film thickness and shall show no evidence of voids in cured film.

Ventilation

1. Auxiliary fans if installed shall meet the following requirements:
 - A. Fans for left and right sides shall be placed in a location where they can be adjusted for maximum effectiveness and do not obstruct vision to any mirror. **NOTE:** All Type A buses may be equipped with one fan.
 - B. Fans shall be a nominal 6" diameter.

- C. Fan blades shall be covered with a protective cage. Each fan shall be controlled by a separate switch.
2. The body shall be equipped with a suitably controlled ventilating system of sufficient capacity to maintain the proper quantity of air under operating conditions, without having to open windows except in extremely warm weather.
3. A static-type, non-closeable exhaust ventilator shall be installed in the roof.

Video Surveillance Equipment

1. Video equipment may be installed at the discretion of the local school system. If installed, video equipment shall be digital with a minimum of two camera positions. One camera position must show driver compartment.
2. While video equipment does not have to be flush mounted, positioning of video surveillance equipment shall not interfere with the safe operation of the bus or student safety. It is recommended that the SDE be contacted prior to the installation of new video equipment.

Wheel Housing

1. The wheel-housing opening shall allow for easy tire removal and service.
2. The wheel housing shall be attached to the floor sheets in such a manner as to prevent any dust, water or fumes from entering the body. The wheel housing shall be constructed of at least 16-gauge steel or other material of equal tensile strength.
3. The inside height of the wheel housing above the floor line shall not exceed 12 inches.
4. The wheel housing shall provide clearance for installation and use of tire chains on single and dual (if so equipped) power-driving wheels.
5. No part of a raised wheel housing shall extend into the emergency door opening.

Windshield and Windows

1. All glass in the windshield, the windows, and doors shall be of approved safety glass so mounted that a permanent mark is visible and of sufficient quality as to prevent distortion of view in any direction.
2. Glass in the windshield shall be heat absorbent, laminated plate. The windshield shall be large enough to permit the driver to see the roadway clearly, shall be slanted to reduce glare, and shall be installed between the front corner posts that are so designed and placed as to afford minimum obstruction to the driver's view of the roadway.
3. All full side windows shall open vertically so as to provide an unobstructed opening of not less than 9 inches high and 22 inches wide, obtained by lowering the window. Windows shall be a split-sash type and so installed as to provide an emergency exit. There shall be no horizontal, transit or activity-style windows in the student compartment.

4. All exposed edges of glass shall meet FMVSS requirements.
5. A tinted and shaded windshield with 73% light transmitted and a six-inch shaded band across the top shall be installed at the factory. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturers one-piece windshield may be equipped with an O.E.M. shade band windshield with a band of approximately 4 inches in height.
6. All windows in the passenger compartment shall be tinted with 28% light transmitted. The driver's compartment side window and entrance door windows shall be tinted with 70- 75% light transmitted.

Windshield Washers

A windshield washer system shall be provided that will service the entire wiped surface area.

Windshield Wipers

1. A windshield wiping system, two speed or variable speed, with an intermittent feature shall be provided. The wipers shall meet the requirements of FMVSS 104.
2. The wipers shall be operated by one or more air or electric motors of sufficient power to operate the wipers. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-piece windshield may be equipped with two wipers driven by either one or two electric motors.

Wiring

1. All wiring shall conform to current standards of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
2. Circuits
 - A. Wiring shall be arranged in circuits as required with each circuit protected by a circuit breaker or electronic protection device. A system of color and number coding shall be used and an appropriate identifying diagram shall be provided to the end user along with the wiring diagram provided by the chassis manufacturer. **A system of color and number coding shall be used on buses. The following body interconnecting circuits shall be color-coded as noted:**

<u>Function</u>	<u>Color</u>
Left Rear Directional Light	Yellow
Right Rear Directional Light	Dark Green
Stoplights	Red
Back-up Lights	Blue
Taillights	Brown
Ground	White
Ignition Feed, Primary Feed	Black

The color of cables shall correspond to SAE J1128.

- B. Wiring shall be arranged in at least six regular circuits as follows:
 - (1) Head, tail, stop (brake) and instrument panel lamps.
 - (2) Clearance and step well lamps. The step well lamp shall be actuated when the service door is opened.
 - (3) Dome lamp.
 - (4) Ignition and emergency exits signal.
 - (5) Turn signal lamps.
 - (6) Alternately flashing signal lamps.
 - C. Any of the above combination circuits may be subdivided into additional independent circuits.
 - D. Each heater and defroster shall have its own circuit breakers or other equivalent technology.
 - E. Whenever possible, all other electrical functions (such as sanders and electric-type windshield wipers) shall be provided with independent and properly protected circuits.
 - F. Each body circuit shall be coded by number or letter on a diagram of circuits and shall be attached to the body in readily accessible location.
 - G. There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. The switch shall be labeled and alternately colored. This switch shall be an on/off-type that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. Noise suppression switch on Type AI buses shall be limited to bus body accessories.
- 3. The entire electrical system of the body shall be designed for the same voltage as the chassis on which the body is mounted.
 - 4. All wiring shall have an amperage capacity equal to or exceeding the designed load. All wiring splices are to be done at an accessible location and noted as splices on the wiring diagram.
 - 5. A body-wiring diagram of easily readable size shall be furnished with each bus body or affixed in an area convenient to the electrical accessory control panel.

6. The body power wire shall be attached to a special terminal on the chassis.
7. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet.
8. Wires and tubing shall be enclosed within body panels.

SECTION IV –SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction

Equipping buses to accommodate students with special needs is discretionary depending upon the needs of the passengers. While one bus may be fitted with a lift, another may have seat belts installed to secure child seats. Buses so equipped are not to be considered a separate class of school bus, but simply a regular school bus, which is equipped for special accommodations.

The specifications in this section are intended to be supplementary to specifications in the chassis and body sections. In general, specially equipped buses shall meet all the requirements of the preceding sections plus those listed in this section. It is recognized by the entire industry that the field of special transportation is characterized by varied needs for individual cases and by a rapidly emerging technology for meeting those needs. A flexible, “common sense”, approach to the adoption and enforcement of specifications for these vehicle, therefore, is prudent.

By federal regulation, buses, including school buses, are defined as vehicles designed to carry eleven or more (passengers including the driver). Vehicles designed with 10 or fewer passenger positions (including the driver) cannot be certified as buses. For this reason, the federal vehicle classification Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle, or MPV, must be used by manufacturers for these vehicles in lieu of the School Bus. In determining passenger capacity, wheelchair positions are counted as passenger positions. This classification system, while requiring compliance with a less stringent set of Federal Standards for MPV’s does not preclude state or local agencies or these specifications from requiring compliance of school bus-type MPV’s with the more stringent Federal Standards for school buses.

The following standards address modifications as they pertain to school buses that, with a standard seating arrangement prior to modification, would accommodate more than 10 persons. If by addition of a power lift, mobile seating device positions or other modifications, the capacity is reduced such that vehicles become MPV’s, the intent of these standards is to have these vehicles be required to meet the same standards they would have had to meet prior to such modifications, and such MPV’s are included in all references to school buses and requirements for school buses which follow:

Definition – Specially-Equipped School Bus

A specially-equipped school bus is any school bus that is primarily designed, equipped, or modified to accommodate students with special needs.

General Requirements

1. School buses designed for transporting students with special transportation needs shall comply with these specifications and with FMVSS applicable to their GVWR category.
2. Any school bus to be used for the transportation of children who are confined to a wheelchair or other mobile positioning device, or who require life support equipment which prohibits use of the regular service entrance, shall be equipped with a power lift, unless a ramp is needed for unusual circumstances related to passenger needs.

3. School buses used to transport children confined to wheelchairs or other mobile positioning devices **shall meet either item A or B below.**
 - A. Type C and D buses with wheelchair positions mounted forward of the rear axle shall have a 30-inch aisle to both front entrance and rear emergency exit door.
 - B. Type C and D buses equipped with a rear-mounted wheelchair lift, and wheelchair seating positions in the rear shall have air-ride suspension on the rear. School buses using this configuration must employ 3-2 (39"-30") seating to allow access to the front door exit in case of emergency.

Type A school buses 14,500 lbs GVWR and below are exempt from these requirements.

Air Conditioning

Special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. **Refer to page 14, School Bus Body Standards, for minimum air conditioning standards.**

Aisles

All buses equipped with a power lift shall provide sufficient aisle space to enable emergency evacuation through front and rear exits. For specific requirements refer to 3A and 3B in the General Requirements above.

Communication System

Each special needs bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Crash Barriers

1. Crash barrier shall be placed between the lift and any seat position (bench seat or wheelchair position). Stanchions are not acceptable.
2. There shall be a padded crash barrier approximately 8 inches in front of the forward edge of the seat cushion of all passenger seats that do not have another seat approximately 27 inches in front of them. There shall be a padded crash barrier or seat in front of any wheelchair position unless it is contiguous with and behind another wheelchair position. The forward-most barrier on both sides of the bus shall have a full-width, aluminized courtesy panel extending to the floor.

Evacuation Blanket

A minimum of two fire-retardant, evacuation blankets, Tie Tech Evacuation Transporter Part # 1013, or prior approved equal, and storage pouch shall be provided. **The location to secure the evacuation blanket shall be easily accessible and determined by the purchaser at the time of the bid.**

Glazing

Tinted glazing may be installed in all doors, windows and windshield consistent with federal, state, and local regulations.

Identification

Buses with power lifts used for transporting physically handicapped students shall display three universal handicapped symbols located below the windowpane. Such emblems shall be white on blue background, shall not exceed 12 inches in size, and shall be of a high-intensity retroreflectorized material meeting U. S. Department of Transportation FHWA FP-85 Standards. Symbols shall be located on the lift door, the rear of the bus, and the front left side of the bus.

Passenger Capacity Rating

In determining the passenger capacity of a school bus for purposes other than actual passenger load (i.e., vehicle classification, or various billing/reimbursement models), any location in a school bus intended for securing an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid during vehicle operations may be regarded as four designated seating positions. Similarly, each lift area may be regarded as four designated seating positions.

Power Lift

1. The option shall be provided to the local purchaser to have the lift located either in front of or behind the rear wheels, on the right side of the bus, but confined within the bus body when not extended.
2. All lifts shall be fully automatic with sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility user to reach a securement location.
3. The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least 6 (six), based on the ultimate strength of the material. Non-working parts, such as the platform, frame, and attachment hardware, which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least 3 (three), based on the ultimate strength of the material.
4. The lifting mechanism and platform shall be able to lift a minimum of 800 pounds.
5. Controls shall be provided that enable the operator to activate the lift mechanism from either inside or outside the bus. The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, transmission, or door, as required by FMVSS 403 and 404. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

6. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied. No manual emergency operation shall require more than 2 (two) minutes to lower an occupied wheelchair to ground level.
7. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches per second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.
8. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the platform during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the platform is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform, which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position, shall have a barrier a minimum 1 and 1/2 inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier), which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically raise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the platform is more than 3 inches above the roadway or sidewalk and the platform is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged, or disengaged by the lift operator, provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.
9. The platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over 1/4 inch high and shall be slip resistant. The platform shall have a minimum *width of 34 inches* at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the platform surface to 30 inches above the surface of the platform, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface of the platform.
10. Any openings between the platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed 5/8 inches in width. When the platform is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and the vehicle floor shall not exceed 1/2 inches horizontally and 5/8 inches vertically.
11. The outboard entrance ramp or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp and the transition plate from the inboard edge of the platform to the vehicle floor shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of three inches, and the transition

from roadway or sidewalk to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to 1/4 inches.

Thresholds between 1/4 inch and 1/2 inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

12. The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than three degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll or pitch) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 60 pounds applied through a 26" by 26" test pallet at the centroid of the platform.
13. No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches per second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches per second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3 g.
14. The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchair and mobility aid users.
15. Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces, or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The platform may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.
16. Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1 and 1/4 inches and 1 and 1/2 inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than 1/8 inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1 and 1/2" knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle. Any wheelchair frame utilizing a horizontal overhead support shall have padding at least 1" in thickness extending the full width of support.
17. A re-settable circuit breakers or other equivalent technology shall be installed between the power source and the lift motor if electrical power is used. It shall be located as close to the power source as possible, but not within the passenger/driver compartment.
18. Lift design shall prevent excessive pressure that could damage the lift system when the platform is fully lowered or raised, or that could jack the vehicle.

19. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a lift:
 - A. A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - B. Detailed instructions regarding use of the lift and readily visible when the lift door is open, including a diagram showing the proper placement and positioning of wheelchair/mobility aids on lift.
20. The lift manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the lift. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
21. Each lift shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses. In addition, the lift manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request of the original titled purchaser, shall provide a **Notarized Certificate of Conformance**, either original or photocopied, which states that the lift system meets all the applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses.

Ramp

Emergency ramps may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Regular Service Entrance

1. Steps
 - A. The first step at the service door shall be not less than 10 inches and not more than 14 inches from the ground when measured from the top of the step based on standard chassis specifications.
 - B. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.
5. At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test.
6. An assist rail shall be provided on the right-hand side.

Restraining Devices

1. On power-lift equipped vehicles, seat frames may be equipped with attachments or devices to which belts, restraining harnesses or other devices may be attached. Attachment framework or anchorage devices, if installed, shall conform to FMVSS 210.
2. Seat belt assemblies are optional. Seat belt assemblies may be installed on special needs buses. If seat belt assemblies are installed on special needs buses, they shall be of the lap/shoulder belt configuration. Seat belt assemblies shall be installed by the manufacturer, and must conform to FMVSS 209. **Type A school buses with a GVWR of 14,500 pounds or below are required to have lap/shoulder belt assemblies.**
3. Child restraint systems, which are used to facilitate the transportation of children who in other modes of transportation would be required to use a child, infant, or booster seat, shall conform to FMVSS 213 and 222.
4. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "**Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-Age Children in School Buses.**"

Seating Arrangements

Flexibility in seat spacing to accommodate special circumstances shall be permitted to meet passenger requirements. All seating shall be forward facing. **Floor plans for special needs buses shall be designed with emphasis on placing wheelchair positions forward of the rear axle.**

Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant

For purposes of better understanding the various aspects and components of this section, the term securement or phrase securement system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s), which secure the wheelchair/mobility aid. The term restraint or phrase restraint system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s) used to restrain the occupant of the wheelchair/mobility aid. The phrase securement and restraint system is used to refer to the total system, which secures and restrains both the wheelchair/mobility aid and the occupant.

1. Securement and restraint system--general
 - A. The Wheelchair/Mobility Aid Securement and Occupant Restraint System shall be designed, installed, and operated to accommodate passengers in a forward-facing orientation within the bus and shall comply with all applicable requirements of FMVSS 222. Gurney-type devices shall be secured parallel to the side of each bus.
 - B. The securement and restraint system, including the system track, floor plates, pockets, or other anchorages shall be provided by the same manufacturer, or be certified to be compatible by manufacturers of all equipment/systems used.
 - C. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device and an occupant restraint share a common anchorage, including occupant restraint designs that attach the occupant

restraint to the securement device or the wheelchair/mobility aid, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the loads of both the securement device and occupant restraint applied simultaneously, in accordance with FMVSS 222 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).

- D. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) is shared with an occupant restraint, the wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a force twice the amount as specified in Section 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- E. The bus body floor and sidewall structures where the securement and restraint system anchorages are attached shall have equal or greater strength than the load requirements of the system(s) being installed.
- F. The occupant restraint system shall be designed to be attached to the bus body either directly or in combination with the wheelchair/mobility aid securement system, by a method, which prohibits the transfer of weight or force from the wheelchair/mobility aid to the occupant in the event of an impact.
- G. When an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the securement and restraint system shall limit the movement of the occupied wheelchair/mobility aid to no more than 2 inches in any direction under normal driving conditions.
- H. The securement and restraint system shall incorporate an identification scheme, which will allow for the easy identification of the various components and their functions. It shall consist of one of the following, or combination thereof:
 - (1) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement (webbing or strap assemblies) and the occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be of contrasting color or color shade.
 - (2) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assemblies) and occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be clearly marked to indicate the proper wheelchair orientation in the vehicle, and the name and location for each device or belt assembly; i.e., front, rear, lap belt, shoulder belt.
- I. All attachment or coupling devices designed to be connected or disconnected frequently shall be accessible and operable without the use of tools or other mechanical assistance.
- J. The securement and restraint system hardware and components shall be free of sharp or jagged areas and shall be of a non-corrosive material or treated to resist corrosion in accordance with Section 4.3(a) of FMVSS 209.

- K. The securement and restraint system shall be located and installed such that when an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured, it does not block access to the lift door or emergency door.
 - L. A device for storage of the securement and restraint system may be provided. When the system is not in use, the storage device shall allow for clean storage of the system, shall keep the system securely contained within the passenger compartment, shall provide reasonable protection from vandalism, and shall enable the system to be readily accessed for use.
 - M. The entire securement and restraint system, including the storage device, shall meet the flammability standards established in FMVSS 302.
 - N. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) and restraint belt assembly shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable FMVSS requirements. In addition, the system manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request by the original titled purchaser, shall provide a notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system meets all of the requirements as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - O. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a securement and restraint system:
 - (1) A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - (2) Detailed instructions regarding use, including a diagram showing the proper placement of the wheelchair/mobility aids and positioning of securement devices and occupant restraints, including correct belt angles.
 - P. The system manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
2. Wheelchair/mobility aid securement system
- A. Each securement system location shall consist of a minimum of four anchorage points. A minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in front of the wheelchair/mobility aid and a minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in the rear. The securement anchorages shall be attached to the floor of the vehicle and shall not interfere with passenger movement or present any hazardous condition.
 - B. Each securement system location shall have a minimum clear floor area of

30" x 48". Additional floor area may be required for some applications. Consultation between the user and the manufacturer is recommended to ensure adequate area is provided.

- C. The securement system shall secure common wheelchair/mobility aids and shall be able to be attached easily by a person having average dexterity and who is familiar with the system and wheelchair/mobility aid.
 - D. As installed, each securement anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222. When multiple securement devices share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the force indicated above, multiplied by the number of securement devices sharing that anchorage.
 - E. Each securement device, if incorporating webbing or a strap assembly, shall comply with the requirements for Type 1 safety belt systems, in accordance with Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - F. The securement system shall secure the wheelchair/mobility aid in such a manner that the attachments or coupling hardware will not become detached when any wheelchair/mobility aid component deforms, when one or more tires deflate, and without intentional operation of a release mechanism (e.g., a spring clip on a securement hook).
 - G. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 2,500 pounds when tested in accordance with FMVSS 209.
 - H. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall provide a means of adjustment of manufacturer's design, to remove slack from the device or assembly.
 - I. Each securement device, webbing, or strap assembly shall be of the automatic, retractable type.
3. Occupant restraint system
- A. A Type II-A occupant restraint system, which meets all applicable requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210, shall provide for restraint of the occupant.
 - B. The occupant restraint system shall be made of materials, which do not stain, soil, or tear an occupant's clothing, and which are resistant to water damage and fraying.
 - C. Each restraint system location shall have not less than one anchorage, of manufacturer's design, for the upper end of the upper torso restraint.

- (1) The anchorage for each occupant's upper torso restraint shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 1,500 pounds (6,672 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
- D. Each wheelchair/mobility aid location shall have not less than two floor anchorages for the occupant pelvic and the connected upper torso restraint.
- (1) Each floor anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - (2) When multiple occupant restraints share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) multiplied by the number of occupant restraints sharing the common anchorage in accordance with FMVSS 222.
- E. Each floor and wall anchorage which secures the occupant restraint to the vehicle and which is not permanently attached, shall be of a "positive latch" design, and shall not allow for any accidental disconnection.

Special Light

Doorways, in which lifts are installed, shall have, lighting as required by FMVSS 403 and 404.

Special Service Entrance

1. Power lift equipped bodies shall have a special service entrance to accommodate the power lift. Door materials, panels and structural strength shall be equivalent to the conventional service and emergency doors. Color, rub rail extensions, lettering and other exterior features shall match adjacent sections of the body.
2. The special service entrance and door shall be located on the right side of the bus and shall be designed so as not to obstruct the regular service entrance. All doors shall have positive fastening devices to hold doors in the open position.
3. Each door shall have windows, set in a waterproof manner, which are visually similar in size and location to adjacent non-door windows. Glazing shall be of same type and tinting (if applicable) as standard fixed glass in other body location.
4. A drip molding shall be installed above the opening to effectively divert water from entrance.
5. Door posts and headers from entrance shall be reinforced sufficiently to provide support and strength equivalent to the areas of the side of the bus not used for special service entrance.

6. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with a device that will actuate a visible signal located in the driver's compartment when the door is open and ignition is in "on" position.
7. A switch shall be installed so that the lifting mechanism will not operate when the lift platform door is closed.
8. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of the door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

Support Equipment and Accessories

1. Each bus shall contain at least two belt cutters properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into his/her driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
2. Special equipment or supplies which are used on the bus for mobility assistance, health support, or safety purposes shall meet any local, federal, or engineering standards which may apply, including proper identification.

Equipment which may be used for these purposes includes, but is not limited to:

- A. Wheelchairs and other mobile seating devices (see section on Securement System for Mobile Seating Devices/Occupant).
 - B. Crutches, walkers, canes, and other ambulating devices.
 - C. Medical support equipment. This may include respiratory devices such as oxygen bottles (which should be no larger than 22 cubic feet for liquid oxygen and 38 cubic feet for compressed gas), or ventilators. Tanks and valves should be located and positioned to protect them from direct sunlight, bus heater vents, or other heat sources. Other equipment may include intravenous and fluid drainage apparatus. Appropriate medical placarding, if needed, shall be added by the LEA.
3. All portable equipment and special accessory items, including the equipment listed above, shall be secured at the mounting location to withstand a pulling force of five times the weight of the item, or shall be retained in an enclosed, latched compartment. The compartment shall be capable of withstanding forces applied to its interior equal to five times the weight of its contents without failure to the box's integrity and securement to the bus. Exception: If these standards provide specific requirements for securement of a particular type of equipment, the specific standard shall prevail (i.e., wheelchairs).

Technology and Equipment, New

It is the intent of these specifications to accommodate new technologies and equipment that will better facilitate the transportation of students with special needs. When a new technology, piece of equipment or component is desired to be applied to the school bus it must meet the following criteria:

- A. The technology, equipment, or component shall not compromise the effectiveness or integrity of any major safety system. (Examples of safety systems include, but are not limited to, compartmentalization, the eight-lamp warning system, emergency exits and the approved color scheme.
- B. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not diminish the safety of the interior of the bus.
- C. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not create additional risk to students who are boarding or exiting the bus or are in or near the school bus loading zone.
- D. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not require undue additional activity and/or responsibility for the driver.
- E. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall generally increase efficiency and/or safety of the bus, generally provide for a safer or more pleasant experience for the occupants and pedestrians in the vicinity of the bus or shall generally assist the driver and make his/her many tasks easier to perform.
- F. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

SECTION V – ALTERNATIVE FUEL STANDARDS

1. *School systems considering the use of alternative fuels such as bio-diesel, liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), compressed natural gas (CNG), electric or the purchase of alternative-fuel buses shall contact the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130 for information and written approval prior to initiating the bid process. Written requests must, at a minimum, provide the SDE with detailed specifications including the specific design, performance criteria, alternative-fuel type and safety specifications for the alternative fuel or buses.*
2. The guidelines contained herein shall pertain to school buses approved by the Alabama State Department of Education to operate on alternative-fuel sources.
 - A. Any company or individual providing alternative-fuel school buses to school systems shall provide appropriate certifications as well as, maintenance, repair and trouble-shooting information and safety training for each system. All maintenance on alternative-fuel buses shall be performed by personnel who are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency for the alternative fuel.
 - C. These companies or individuals shall submit to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130, documentation certifying that the requirements of *this section* have been met.
3. *The retro-fitting of existing school bus engines for alternative fuel use is prohibited.*
4. Fuel blends containing used cooking oil will not be allowed.

SECTION VI - OPTIONS

School systems should contact the their state school bus inspector or the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section prior to the purchase and/or installation of any optional or after-market equipment. This is to ensure that the equipment and/or its installation is in compliance with the current Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses.

Locking Fuel Compartment Door

Provide at the option of the purchaser a lock and key to secure the fuel compartment door.

Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment

Provide at the option of the purchaser a storage compartment located in the driver's compartment to house the emergency equipment. It shall be a locked compartment with a warning buzzer attached so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked.

SECTION VII - MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS (MFSAB)

DEFINITION:

A Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB) is a school bus constructed to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) and Alabama Minimum School Bus Specifications. It must be purchased or leased as a new bus and may only be used for extracurricular activities. **These buses may not be used to transport students to and from schools or between schools for the purpose of attendance.**

The following exceptions to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for regular route buses shall be allowed for these vehicles.

Identification:

1. The bus body shall bear the words “**ACTIVITY BUS**” in a contrasting color at least 8 inches high in the area where “school bus” is normally positioned. Lettering and numbering shall conform to FMVSS and Alabama Minimum Specifications and shall meet reflectivity standards. Bus numbering on this bus may be of a contrasting color.
2. The name of the school system shall be displayed in at least five-inch letters on both sides of the bus in the beltline area. **NO SIGNS OR LOGOS** shall be applied to any area of the bus including the bumpers. The name of the school may be displayed in the beltline area. No signs, logos, or other items shall be displayed on the windows of the bus.

Color:

The local school with school system approval may determine the color of the activity bus. The color scheme may utilize any combination of up to **THREE** colors. This combination may be in addition to an optional white roof. The color National School Bus Yellow (SBMTC-008 Publication) shall not be used as a part of the color scheme.

School systems and/or vendors shall submit preliminary color schemes to the Alabama Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section for approval **prior to the purchase or manufacture** of a Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB).

Seating:

Transit style seats, which meet all aspects of FMVSS 222 and 302, may be used in lieu of regular school bus seats.

Lighting and Warning Devices:

All activity buses shall meet state and federal standards for normal school bus lighting and warning device requirements with the following exceptions:

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with alternately flashing amber or red signal lamps used for loading and unloading students.

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with stop arm signals or crossing control arms.

INSPECTIONS:

Annual inspection by Alabama Department of Education (SDE) state school bus inspectors and monthly inspections by local school bus inspectors shall be performed on all Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) as required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

REGULATIONS:

These buses shall be owned by the local school system or leased from private school bus transportation contractors. All Alabama laws, Rules of the State Board of Education, and other applicable regulations pertaining to the operation of school buses and certification of school bus drivers shall apply to Multifunctional School Activity Buses.



Disposal of Used School Buses

The procedures outlined in this document should be used in order to assure the proper disposal of school buses that are sold or otherwise removed from your school system's school bus fleet.

If the bus is sold to another school system, private school, or other agency that will continue to use the vehicle as a school bus, only the name of your system, the state inspection sticker, and the tag should be removed. **If the bus is sold or traded to a dealer only state inspection sticker and the tag should be removed.** The school bus dealer will remove the name of the school system, which could increase the value of the bus.

Alabama law requires that school buses be equipped with signal lamps and other visual signals and markings that clearly identify the vehicle as a school bus. School buses are also equipped with specialized equipment in order to help protect students, school bus drivers, and motorists. These visual markings, signals, and other specialized equipment, which include amber and red flashing lights, stop signs, warning signs on the rear of the bus, school bus lettering, and crossing control arms, are peculiar to school buses and may not be used on other vehicles, except as provided under Alabama law. Accordingly, the disposal of school buses requires measures above and beyond those necessary for the disposal of other school system vehicles.

To avoid possible liability, improve security, and also ensure compliance with the law, the following procedures should be followed when disposing of buses that will no longer be used as school buses:

1. Disable the overhead amber and red flashing lamps and stop arm used when loading and unloading students.
2. Disable the crossing control arm.
3. Remove all references to the entire name of the system on the sides of the bus, not just the name of the county or city.
4. Remove the words "SCHOOL BUS" on the **front and rear** of the bus.
5. Remove the Alabama State Inspection Sticker from the windshield.
6. Remove the county or municipal tag from the vehicle before the sale.

Questions regarding the proper disposal of used school buses should be addressed to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama at 334-242-9730.

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS
QUICK REFERENCE CHART

****TYPE A-I SCHOOL BUS****

Type A-I and A-II buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
All type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

****TYPE A-II SCHOOL BUS****
(Over 14,500 pounds)

CAPACITY	BRAKE LINING SIZE	GAWR FRONT	GAWR REAR	GVWR TOTAL	TIRE SIZE
10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply

Type A-II school buses exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have air brakes.

****TYPE C SCHOOL BUS****

10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply
48-54	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	16,000	25,000	10R x 22.5 10 ply
55-72	4" Front 7" Rear	9,000	17,500	26,500	10R x 22.5 12 ply

Type C school buses exceeding 72 capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

****TYPE C-1 SCHOOL BUS****

10-36	Four-wheel disc	6,000	13,500	19,000 maximum	225 x 70R 19.5 - 12 Ply
-------	-----------------	-------	--------	----------------	-------------------------

****TYPE D FRONT ENGINE****

10-53	4" Front 6" Rear	10,800	17,000	27,800	10R x 22.5 10 ply
54-66	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	17,000	28,000	10R x 22.5 10 ply
68-78	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	20,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

****TYPE D REAR ENGINE****

42-66	5" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply
68-78	6" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	12,000	21,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

Type D school buses exceeding 84-capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses



Alabama Department of Education
Division of Administrative and Financial Services
Pupil Transportation Section
Montgomery, Alabama
334-242-9730

Joseph B. Morton
State Superintendent of Education

Warren Craig Pouncey
Assistant State Superintendent of Education
Administrative and Financial Services

Joe Lightsey
Director of Pupil Transportation

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses
Changes Document

Changes to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses 2011 occur on the following pages and headings. All changes appear in italics with the exception of deletions. For noted deletions refer to the 2010 specifications for comparison.

NOTE: Page numbers in 2011 specifications and 2010 specifications may not coincide

Page	Section	General Description of Change
<i>2</i>	<i>General Provisions</i>	<i>Number 5: Wording clarification for diagnostic equipment</i>
<i>6</i>	<i>Chassis</i>	<i>Electrical System: Item 2C alternator size increased to 270 amps</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Body</i>	<i>Air Conditioning: New language clarifies evaporator placement</i>
<i>14</i>	<i>Body</i>	<i>Air Conditioning: New number 6 requires high idle feature</i>
<i>30</i>	<i>Body</i>	<i>Seats & Crash Barriers: New language clarifies seat back height requirement</i>
<i>32</i>	<i>Body</i>	<i>Step Tread: Wording clarification on numbers 2 and 3</i>
<i>32</i>	<i>Body</i>	<i>Storage Box: Changes storage box from required to optional item</i>
<i>39</i>	<i>Special Needs General Requirements</i>	<i>New wording specifies aisle requirements and spacing. Also requires air-ride suspension in certain seating configurations.</i>
<i>39</i>	<i>Special Needs</i>	<i>Aisle: Clarifies aisle requirements</i>



INTRODUCTION

Alabama law (32-5-8) requires the Alabama State Board of Education to adopt minimum standards to govern the specifications for all new school buses and the overall operation of all school buses in the state of Alabama. This responsibility also extends to the inspection of school buses being sold and operated in the state of Alabama. The primary reason for the development of specifications and the inspection of school buses is to enhance the safety of our school buses. We must ensure that Alabama school buses continue to provide the safest ride available for our most precious cargo—our children.

My deepest thanks are extended to each member of the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) School Bus Specifications Committee for their service, hard work, and commitment to the task. Special thanks are also extended to Specifications Committee Chairperson, Greg Ray. For many years, his experience, dedication, and leadership have helped to ensure a successful meeting as well as exceptional specifications. School bus specifications always begin as a product of many individual thoughts and ideas. However, they culminate in standards, which help assure the safest school buses possible for Alabama's students as well as vehicles, which provide a true value for Alabama's taxpayers.

Special thanks must also be expressed to Alabama's school bus dealers, their school bus manufacturers and the many vendors and others in the school bus industry that assist in the SDE and the Committee in the development of these standards. Without their participation, the specifications process would be significantly weakened.

The Minimum Specifications for Alabama School Buses become effective on April 1, 2010. If you have questions or recommendations regarding any of the specifications in this document, please contact Mr. Ray or any member of the specifications committee. Committee members are listed on the following page.

Joe Lightsey, Director
Pupil Transportation
Alabama State Department of Education
Montgomery, Alabama 36130
334-242-9730
joel@alsde.edu

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

Alabama Department of Education (SDE)
School Bus Specifications Committee
February 1, 2010

Vernon Ash
cobra@gulfcoastuniversalriders.com
Mobile County Schools
3274 International Drive
Mobile, AL 36606
(251) 221-5242

Harvey Barger
hbarger@tcss.net
Tuscaloosa County Schools
3700 68th Avenue
Northport, AL 35476
(205) 342-2636

Joey Barnett
jbarnett@mcbe.net
Marion County Schools
188 Winchester Drive
Hamilton, AL 35570
(205) 921-3771

Jerry Cataldo
Jerry.cataldo@trussvillecityschools.com
Trussville City Schools
113 N. Chalkville Road
Trussville, AL 35173
(205) 228-3033

Keith Clark
khclark@morgank12.org
Morgan County Schools
1325 Point Mallard Parkway SE
Decatur, AL 35601
(256) 353-6442

Jerry Davidson
jdavidson@Shelbyed.k12.al.us
Shelby County Schools
P. O. Box 1910
Columbiana, AL 35051
(205) 682-7133

David Gibson
dgibson@pcboe.net
Phenix City Schools
P. O. Box 460
Phenix City, AL 36867
(334) 298-2823

Don Ingram
dingram@auburnschools.org
Auburn City Schools
P. O. Box 3270
Auburn, AL 36831-3270
(334) 887-4915

James Knickrehm, ASTA President
jknickrehm@hoover.k12.al.us
Hoover City Schools
1070 Buccaneer Drive
Hoover, AL 35244
(205) 439-1120

Leslie Mathison
Mathison.leslie@aidb.state.al.us
AIDB
P.O. Box 698
Talladega, AL 35160
(256) 761-3443

Tony Morris
morristrn@yahoo.com
Pell City Schools
1000 Bruce Etheredge Parkway
Pell City, AL 35128-3213
(205) 884-4800

Fay Parker
fay.parker@lcschools.org
Lauderdale County Schools
P. O. Box 278
Florence, AL 35631
(256) 760-1338

Bobby Martin
bmartin@chilton.k12.al.us
Chilton County Schools
1705 Lay Dam Road
Clanton, AL 35045
(205) 280-2950

Turner Oliver
olivert@pcboe.org
Pickens County Schools
P. O. Box 32
Carrollton, AL 35447
(205) 367-8244

Harold Pearson
pearsonssr@powernet.org
Cherokee County Schools
130 E. Main Street
Centre, AL 35960
(256) 927-2671

Joe Lightsey
joel@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerome Cook
cook8500@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Jeff Duke
papajd@charter.net
State Department of Education

Obie Fuller
ofuller@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Brad Holley
bholley@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Greg Ray
gwrap@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jeff Snider
jnsnider@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Sammy Weatherspoon
ginger1235601@yahoo.com
State Department of Education

Jerry Lassiter
jlassiter@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Joe Beams
joebeams@aol.com
State Department of Education

Cathy Staggs
ctstaggs@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Ray Jones
No email
State Department of Education

ALABAMA
SCHOOL BUS INSPECTION
HANDBOOK



PREPARED BY
ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
DIVISION OF ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL SERVICES
TRANSPORTATION SECTION
MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA

The **Alabama School Bus Inspection Handbook** was developed by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) Pupil Transportation Section as a standard for school bus safety inspections at the local school system level. This handbook is provided as a guideline for local school system school bus inspectors, shop foremen, technicians, maintenance supervisors, and transportation directors in conducting the monthly inspections required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

The goal of this handbook is to provide uniform standards for state and local school bus inspections. The manual also identifies the critical items to be inspected on Alabama school buses, how they are to be inspected, and which items should remove a school bus from service until the item is repaired (“out of service” items).

Copies of the handbook have been distributed to all local school systems.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<u>SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS</u>	1
<u>SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS</u>	3
Air Cleaner.....	3
Axles.....	3
Brakes.....	3
Bumper (Front).....	5
Certification.....	5
Color.....	5
Directional Lights.....	5
Drive Shaft.....	6
Electrical System.....	6
Engine.....	7
Exhaust System.....	7
Fenders, Hoods.....	8
Frame.....	8
Fuel Tank.....	9
Governor.....	9
Heating System, Provision for.....	10
Horn.....	10
Instruments & Instrument Panel.....	10
Oil Filter.....	11
Openings.....	11
Passenger Load.....	11
Retarder System (Optional).....	11
Road Speed Control	11
Shock Absorbers.....	11
Springs/Suspension Systems	11
Steering Gear.....	12
Tires and Rims.....	12
Transmission.....	13
Turning Radius.....	13
Undercoating.....	13
Weight Distribution.....	13

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

PAGE

Air Conditioning.....	14
Aisle.....	14
Back-up Warning Alarm.....	14
Battery/Batteries.....	14
Bumper (Front).....	15
Bumper (Rear).....	15
Ceiling.....	15
Certification.....	15
Chains (Tire).....	15
Color.....	15
Communication Systems	16
Construction.....	16
Crossing Control Arm.....	16
Defrosters.....	17
Doors.....	17
Emergency Exits.....	18
Emergency Equipment.....	20
Fire Extinguishers.....	20
First-Aid Kit.....	20
Body Fluid Clean-up Kit.....	20
Warning Devices.....	21
Fire Suppression	21
Floor and Floor Coverings.....	21
Handrail(s)	22
Heaters.....	22
Hinges	23
Identification.....	23
Inside Height.....	24
Insulation.....	24
Interior.....	24
Lamps and Signals.....	25
Metal Treatment.....	27
Mirrors.....	27
Mounting.....	28

<u>SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS (Continued)...</u>	PAGE
Noise Suppression Switch.....	28
Overall Length.....	28
Overall Width.....	28
Public Address System	28
Retroreflective Material.....	28
Rub Rails.....	29
Seat Belt for Driver.....	29
Seat and Crash Barriers.....	30
Steering Wheel (See Chassis Standards).....	31
Steps.....	31
Step Treads.....	32
Stirrup Step.....	32
Stop Arm Signal.....	32
Stop Arm Signal-Rear (Optional)	32
Storage Compartment.....	32
Sun Shield.....	33
Tailpipe.....	33
Traction-Assisting Devices.....	33
Trash Container and Holding Device.....	34
Undercoating.....	34
Ventilation.....	34
Video Surveillance Equipment.....	35
Wheel Housing.....	35
Windshield and Windows.....	35
Windshield Washers.....	36
Windshield Wipers.....	36
Wiring.....	36

SECTION IV - SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction.....	38
Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus	38
General Requirements.....	38
Air Conditioning.....	39
Aisles.....	39

Communication System	39
Crash Barriers	39
Evacuation Blanket.....	39
Glazing.....	40
Identification	40
Passenger Capacity Rating.....	40
Power Lift.....	40
Ramp.....	43
Regular Service Entrance.....	43
Restraining Devices.....	44
Seating Arrangements.....	44
Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant.....	44
Special Light.....	48
Special Service Entrance.....	48
Support Equipment and Accessories.....	49
Technology and Equipment New.....	49
<u>SECTION V - ALTERNATE FUEL SOURCE STANDARDS</u>	51
<u>SECTION VI - OPTIONS</u>	51
Locking Fuel Compartment Door	51
Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment.....	51
<u>SECTION VII – MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS</u>	52
Definition	52
Identification	52
Color	52
Seating	52
Lighting and Warning Devices.....	52
Inspections	53
Regulations	53
<u>DISPOSAL OF USED SCHOOL BUSES</u>	54
<u>SECTION VIII – QUICK REFERENCE CHART</u>	55

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS FOR SCHOOL BUSES
EFFECTIVE April 1, 2010

SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Standards

1. All school buses ordered by local education agencies beginning **April 1, 2010**, shall (1) meet the applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS), and (2) meet Alabama minimum specifications for school buses. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of an applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard, as referred to in this section, and the Alabama minimum specifications, the requirements of the FMVSS shall control. **School buses not meeting minimum specifications will not be certified by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE). Under unusual circumstances and with adequate justification, exceptions to these specifications may be granted by the SDE director of pupil transportation.**

Certification

2. All school bus manufacturers shall certify to the SDE, in the form of a **durable, legible** certification label mounted in the driver's compartment in the vehicle, that all school buses meet or exceed all standards as specified herein and are in compliance with the applicable FMVSS. All manufacturers shall certify to the State of Alabama and local education agencies that all components on school buses are new from bumper to bumper at time of delivery. All chassis and body information shall appear on this certification label.

Used School Buses

3. Used school buses purchased for use by a school system in Alabama shall meet all of the legal Federal and Alabama requirements for school buses that were in effect on the date the vehicle was manufactured. It is recommended that school systems contact the SDE Pupil Transportation prior to the purchase of any used school bus.

Bid Requirements

4. In order to be in compliance with the State Bid Law, school bus purchases shall be by competitive bidding. Bid forms to the body manufacturer shall contain certain options required by the chassis manufacturer, which may result in changes in normal Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or alterations to the body. For special needs buses, the school bus body manufacturer shall submit floor plans which include dimensions at the time bid quotations are submitted showing:
 1. Location of the emergency door, emergency windows and roof hatches.
 2. Aisle and staging areas and seat spacing.

3. Track locations and/or wheelchair securement positions.
4. Location of air conditioning evaporator(s) **for all buses** ordered with air conditioning.
5. **Service Manual/Diagnostic Equipment**
Body and/or chassis suppliers, including integral (forward control) suppliers, shall provide each school district purchasing school buses with one complete set of the most current service manuals, as specified by the school system, available to include both body and chassis at no additional cost upon delivery of bus. Provisions for manuals and diagnostic equipment, including, but not limited to code books, software, and training, etc, shall be agreed upon during the pre-bid process. Diagnostic equipment *shall not be included as a part of the bus bid and cannot be* used to determine low bidder.

6. **New Technology**

New technology not in the present specifications shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

7. **School Bus Definitions**

School bus capacity is determined based on body size before modifications are made.

TYPE A: A Type A school bus is a conversion or body constructed upon a van-type or cutaway front-section vehicle with a left side driver's door designed for carrying more than 10 persons. This definition shall include two classifications: Type A-I with a GVWR of 10,000 or under; and Type A-II, with a GVWR over 10,000 pounds. All Type A buses shall have dual rear wheels. **Type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.**

Type A buses exceeding a GVWR of 14,500 pounds shall have air brakes.

TYPE B: A Type B school bus is a conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section vehicle chassis, or stripped chassis, with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels. All Type B buses 14,500 pounds or under shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE C: A Type C school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The entire engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.

Type C buses may not exceed 72-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C1 A Type C1 school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and a maximum of 19,000 pounds and designed for carrying a maximum of 36 persons. This is a special category of a Type C school bus designed to be an alternate to a Type A1, Type A2. **This bus shall not exceed a maximum capacity of 36 persons.**

TYPE D: A Type D school bus is a body installed upon a chassis, with the engine mounted in the front, midship, or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or midship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels. **Type D buses may not exceed 84-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.**

SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS

Air Cleaner

1. The engine intake air cleaner shall be furnished and properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

The intake air system for diesel engines shall have an air cleaner restriction indicator properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

Axles

1. The front and rear axles and suspension systems shall have a gross axle weight rating (GAWR) at ground commensurate with the respective front and rear weight loads of the bus loaded to the rated passenger capacity.
2. Vehicle minimum axle capacities at ground when loaded shall meet the body manufacturer's GVWR specified by the FMVSS. Axle assemblies shall have minimum capacities at ground as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
3. Front wheel bearings must be oil filled on all Type C and D buses.

Brakes

1. A braking system, including service brake and parking brake, shall be provided and shall comply with all CDL pretrip inspection requirements. All Type A-1 and A-II school buses below 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications. Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
2. Buses using air in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals located within the interior of the driver compartment and clearly audible and visible to the driver, that will give a continuous warning when the air pressure available in the system for braking is 60 psi (pounds per square inch) or less.

An air pressure gauge shall be provided in the instrument panel capable of complying with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.

3. Antilock brake systems for either air or hydraulic brakes shall include control of all axles in compliance with FMVSS 105 or 121.
 - A. Air brakes shall be installed on **all** chassis exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR.
Exception: Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

All air-operated brake systems shall:

- (1) Meet all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for air brakes.
 - (2) Be S-cam type brakes on all wheels. The camshaft, when applying brakes, shall rotate in the same direction as the wheels. Automatic slack adjusters shall be the same design on all wheels. Dust covers shall be installed on all wheels unless deleted through local option at the time of the bid.
 - (3) Have at least a 12 CFM air compressor.
 - (4) Be equipped with a parking and emergency brake. A manual control, clearly identified, shall be within easy reach of the driver. The parking brake valve shall comply with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.
 - (5) Have brake lining sizes as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
 - (6) Have a reservoir capacity, which is equal to or greater than two (2) times total volume of all brake activators at full travel.
 - (7) Have air dryers installed. (Bendix AD-9, Midland DA33100 or prior written approved equal). Air dryers shall be serviceable at the local level.
- B. Buses using a hydraulic assist-booster in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals, readily audible and visible to the driver, that will provide continuous warning in the event of a loss of fluid flow from the primary source, or loss of electric source powering the back-up system.
 - (1) The system shall be equipped with a source of hydraulic pressure, automatically initiated upon loss of power from primary source, and operating independently of the primary power source.
 - (2) All brake systems shall be designed to permit visual inspection of brake lining wear without the removal of any chassis components.

Bumper, Front

1. The front bumper shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer for all school bus types, unless there is specific agreement between the chassis manufacturer and the body manufacturer. When Type D chassis are supplied to a body company by a chassis manufacturer, the body company shall supply the front bumper as part of the body installation.
2. The front bumper shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material at least 3/16 inch thick, not less than 8 inches wide (high) and shall extend beyond forward-most part of the body, grille, hood, and fenders and shall extend to the outer edges of the fenders at the bumper's top line. Bumpers on Type A buses may be built to manufacturers' specifications.
3. Tow eyes or hooks shall be furnished and attached so as not to project beyond the front bumper. Tow eyes or hooks, attached to the frame chassis, shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer. This installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's standards. Type A buses are exempt from tow hook requirements.
4. The bumper shall be designed or reinforced so that it will not deform, when the bus is lifted by a chain that is passed under the bumper (or through the bumper if holes are provided for this purpose) and attached to both tow eyes. For the purpose of meeting this standard, the bus shall be empty and positioned on a level, hard surface, and both tow eyes shall share the load equally. Front bumper shall not be deformed when lifted by a bumper jack positioned on the bumper attachment points.

Certification

The chassis manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Color

1. The chassis, including the front bumper, shall be black. The hood, cowl and fenders shall be in national school bus yellow. The hood may be painted with non-reflective paint.
2. Wheel rims shall be painted black, gray, or yellow on all buses.
3. Multifunctional School Activity Buses shall be exempt from these requirements. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Directional Lights

1. Each Type C chassis may be equipped with Type A front directional lights of the two-faced type mounted on the top of the fender and the hood side panel, or have an amber turn signal and marker light that is an integral part of the headlight assembly. This turn signal/marker light shall be seen from the front and the side of the vehicle.

Drive Shaft

1. Torque capacity of the drive shaft assembly shall at least equal maximum engine torque as developed through lowest transmission gear reduction.
2. Each drive shaft shall be equipped with protective metal guard or guards to reduce the possibility of it whipping through the floor or dropping to ground if broken. (Body manufacturer is responsible for Mini Bus.)

Electrical System

1. Battery
 - A. The storage batteries shall have a minimum total of 1,500 cold cranking amps at 0 degrees Fahrenheit. Type A buses shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
 - B. Since all batteries in Type, C, and D buses are to be located in a sliding tray, the battery shall be temporarily mounted on the chassis frame by the chassis manufacturer.

In these cases, the final location of the battery and the appropriate cable lengths shall be according to the current SBMTC Design Objectives.

2. Alternator
 - A. All Type A and B buses up to 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall have a minimum 130 amperes alternator.
 - B. All C and D buses over 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall be equipped with a heavy-duty truck or bus-type alternator capable of producing a minimum output rating of 185 amperes; The alternator shall be capable of producing a minimum of 50 percent of its maximum rated output at the engine manufacturer's recommended idle speed.
 - C. All C and D, buses equipped with an air conditioner or electrical power lift shall have a minimum **270** amperes alternator.
 - D. A direct-drive alternator is permissible in lieu of a belt drive. A belt drive shall be capable of handling the rated capacity of the alternator with no detrimental effect on other driven components.
 - E. Refer to SBMTC Design Objectives, most current edition, for estimating required alternator capacity.
3. Wiring
 - A. All wiring shall conform to current applicable recommended practices of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
 - (1) All wiring shall use standard colors and number coding and each chassis shall be delivered with a wiring diagram that coincides with the wiring of the chassis.

All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet or loom.

- B. The chassis manufacturer shall install a readily accessible terminal strip or plug on the body side of the cowl, or at an accessible location in the engine compartment of vehicles designed without a cowl, that shall contain the following terminals for the body connections:

- (1) Main 100-amp body circuits
- (2) Tail lamps
- (3) Right turn signal
- (4) Left turn signal
- (5) Stop lamps
- (6) Back-up lamps
- (7) Instrument panel lights (rheostat controlled)

- C. Daytime running lamps shall be provided.

4. Circuits

- A. An appropriate identifying diagram (color and number coded) for electrical circuits shall be provided to the body manufacturer for distribution to the end user.

Engine Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

See Fire Suppression System page 21.

Engine

- 1. All buses shall be equipped with diesel engines with a minimum horsepower as follows:

29 to 60 passengers – 170 hp motor minimum

65 passengers and above – 210 hp motor minimum

Type D buses 78 passengers and above – 230 hp minimum

Type A buses under 29 passenger – manufacturer's specifications

- 2. The engine heater may be installed as per the manufacturer's specifications.

Exhaust System

- 1. The exhaust pipe, muffler/ after treatment device, and tail pipe shall be outside the bus body and securely attached to the bus frame. The chassis manufacturer shall furnish an exhaust system with a tail pipe of sufficient length to exit the rear of the bus or at the left side of the bus body no more than 18 inches forward of the front edge of the rear wheelhouse opening. If designed to exit on the side of the bus, the tailpipe shall extend to the skirtline with a turndown angle of approximately 45 degrees. With the exception of special needs buses, Type A vehicles may have the manufacturer's standard exhaust system. The bus shall not automatically begin to regenerate the diesel particulate filter while the bus is not moving. The switch to

regenerate the diesel particulate filter shall be readily accessible to the technician, but not accessible to the driver

2. The muffler and the tail pipe shall be constructed of aluminized, or equivalent corrosion resistant material. The tailpipe shall be made of at least 16 gauge material and shall be mounted in such a way that it will not cause damage to brake lines
3. The muffler/ after treatment device, and exhaust pipe shall be properly insulated from the fuel tank, lines, and connections by a protective shield at any point where it is 4 inches or less from fuel tank, lines or connections.
4. The tailpipe on all special needs vehicles shall be routed to the left of the left frame rail to allow for the installation of a lift on the right side of the vehicle.
5. No exhaust pipe shall exit beneath an emergency exit or the fuel fill.
6. On all Type C and D buses, the tailpipe shall exit at the bottom edge of the rear bumper or through the rear bumper. If tailpipe exits through the rear bumper sufficient clamps or brackets must be provided to eliminate rattles. If the tailpipe exits beneath the rear bumper, it shall be turned down approximately 45 degrees and positioned in such a way that it cannot be crushed beneath the rear bumper.

The opening in the tailpipe shall direct all exhaust gases clear of the perimeter of the bus body. Manufacturers must make reasonable efforts to ensure that exhaust gases will not produce burns on students or other individuals present.

Fenders, Hoods

1. The total spread of outer edges of front fenders, measured at the fender line, shall exceed the total spread of the front tires when the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
2. Front fenders shall be properly braced and free from any body attachments.
3. A fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite tilt hood shall be provided. The hood opening and closing effort shall be minimized to aid the driver with pre-trip inspections and service. If the hood is not designed to remain secure in the open position, a safety prop will be required. The wiring harness shall be a “quick disconnect” type to aid with servicing.

Frame

1. The frame or equivalent shall be of such design and strength characteristics as to correspond at least to standard practice for trucks of the same general load characteristics, which are used for highway service.
2. Any secondary manufacturer that modifies the original chassis frame shall guarantee the performance of workmanship and materials resulting from such modification.

3. Any frame modification shall not be for the purpose of extending the wheelbase.
4. Holes in top or bottom flanges or side units of the frame, and welding to the frame, shall not be permitted except as provided or accepted by the chassis manufacturer.
5. Frame lengths shall be provided in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.

Fuel Tank

1. All Types C, and D chassis above 170-inch wheelbase shall have a minimum 60-gallon fuel tank with a 55-gallon actual draw. The tank shall be filled and vented to the outside of the body, the location of which shall be so that accidental fuel spillage will not drip or drain on any part of the exhaust system. **Type C-1 school buses are exempt from this requirement.**
2. No portion of the fuel system, which is located to the rear of the engine compartment, except the filler tube, shall extend above the top of the chassis frame rail. Fuel lines shall be mounted to obtain maximum possible protection from the chassis frame.
3. Fuel filters shall be installed as per manufacturer's specifications. Fuel filtration shall include water detection and separation. At least one fuel filter shall have a replaceable spin-on or cartridge-type element.
4. Fuel tank installation shall be in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives for location on the chassis right frame rail or between frame rails; the filler tube shall be located on the right side of the bus.
5. Type A buses may meet manufacturer's specifications.
6. The fuel tank on vehicles constructed with a power lift unit may be mounted on left chassis rail or behind rear wheels.
7. Installation of alternative fuel tanks shall comply with all applicable fire codes.
8. On Types C, and D vehicles, fuel tanks shall have interior baffles to help prevent buses from fuel starvation on inclines.

Governor

1. An engine governor is permissible. When it is desired to limit road speed, a road speed governor should be installed.
2. An electronic engine speed limiter shall be provided and set to limit engine speed not to exceed the maximum revolutions per minute as recommended by the engine manufacturer. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Heating System, Provision for

1. The chassis engine shall have plugged openings for the purpose of supplying hot water for the bus heating system. The opening shall be suitable for attaching a pipe thread/hose connector. The engine shall be capable of supplying water having a temperature of at least 170 degrees Fahrenheit at a flow rate of 50 pounds/per minute at the return end of 30 feet of one inch inside diameter automotive hot water heater hose (SBMI Standard No. 001--Standard Code for Testing and Rating Automotive Bus Hot Water Heating and Ventilating Equipment).

Horn

Buses shall be equipped with a horn or horns of standard make with each horn capable of producing a complex sound in bands of audio frequencies between 250 and 2,000 cycles per second and tested per the Society of Automotive Engineers Standard J--377. There shall be no air horns.

Instruments and Instrument Panel

1. Chassis shall be equipped with the following instruments and gauges (lights in lieu of gauges are not acceptable except as noted):
 - A. Speedometer
 - B. Odometer shall show accrued mileage to six digits not including tenths.
 - C. Tachometer
 - D. Voltmeter
 - (1) An ammeter with graduated charge and discharge with the ammeter and its wiring compatible with generating capacities is permitted in lieu of a voltmeter
 - E. Oil-pressure gauge
 - F. Water temperature gauge
 - G. Fuel gauge
 - H. Upper beam headlight indicator
 - I. Air brake indicator gauge
 - (1) A light indicator in lieu of a gauge is permitted on vehicles equipped with hydraulic-over-hydraulic brake system.
 - J. Turn signal indicator
 - K. Glow-plug indicator light where appropriate
 - L. A twelve-volt accessory outlet with cover
2. All instruments shall be easily accessible for maintenance and repair.

3. Instruments and gauges shall be mounted on the instrument panel in such a manner that each is clearly visible to the driver while in a normal seated position in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.
4. The instrument panel shall have lamps of sufficient candlepower to illuminate all instruments and gauges and the shift selector indicator for an automatic transmission.

Oil Filter

An Oil filter with replaceable element shall be provided and connected by flexible oil lines if it is not of built-in or engine-mounted design. The oil filters shall have a capacity of at least one (1) quart.

Openings

All openings in the floorboard or firewall between the chassis and the passenger-carrying compartment, such as for gearshift selector and parking brake lever, shall be sealed.

Passenger Load

1. Actual GVW is the sum of the chassis weight, plus the body weight, plus the driver's weight, plus total seated pupil weight. For purposes of calculation, the driver's weight is 150 pounds. For purposes of calculation, the pupil weight is 120 pounds per pupil.
2. Actual GVW shall not exceed the chassis manufacturer's GVWR for the chassis, nor shall the actual weight carried on any axle exceed the chassis manufacturer's Gross Axle Weight Rating. (GAWR)

Retarder System (Optional)

A retarder system, if used, shall limit the speed of the fully loaded school bus at 19.0 mph or 30 km/hr on a 7% grade for 3.6 miles or 6 km.

Road Speed Control

When it is necessary to control vehicle maximum speed, a vehicle speed limiter shall be utilized. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Shock Absorbers

Buses shall be equipped with front and rear double-action shock absorbers compatible with the manufacturer's rated axle capacity at each wheel location.

Springs/Suspension Systems

1. The capacity of the springs or suspension assemblies shall be commensurate with the chassis manufacturer's GVWR.
2. Front springs shall be of the leaf type, shall have a stationary eye at one end, and shall be protected by a wrapper leaf in addition to the main leaf. Rear leaf springs shall be of the progressive type.

3. Air ride suspension may be used on the front and rear of Type C and D buses in lieu of leaf-type springs. Body and chassis parts must clear tires with air bags in fully deflated condition or steering wheel turned fully to the left or right. If brake dust covers are used, inspection holes of adequate size and location for easily viewing brake linings shall be provided.

Steering Gear

1. The steering gear shall be approved by the chassis manufacturer and designed to assure safe and accurate performance when the vehicle is operated with maximum load and at maximum speed.
2. If external adjustments are required, the steering mechanism must be accessible to accomplish the same.
3. No changes shall be made in the steering apparatus, which are not approved by the chassis manufacturer.
4. There shall be a clearance of at least two inches between the steering wheel and the cowl, instrument panel, windshield, or any other surface.
5. Power steering is required and shall be of the integral type with integral valves.
6. The steering system shall be designed to provide a means for lubrication of all wear-points, if wear-points are not permanently lubricated.
7. The steering wheel shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Tires and Rims

1. Radial tubeless tires and rims of proper size and tires with a load rating commensurate with chassis manufacturer's GVWR shall be provided. Hubcaps are not permitted.
2. Dual rear tires shall be provided on all school buses.
3. All tires on any given vehicle shall be of the same size and the load range of said tires shall meet or exceed the gross axle weight rating as required by FMVSS 120. Low profile tires are acceptable. However, they must meet the load range and ply requirements as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet. It is recommended that dish-type rims be used with low profile tires.
4. If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire and rim assembly, it shall be of the same size as those mounted on the vehicle.
5. If a tire carrier is required, it shall be suitably mounted in an accessible location outside the passenger compartment.

Transmission

An automatic transmission shall be required on all buses. Type A buses may be built to manufacturer's specifications. Types C, and D buses must have a PTS 2500 series or prior approved equal. The automatic transmission shall have at least four forward-gear ratios, plus integral torque converter. The transmission shift quadrant shall provide at least four forward drive ranges plus neutral and reverse ranges. Within the range selected, ratio changes shall be effected automatically and at full engine power if desirable, and without use of an engine disconnect clutch. A PTS3000 or prior approved equal is required for chassis over 33,000 pounds GVWR.

Type C-1 school buses may use Allison PTS 1000 or PTS 2200 automatic transmission or prior approved equal.

Turning Radius

1. Chassis with a wheelbase of 264 inches or less shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 42 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.
2. Chassis with a wheelbase of 265 inches or more shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 44 and 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.

Undercoating

The chassis manufacturer, or agent thereof, shall coat the undersides of steel or metallic-constructed front fenders with rust-proofing compound for which compound manufacturers have issued notarized certification of compliance to the chassis builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C520B using modified test.

Weight Distribution

The weight distribution of a fully loaded bus on a level surface shall be such as not to exceed the manufacturer's front gross axle rating and rear gross axle weight rating.

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

Air Conditioning

All special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. Other buses **may** be equipped with an air conditioning unit at the discretion of the local school system.

Type A school buses may be built to manufacturers standards to include dash mounted evaporator and air duct systems. All Type C and D buses are required to have bulkhead mounted rear air conditioner evaporator systems. Front mounted evaporator units on Type C and D buses may include bulkhead-mounted or dash-mounted evaporator units. All other evaporator units shall be mounted on the left side behind the driver position so as not to interfere with entrance or exit or any wheelchair position.

All buses ordered with air conditioning shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Floor--All flooring shall be 5/8-inch exterior-grade plywood over steel flooring.
2. All buses shall have a white roof.
3. Windows--All passenger windows shall be tinted with 28% light transmission.
4. All buses shall meet insulation standards as per Alabama bus specifications.
5. **Optional** mud flaps to protect the condenser may be installed.
6. *Be equipped with a high-idle feature.*

Minimum Btu air conditioning system per passenger size:

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. 10-30-passenger | 40,000 Btu |
| 2. 31-48-passenger | 53,000 Btu |
| 3. 49-60-passenger | 78,000 Btu |
| 4. 61-84-passenger | 100,000 Btu |

Aisle

1. All emergency doors shall be accessible by a 12-inch minimum aisle. The aisle shall be unobstructed at all times.

Back-Up Warning Alarm

An automatic, audible alarm with a minimum of 87dbA and maximum of 112dbA shall be installed behind the rear axle and shall comply with the Society of Automotive Engineers published Back-up Alarm Standards (SAE 994). The alarm shall have a protective deflector shield.

Battery/Batteries

1. Batteries are to be furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
2. When the battery/batteries is mounted as described in the Chassis Standard, the body manufacturer shall securely attach the battery on a slide-out or swing-out tray in a closed, vented compartment in the body skirt, so that the battery is accessible for convenient servicing from the outside. The battery compartment door or cover shall be hinged at the front and secured by an adequate and conveniently-operated latch or other type fastener.

Bumper (Front)

On a Type D school bus, if the chassis manufacturer does not provide a bumper, it shall be provided by the body manufacturer. The bumper will conform to the standards in the chassis section.

Bumper (Rear)

1. Bumpers shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material, at least 3/16-inch thick, and shall be a minimum of 9-1/2 inches wide (high) on all Types C, and D buses. Type A buses shall have a minimum of an 8-inch rear bumper.
2. Bumpers shall be wrapped around the back corners of the bus. It shall extend forward at least 12 inches, measured from the rear-most point of the body at the floor line.
3. Bumpers shall be attached to the chassis frame in such a manner that it may be easily removed. It shall be so braced as to withstand impact from a rear or side impact. It shall be so attached as to discourage hitching of rides.
4. Bumpers shall extend at least one inch beyond rear-most part of body surface measured at the floor line.
5. Tow eyes or hooks may be furnished on the rear and attached so they do not project beyond the rear bumper. The installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's specifications.
6. The bottom of the rear bumper shall not be more than 30 inches above ground level.

Ceiling

See Insulation and Interior, Body Standard.

Certification

The body manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Chains (Tire)

See Wheel Housing Body Standard.

Color

1. The school bus body shall be painted National School Bus Yellow.
2. The body exterior paint trim, bumper, lamp hoods and lettering shall be black.
3. The roof of the bus must be painted white not to extend below the drip rails on the sides of the body.

4. Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) shall be exempt from this requirement. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Communication Systems

Each bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Construction

1. Construction shall be of prime commercial quality steel or other material with strength at least equivalent to all-steel as certified by the bus body manufacturer. All such construction materials shall be fire resistant.
2. Construction shall be dust proof and watertight, so the bus does not leak under normal operating conditions.
3. Body joints present in that portion of a Type A school bus body furnished exclusively by the body manufacturer shall conform to the performance requirements of FMVSS 221, "School Bus Body Joint Strength." This does not include the body joints created when body components are attached to components furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
4. Type A school bus bodies shall be equipped with restraining barriers conforming to FMVSS 222, "School Bus Passenger Seating--Crash Protection," Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

Crossing Control Arm

1. Buses shall be equipped with a crossing control arm mounted on the right side of the front bumper, which shall not open more than 90 degrees.
2. All components of the crossing control arm and all connections shall be weatherproofed.
3. The crossing control arm shall incorporate system connectors (electrical or air) at the gate and shall be easily removable to allow for towing of the bus.
4. The crossing control arm shall meet or exceed SAE Standard J1133.
5. The crossing control arm shall be constructed of non-corrosive or nonferrous material or treated in accordance with the body sheet metal standard (see Metal Treatment).
6. There shall be no sharp edges or projections that could cause hazard or injury to students.
7. The crossing control arm shall extend at least 70" from the front bumper when in the extended position.

8. The crossing control arms shall extend simultaneously with the stop arm(s) by means of the stop arm controls. An automatic recycling interrupt switch shall be installed to allow the driver to deactivate the control arm when necessary.
9. An electromagnetic device or a stowed bracket shall be installed to stabilize the arm when in the stored position.
10. Crossing control arm shall be Specialty Manufacturing Company, Part #58600, Transpec 4000 series, or prior approved equal.

Defrosters

1. The windshield defroster and defogging system shall provide defogging of the entire windshield, driver's side window, and entrance door glasses by utilizing hot air taken from the heater core with vents across the entire windshield.
2. The defrosting system shall conform to Society of Automotive Engineers' Standards J381 and J382.
3. The defroster and defogging system shall be capable of furnishing heated outside ambient air.
4. Auxiliary fans are not considered defrosting or defogging systems.
5. Portable heaters shall not be used.

Doors

1. Service Door:
 - A. The service door shall be in the driver's control, and designed to afford easy release and provide a positive latching device on manual operating doors to prevent accidental opening. When a hand lever is used, no part shall come together that will shear or crush fingers. Manual door controls shall not require more than 25 pounds of force to operate at any point throughout the range of operation.
 - B. The service door shall be located on the right side of the bus, opposite and within direct view of the driver.
 - C. The service door shall have a minimum horizontal opening of 24 inches and a minimum vertical opening of 68 inches.
 - D. The service door shall be a split type, both sections opening outward.
 - E. Lower, as well as upper door panels, shall be of approved safety glass. The bottom of each lower glass panel shall not be more than 10 inches from the top surface of

the bottom step. The top of each upper glass panel shall not be more than 6 inches from the top of the door.

- F. Vertical closing edges on split type entrance doors shall be equipped with flexible material to protect the children's fingers.
- G. There shall be no door to the left in driver compartment on Types C or D vehicles.
- H. All doors shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.
- I. If air or electric doors are used, the amber warning lights shall be activated from a momentary switch. A three-position switch shall activate the sequence as follows:
 - Position One – door closed; lights off.
 - Position Two – activate red lights, stop arm, and crossing control arm.
 - Position Three – red lights activated, door open, stop arm activated, and crossing control arm activated.

Emergency Exits

1. Emergency Door:

- A. The emergency door shall be hinged on the right side if in the rear end of bus and on the front side if on left or right side of the bus. It shall open outward and be labeled inside to indicate how it is to be opened. If double emergency doors are used on Type A vehicles, they shall be hinged on the outside edge and shall have a three-point fastening device. A device shall be used that holds the door open to prevent the emergency door from closing during emergencies and school bus evacuation drills. If emergency door locks are used, the vehicle ignition must be disabled until the emergency door lock is deactivated.
- B. The upper portion of the emergency door shall be equipped with approved safety glazing, the exposed area of which shall be at least 400 square inches. The lower portion of the rear emergency door on Types C, and D vehicles shall be equipped with a minimum of 350 square inches of approved safety glazing.
- C. There shall be no steps leading to an emergency door.
- D. The words **EMERGENCY DOOR**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed at the top of or directly above the emergency door or on the door in the metal panel above the top glass, both inside and outside of the bus. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT** in letters at least 2 inches high shall be placed on the exterior body directly above each emergency window.

E. The emergency door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Padding shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick, and extend the full width of the door opening.

F. The side emergency door, if installed, must meet the requirements as set forth in FMVSS 217 (a), regardless of its use with any other combination of emergency exits.

(1) A left side emergency door shall have a 20 inch unobstructed passageway and no flip seat is to be used. A barrier shall be used just before the door opening.

G. There shall be no obstruction higher than 1/4 inch across the bottom of any emergency door opening.

2. Additional Emergency Exits:

A. All school buses shall be equipped with emergency exits in the following capacity vehicles:

- 0 to 54 passenger: one emergency window exit per side and one roof hatch located midpoint.
- 55 and above passenger: two emergency window exits per side, and two roof hatches.

B. Each emergency exit shall comply with FMVSS 217. These emergency exits are in addition to the rear emergency door or exit. Roof hatches must be Transpec Standard Vent, Model 1970, Specialty Manufacturing 8600, 8900, or 9000 series or prior approved equal.

(1) Emergency exit windows shall be as evenly spaced as possible under FMVSS 217 guidelines and shall not be obstructed by any devices.

C. In addition to the audible warning required on emergency doors by FMVSS 217, additional emergency exits shall also be like protected. Warnings for these exits shall be clearly audible to the bus driver.

D. School bus emergency exits shall be marked with a minimum one inch wide strip of retroreflective tape red, white or yellow in color, to be placed around the outside perimeter of the emergency exit opening, not the emergency exit itself. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed on the body directly above each emergency window.

Emergency Equipment

All emergency equipment shall be installed forward of the front barriers with the exception of the warning devices.

1. Fire Extinguishers:

- A. The bus shall be equipped with at least one pressurized, dry chemical fire extinguisher complete with hose to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., approval. A pressure gauge shall be mounted on the extinguisher and easily read without moving the extinguisher from its mounted position.

The bracket shall be a heavy-duty, snap-in, spring type. Band type holders are not acceptable. Fire extinguisher brackets shall be Brooks Equipment Company # 4SC or Ridgeway Bus Products # 51-05 or prior approved equal.

- B. The fire extinguisher shall have a capacity of **five pounds** with an Underwriters Laboratories total rating of 2A10BC or greater. The operating mechanism shall be sealed with a type of seal that will not interfere with the use of the fire extinguisher.
- C. Fire extinguishers must comply with State Fire Codes.

2. First-Aid Kit:

- A. Bus shall have a removable, moisture-proof and dust-proof first-aid kit stored in a metal container and mounted with a separate bracket in an accessible place in driver's compartment. This place shall be marked to indicate its location. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable.

B. Contents shall include:

- 2 1" x 2 1/2 yards adhesive tape rolls
- 24 sterile gauze pads 3" x 3"
- 100 3/4" x 3" adhesive bandages
- 8 2" bandage compress
- 10 3" bandage compress
- 2 2" x 6" sterile gauze roller bandages
- 2 non-sterile triangular bandages approximately 40" x 36" x 54" with
- 2 safety pins
- 3 sterile gauze pads 36" x 36"
- 3 sterile eye pads
- 1 pair rounded-end scissors
- 1 pair latex gloves
- 1 mouth-to-mouth airway

3. Body Fluid Clean-up Kit:

- A. Each bus shall have a removable and moisture-proof body fluid clean-up kit stored in a metal container. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable. It shall be

properly mounted and identified as a body fluid clean-up kit. Must meet OSHA regulations.

4. Warning Devices:

- A. Each school bus shall contain at least three (3) reflectorized triangle road warning devices mounted in an accessible place in the driver's compartment or outside storage compartment. The mounting location in Type A vehicles is optional. These devices must meet requirements in FMVSS 125.

Fire Suppression (Optional)

When a fire suppression system is used, nozzles for suppression systems shall be located in the engine compartment, under the bus, in the electrical panel, or under the dash, but shall not be located in the passenger compartment. The system must include a light or buzzer to alert the driver that the system has been activated.

Floor and Floor Coverings

1. The floor in the underseat area, including the tops of the wheel housing, driver's compartment and toe board, shall be covered with a rubber floor covering or equivalent, having a minimum overall thickness of 1/8 inch and a calculated burn rate of 0.1 or less using the test measures, procedure and formulas in FMVSS 302 Flammability of Interior Materials.
2. The floor covering in the aisle shall be of aisle-type rubber or equivalent, wear resistant, and ribbed. The minimum overall thickness shall be 3/16 inch measured from tops of ribs.
3. The floor covering must be permanently bonded to the floor and must not crack when subjected to sudden changes in temperature. Bonding or adhesive material shall be waterproof and shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the floor-covering material. All seams must be sealed with waterproof sealer.
4. For Type C and D school buses, the manufacturer shall provide a screw-down plate to access fuel tank sending unit that is secured and insulated. The plate shall be mounted so that access is readily available to repair personnel and so that the floor covering is not disturbed during the repair process.
5. The floor shall be of metal or alloy at least equal in strength to 14-gauge prime commercial quality steel and so constructed that exhaust gases cannot enter the passenger compartment.
6. All closures between the bus body and the engine compartment shall be fitted with gas-tight gaskets and pedal openings shall be closed bellows type, gas-tight boots.
7. There shall be a plate, of adequate size, provided to allow for transmission access or service.

Handrail(s)

At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test. A right-hand side assist rail may be provided at the discretion of the local school system.

Heaters

1. The heating system shall be capable of maintaining the temperature throughout the bus of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit during average minimum January temperatures as established by the U. S. Department of Commerce, Weather Bureau, for the area in which the vehicle is to be operated. Shall be capable of defrosting the total windshield area and the service door glass within thirty minutes after initial start with engine at idle speed. The system shall exceed SAE standards J-381 and J-382 performance requirements. **Fuel-fired auxiliary heaters will not be allowed.**

Heater performance shall be measured by the following:

A temperature measurement shall be taken at three locations within the body. These locations to be over the center aisle, thirty-six inches above the floor. The first location is to be thirty-nine inches from the windshield; the second location midpoint of the passenger compartment and the third will be thirty-nine inches from the rear emergency door.

After soaking the bus at twenty degrees F. for fifteen (15) hours, the bus will be started and after thirty (30) minutes, the temperature at each measuring point shall be fifty-five (55) degrees F.

2. If only one heater is used, it shall be a fresh-air or combination fresh-air and recirculation type.
3. If more than one heater is used, additional heaters shall be a recirculating-air type.
4. All heaters installed by body manufacturers shall bear a name plate that shall indicate the heater rating in accordance with SBMI Standard No. 001, with said plate to be affixed by the heater manufacturer which shall constitute certification that the heater performance is as shown on the plate.
5. Heater hoses shall be adequately supported to guard against excessive wear due to vibration. The hoses shall not dangle or rub against the chassis or sharp edges and shall not interfere with or restrict the operation of any engine function.
Heater hoses shall conform to the Society of Automotive Engineers' Standard J20c.
Heater lines on the interior of the bus shall be shielded to prevent scalding of the driver or passengers.

6. Each hot water system installed by a body manufacturer shall include one shut-off valve in the pressure line and one shut-off valve in the return line with both valves at or near the engine in an accessible location.
7. There shall be a water flow-regulating valve, or an electronic valve actuator, installed in the pressure line for convenient operation by the driver while seated.
8. Accessible bleeder valves shall be installed in an appropriate place in the return lines of body company-installed heaters to remove air from the heater lines.
9. Access panels shall be provided to make heater motors, cores, and fans readily accessible for service. An outside access panel may be provided for the driver's heater.

Hinges

All exterior metal door hinges which do not have stainless steel, brass, or nonmetallic hinge pins or other designs that prevent corrosion shall be designed to allow lubrication to be channeled to the center 75% of each hinge loop without disassembly.

Identification

1. School bus bodies shall bear the words, **SCHOOL BUS**, in eight-inch black letters on National School Bus Yellow, on the front and back of the bus (lettering between flasher lights). (See page 51 for Multifunctional School Activity Bus identification requirements.) The name of the school system shall be on each side of the bus in at least 5-inch, black standard, unshaded letters. Lettering shall conform to "Series B" of Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs. Each bus shall be numbered on both sides, front left side and the rear, before being put into service. Bumper numbers may be white or yellow. An agreement between manufacturer and purchaser shall be reached at time order is placed as to who will put the numbers on the buses. Any other numbering shall be optional.
2. Only signs and lettering approved by state law or regulation, limited to the name of the owner or operator and any marking necessary for identification, shall appear on the bus.
3. School bus bodies shall display a high quality 6" x 9" warning sticker on permanent, adhesive, vinyl, bumper-sticker material. To increase visibility, this sticker shall be mounted just under the first or second rub rail at left side of the passenger entrance door. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

UNAUTHORIZED ENTRY ILLEGAL

Any person who attempts to enter a school bus without prior authorization of the driver or other appropriate school official and refuses to leave will be subject to prosecution that may result in fines of up to \$2,000 and up to one year in jail.

Alabama Code Sections 13A-10-2, 13A-7-4

4. Driver Alert Transpec Model 7500 or prior approved equal electronic signage warning traffic when the school bus stops to load or unload students and at railway grade crossings is required.
5. A high quality, 4" x 6", permanent, adhesive, vinyl, warning sticker prompting drivers that driver seat belt use is mandatory on all school buses shall be affixed in the driver compartment in a highly visible location. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

DRIVER SEAT BELT USE REQUIRED

Driver seat belt use is required at all times when driving this vehicle. Failure to do so could result in disciplinary action up to and including suspension or revocation of your Alabama School Bus Driver Certificate or termination.

Alabama Code Section 16-27-6.

Unauthorized Entry Decals and Driver Seat Belt Use Decals are provided by the Alabama State Department of Education.

Inside Height

The inside body height shall be 72 inches or more, measured metal to metal, at any point on the longitudinal center line from the front vertical bow to the rear vertical bow. The inside body height of Type A buses shall be 62 inches or more.

Insulation

1. Ceilings and walls shall be insulated with proper material to deaden sound and reduce vibration to a minimum. If thermal insulation is specified, it shall be fire-resistant and approved by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. If buses are equipped with air conditioning, walls and ceilings must be insulated to improve air conditioner efficiency.
2. If floor insulation is required, it shall be either 5-ply nominal 19/32 inches thick plywood, or a material of equal or greater strength and insulation R value, and it will equal or exceed properties of exterior-type softwood plywood, C-D Grade as specified in standard issued by U. S. Department of Commerce. When plywood is used, all exposed edges shall be sealed.

Interior

1. The interior of the bus shall be free of all unnecessary projections, which include luggage racks and attendant handrails, likely to cause injury. This standard requires inner lining on ceilings and walls. If the ceiling is constructed to contain lapped joints, the forward panel shall be lapped by the rear panel and exposed edges shall be beaded, hemmed, flanged, or otherwise treated to minimize sharp edges.
2. The driver's area forward of the foremost padded barriers will permit the mounting of required safety equipment and vehicle operation equipment.

3. Every school bus shall be constructed so that the noise level taken at the ear of the occupant nearest to the primary vehicle noise source shall not exceed 85 dbA when tested.
4. Any added equipment shall be flush mounted with the exception of the video system.

Lamps and Signals

1. Interior lamps shall be provided which adequately illuminate an aisle and step well. Step well lights shall be illuminated by a service door operated switch, to illuminate only when headlights and clearance lights are on and the service door is opened. An optional driver dome light with a separate switch may be installed at the discretion of the local school system.
2. Clearance lamps shall automatically illuminate when the headlights are in the "on" position.
3. L.E.D. lighting shall be used in all exterior body lamps and signals. Eight-way flashing lights and stop arm shall be strobe-type L.E.D. Manufacturers' front chassis lamps are exempt from this requirement.
4. Definition--School bus alternately flashing red and amber signal lamps are lamps mounted at the same horizontal level, intended to identify the vehicle as a school bus and to inform other users of the highway that such vehicle is preparing to stop, or is stopped, on the roadway to take on or to discharge schoolchildren.

A. Master switches will not be allowed on the eight-way, alternately flashing signal lamps.

B. Buses shall be equipped with two red lamps and two amber lamps at the rear of the vehicle and two red lamps and two amber lamps at the front of the vehicle. One amber lamp shall be located near each red signal lamp at the same level, but closer to the vertical centerline of the bus.

C. The signaling system, including red and amber signal lamps and a stop arm with alternating flashing lamps, shall be so designed and wired as to have the following characteristics:

(1) When the entrance door is closed, a manual push button may be depressed and the amber pilot light and amber warning lights will flash.

(2) When the entrance door is opened, the amber pilot and amber warning lights will go off, and the red pilot and red warning lights will flash; also, the stop arm will be extended and lights on the stop arm will flash.

(3) On closing the entrance door, all lights will go out and the stop arm retract automatically.

(4) If the entrance door is opened without depressing the manual push button, no lights will flash, nor will the stop arm be extended.

D. The area around the lenses of alternately flashing signal lamps shall have a readily visible black border for contrast purposes. Hoods/guards may be provided over front and rear amber warning lights and red warning lights.

5. Bus body shall be equipped with amber rear turn signal lamps at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area. These signal lamps must be connected to the chassis hazard-warning switch to cause simultaneous flashing of signal lamps when needed as a vehicular traffic hazard warning.
6. Rear directional lights shall be mounted not more than 15 inches from the plane of the side of the body, and not more than 14 inches below the glass in the rear of the body. All buses shall have side turn indicators on both sides located within six inches of the floor line.
7. Buses shall be equipped with two red, brake/tail combination lights at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area and shall be mounted on the rear of the bus just inside the turn signal lamps.
 - A. Type A conversion vehicle lamps must be 21 square inches in the lens area. Two combination lamps with a minimum diameter of four inches, or if a shape other than round, a minimum 12 square inches of illuminated area shall be placed on the rear of the body between the beltline and the floor line. The rear license plate lamp may be combined with one lower tail lamp. Stop lamps shall be activated by the service brakes and shall emit a steady light when illuminated.
 - B. In addition to these requirements, all lamps and signals shall comply with applicable SAE specifications.
8. On all buses equipped with a monitor for the front and rear lamps of the school bus, the monitor shall be mounted in full view of the driver. If the full circuit current passes through the monitor, each circuit shall be protected by a fuse or circuit breakers or other equivalent technology against any short circuit or intermittent shorts.
9. A white flashing strobe light shall be installed on the roof of a school bus not to exceed 1/3 the body length forward from the rear of the roof edge. This light shall have a single white lens emitting light 360 degrees around its vertical axis and may not extend above the roof more than the maximum legal height. A manual switch and a pilot light of low intensity must be included to indicate when the light is in operation. The pilot light shall be incorporated into the switch.

10. If alternating headlights are used (i.e., wig-wag), they must operate in conjunction with the red overhead flashers and stop arm.
11. As an option, other lighting devices may be used with prior approval from SDE.

Metal Treatment

1. All metal used in construction of a bus body shall be zinc-coated or aluminum-coated or treated by an equivalent process before the bus is constructed. Included are such items as structural members, inside and outside panels, door panels and floor sills. Excluded are such items as door handles, grab handles, interior decorative parts and other interior plated parts.
2. In addition to the above requirements, all metal parts that will be painted shall be chemically cleaned, etched, zinc-phosphate-coat and zinc-chrome or epoxy primed or conditioned by equivalent process.
3. In providing for these requirements, particular attention shall be given to lapped surfaces, welded connections of structural members, cut edges punched or drilled hole areas in sheet metal, closed or box sections, unvented or undrained areas and surfaces subjected to abrasion during vehicle operation.
4. As evidence that the above requirements have been met, samples of materials and sections used in construction of the bus body, when subjected to 1,000-hour salt spray test as provided for in latest revision of ASTM Standard B-117 "Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing" shall not lose more than 10 percent of its material by weight.

Mirrors

1. Interior mirrors shall be either clear laminated glass or clear view glass bonded to a backing, which retains the glass in the event of breakage. Mirrors shall have rounded corners and protected edges. Type A buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 16" mirror and Type C, and D buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 30" mirror. It shall be securely attached on the windshield header and so located as to give the driver a clear view of the entire interior of the bus and the road behind.
2. Each school bus shall be equipped with a system of exterior mirrors as defined in FMVSS 111.
 - A. Rear vision mirrors shall be capable of providing a view along the left and right sides of the vehicle which will provide the driver with a view of the rear tires at ground level, a minimum distance of 200 feet to the rear of the bus and at least 12 feet perpendicular to the side of the bus at a distance of 32 feet back from the front bumper.
 - B. The cross view mirror system shall provide the driver with indirect vision of an area at ground level from the front bumper forward and the entire width of the bus to a point where the driver can see by direct vision. The cross view system shall also provide the driver with direct vision of the area at ground level around the left and right front corners of the bus to include the tires and service entrance on all types of buses to a point where it overlaps with the rear vision mirror system. A metal

reinforcement plate shall be installed under the hood area of fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite hoods in order to reinforce cross view mirror mounting base area.

- C. This system of mirrors shall be easily adjustable but be rigidly braced to reduce vibration.
3. Heated and/or remote controlled external, rearview mirrors may be used.

Mounting

1. The chassis frames shall support the rear body cross member. The bus body shall be attached to the chassis frame at each main floor sill, except where chassis components interfere, in such a manner as to prevent shifting or separation of the body from the chassis under severe operating conditions.
2. Insulation material shall be placed at all contact points between the body and chassis frame on Types A, C and D buses, and shall be so attached to the chassis frame or body that it will not move under severe operating conditions.

Noise Suppression Switch

There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. This switch or switch background shall be red or yellow and labeled. This switch shall be an on/off-type (not momentary) that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. For Type A buses, all radios or communication devices shall be ordered as a body accessory and must be wired thru the noise suppression switch.

Overall Length

The overall length of the bus shall not exceed 45 feet excluding accessories.

Overall Width

The overall width of the bus shall not exceed 102 inches excluding accessories.

Public Address System

Buses may be equipped with a public address system having interior and exterior speakers. Interior speakers shall be flush mounted with bulkhead. No internal speakers other than the driver's communication systems may be installed within four feet of the driver's seat back in its rearmost, upright position.

Retroreflective Material

1. The front and/or rear bumper may be marked diagonally 45 degrees down to the centerline of the pavement with 2" x 1/4" wide strips of non-contrasting retroreflective material.
2. The rear of the bus body shall be marked with strips of retroreflective National School Bus Yellow (NSBY) material to outline the perimeter of the back of the bus using material which conforms with the requirements of FMVSS 571.131 (Table I). The perimeter marking of rear emergency exits per FMVSS 217 and/or the use of retroreflective SCHOOL BUS signs partially accomplish the objective of this

requirement. To complete the perimeter marking of the back of the bus, strips of at least one-inch retroreflective NSBY material shall be applied horizontally above the rear windows and above the rear bumper, extending from the rear emergency exit perimeter marking outward to the left and rear corners of the bus. Vertical strips shall be applied at the corners connecting these horizontal strips.

3. **SCHOOL BUS** signs, if not of a lighted design, shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material comprising a background for lettering of the front and/or rear **SCHOOL BUS** signs.
4. The sides of the bus body shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material at least one inch in width, extending the length of the bus body and located (vertically) between the floor line and the belt line.

Rub Rails

1. There shall be one rub rail located on each side of the bus approximately at seat level which shall extend from the rear side of the entrance door completely around the bus body (except emergency door or any maintenance access door) to a point of curvature near the outside cowl on the left side.
2. There shall be one additional rub rail located approximately at the floor line which shall cover the same longitudinal area as the upper rub rail, except at the wheel housing, and shall extend only to radii of the right and left rear corners.
3. Rub rails above the floor line shall be attached at each body post and all other upright structural members.
4. Each rub rail shall be 4 inches or more in width in their finished form, shall be of 16-gauge metal or other suitable material of equivalent strength, suitable to protect body side panels from damage. Rub rails shall be constructed in a corrugated or ribbed fashion.
5. Rub rails shall be applied to the outside of the body or outside body posts. Pressed-in or snap-on rub rails do not satisfy this requirement. For Type A1 vehicles using a chassis manufacturer's body, or for Types A2, C, and D buses using rear luggage or rear engine compartments, rub rails need not extend around rear corners.
6. The bottom edge of the body side skirts shall be stiffened by application of a rub rail, or the edge may be stiffened by providing a flange or other stiffeners.

Seat Belt for Driver

1. The driver's seat shall be equipped with the seat belt anchored to the floor, housed in scabbard and equipped with an emergency locking retractor (one side only). The driver's seat shall be equipped with a Type II occupant protection (lap and shoulder belt). Adjustability of the mounting point for the driver's seat belt pillar loop shall be provided to accommodate all heights and weights of bus drivers without interference with the

driver's face or neck. The requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210 shall be met. Integrated seat belts in the driver's seat may be used at the discretion of the local school system.

2. Buses equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts for student seating shall contain at least two belt cutters. One belt cutter must be properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into the driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
3. **The driver's seat belt shall be high visibility orange or lime green in color on all buses except Type A. All Type C and D buses must be equipped with a continuous audible and visual warning signal activated when the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the ignition is in the on position. The warning signal shall be different from low air or emergency exit buzzer. Type A buses must be equipped with warning buzzers as per manufacturer's standard.**

Seats and Crash Barriers

All Type A1 buses, 14,500 pounds GVWR and under shall be equipped with lap/shoulder belts and must meet FMVSS 209 requirements.

1. Seats shall be spaced to obtain a minimum of 24-inch hip-to-knee room measured horizontally at the seat cushion level at the transverse centerline of the seat. In making this measurement from the back of the seat cushion to the back of the seat or barrier in front, upholstery may be placed against padding both forward and rear but padding may not be compressed. Greater seat spacing may be specified on local bids not to exceed the maximum allowable per FMVSS 222.
2. In determining seating capacity of standard school buses, the allowable average rump width shall be 13 inches where a 3-3 seating plan is used, and thirteen (13) or 15 inches where 3-2 seating plan is used on specially-equipped buses.
3. All seats shall be bench style, forward facing, have a minimum depth of 15 inches *and conform to the seatback height requirements of FMVSS 222*. No transit or activity seat will be used. There shall be no armrest on student seats. No bus shall be equipped with jump seats or portable seats.
4. All seat frames attached to the seat rail shall be fastened with two (2) bolts, washers and nuts or flange-headed nuts. Each seat leg shall be secured to the floor by a minimum of two (2) bolts, washers and nuts. Flange-head nuts may be used in lieu of nuts and washers, or seats may be track-mounted in conformance with FMVSS 222. If track seating is installed, the manufacturer shall supply minimum and maximum seat spacing dimensions applicable to the bus, which comply with FMVSS 222. This information shall be on a label permanently affixed to the bus.

5. The forward most pupil seat on the right side of the bus shall be located so as not to interfere with the driver's vision, not farther forward than the barrier behind the driver or the rear of the driver's seat when adjusted to its rear-most position.
6. All seats and backs shall be a standard color unless changed by purchaser. Seat and back cushions of all seats shall be designed to safely support the designated number of passengers under normal road conditions encountered in school-bus service. All seat coverings shall meet FMVSS regulations and School Bus Manufacturer Technical Council Guidelines.
7. The driver seat shall be of the high back, air **or** mechanical suspension, box pedestal-type with a minimum seat back adjustment of 15 degrees and with a head restraint to accommodate a 95 percentile adult male (95 percentile adult male as defined in FMVSS 208). The driver's seat shall be secured with nuts, bolts, and washers or flanged-headed nuts. The driver's seat shall have a minimum distance between the steering wheel and seatback of not less than eleven inches, with a minimum aft adjustment of six inches. The seat shall be contoured with adequate padding and support on the sides and shall have a cloth cover. It shall be designed to provide lumbar support and shall be positioned on the centerline of the steering wheel.
8. All restraining barriers and passenger seats shall be constructed with materials that, at a minimum, meet the criteria contained in the School Bus Seat Upholstery Fire Resistant Test.
9. A driver storage pouch shall be provided on the front of the barrier behind driver's seat. This pouch shall be fire resistant and the same color as the bus seats.
10. Crash barriers shall be placed behind the driver's seat and step well. An aluminized courtesy panel on the right side of the bus shall extend to the floor and to the wall. Stanchions are not acceptable.
11. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-age Children in School Buses."

Steering Wheel

See Chassis Standard.

Steps

1. The first step at the service door shall be no less than 10 inches and no more than 14 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step. Ground clearance shall be no less than 10 inches.
 - A. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step.

2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by the thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

Step Treads

1. All steps, excluding the floor line platform area, shall be covered with a 3/16-inch pebble-tread-type, rubber floor covering or other materials equal in wear and abrasion resistance to top grade rubber.
2. The backing of the step tread may be a minimum 24-gauge cold roll steel or polymer and shall be permanently bonded to the rubber surface.
3. The step tread shall have a 1 and 1/2 inch white nosing as an integral piece without any joint.
4. The rubber portion of step treads shall have the following characteristics:
 - A. Special compounding for good abrasion resistance and high coefficient of friction.
 - B. Flexibility so that it can be bent around a 1/2 inch mandrel both at 130 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 degrees Fahrenheit without breaking, cracking, or crazing.
 - C. Show a durometer hardness of 85 to 95.

Stirrup Step

There shall be one stirrup step on all Types C, and D buses on each side of the front of the body for use in cleaning the windshield and lamps. There shall be one handle on each side, at least eight inches in length suitably located for the driver to use while cleaning the windshield and lamps. The stirrup steps and the handles shall be of rust-resistant material. Transit buses shall have provisions for cleaning the windshield. Toe eyes in the bumper with a handle(s), above the windshield, are acceptable.

Stop Arm Signal

All stop arm signals shall be of the strobe-type and have high-intensity, retroreflective coating. The stop signal - arm(s) shall comply with the requirements of FMVSS 131.

Stop Arm Signal - Rear (Optional)

A rear stop arm is permissible when used in conjunction with the original stop arm. The rear stop arm location on dual stop arm-equipped buses shall be on the left side of the bus, as close as is practical to the left rear corner of the body. Airlines, if used, must not be readily accessible to students inside or outside of the bus.

Storage Compartment

A lockable, waterproof, exterior storage compartment *may* be located on the bus body at the discretion of the local school system. The minimum size of the storage compartment shall be 12 inches high, 15 inches deep, and 25 inches wide and shall be marked "storage". Alternate storage compartment locations should be specified in local school system bid specifications.

All lockable interior storage compartments containing emergency equipment shall be equipped with a warning buzzer installed so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked. All such compartments shall be clearly labeled as to containing emergency equipment.

Sun Shield

Each Type C and D school bus shall have an interior adjustable sun visor with minimum measurements of 6 inches by 30 inches. It shall be installed in a position convenient for use by the driver, anchored on both ends, and shall be tinted transparent plastic or phlex-o-glass. On all Type A buses, the sun shield shall be the manufacturer's standard. An additional sun shield may be added over the left side driver window at option of the local school system.

Tailpipe

See Chassis Standard.

Traction-Assisting Devices

1. Where required or used, sanders shall:
 - A. Be of the hopper cartridge-valve type.
 - B. Have a metal hopper with all interior surfaces treated to prevent condensation of moisture.
 - C. Be of at least 100-pound (grit) capacity.
 - D. Have a cover on the filler opening of the hopper, which screws into place, sealing the unit airtight.
 - E. Have discharge tubes extending to the front of each rear wheel under the fender.
 - F. Have no-clogging discharge tubes with slush-proof, non-freezing rubber nozzles.
 - G. Be operated by an electric switch with a telltale pilot light mounted on the instrument panel.
 - H. Be exclusively driver controlled.
 - I. Have a gauge to indicate the hopper needs refilling when it is down to one quarter full.
2. Automatic traction chains may be installed.

Trash Container and Holding Device

1. Where required or used, the trash container shall:
 - A. Be of fire resistant polyethylene or equivalent material.
 - B. Be no greater than 14-quart capacity.
 - C. Be secured by a holding device that is designed to prevent movement and allow easy removal and replacement.
 - D. Be installed in an accessible location in the driver's compartment, not obstructing passenger use of the service door or access to emergency equipment.

Undercoating

1. The entire underside of the bus body, including floor sections, the cross member and below floor line side panels, shall be coated with rust-proofing the compound for which compound manufacturer has issued notarized certification of compliance to the bus body builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C-250b using modified test procedures for the following requirements*:
 - A. Salt spray resistance-pass modified to 5% salt and 1000 hours.
 - B. Abrasion resistance-pass.
 - C. Fire resistance-pass.

*Test panels are to be prepared in accordance with paragraph 4.6.12 of TT-C-520b with the modified procedure requiring that the test be made on a 48-hour air-cured film at a thickness recommended by the compound manufacturer.

2. The undercoating compound shall be applied with suitable airless or conventional spray equipment to recommend film thickness and shall show no evidence of voids in cured film.

Ventilation

1. Auxiliary fans if installed shall meet the following requirements:
 - A. Fans for left and right sides shall be placed in a location where they can be adjusted for maximum effectiveness and do not obstruct vision to any mirror. **NOTE:** All Type A buses may be equipped with one fan.
 - B. Fans shall be a nominal 6" diameter.
 - C. Fan blades shall be covered with a protective cage. Each fan shall be controlled by a separate switch.
2. The body shall be equipped with a suitably controlled ventilating system of sufficient capacity to maintain the proper quantity of air under operating conditions, without having to open windows except in extremely warm weather.
3. A static-type, non-closeable exhaust ventilator shall be installed in the roof.

Video Surveillance Equipment

1. Video equipment may be installed at the discretion of the local school system. If installed, video equipment shall be digital with a minimum of two camera positions. One camera position must show driver compartment.
2. While video equipment does not have to be flush mounted, positioning of video surveillance equipment shall not interfere with the safe operation of the bus or student safety. It is recommended that the SDE be contacted prior to the installation of new video equipment.

Wheel Housing

1. The wheel-housing opening shall allow for easy tire removal and service.
2. The wheel housing shall be attached to the floor sheets in such a manner as to prevent any dust, water or fumes from entering the body. The wheel housing shall be constructed of at least 16-gauge steel or other material of equal tensile strength.
3. The inside height of the wheel housing above the floor line shall not exceed 12 inches.
4. The wheel housing shall provide clearance for installation and use of tire chains on single and dual (if so equipped) power-driving wheels.
5. No part of a raised wheel housing shall extend into the emergency door opening.

Windshield and Windows

1. All glass in the windshield, the windows, and doors shall be of approved safety glass so mounted that a permanent mark is visible and of sufficient quality as to prevent distortion of view in any direction.
2. Glass in the windshield shall be heat absorbent, laminated plate. The windshield shall be large enough to permit the driver to see the roadway clearly, shall be slanted to reduce glare, and shall be installed between the front corner posts that are so designed and placed as to afford minimum obstruction to the driver's view of the roadway.
3. All full side windows shall open vertically so as to provide an unobstructed opening of not less than 9 inches high and 22 inches wide, obtained by lowering the window. Windows shall be a split-sash type and so installed as to provide an emergency exit. There shall be no horizontal, transit or activity-style windows in the student compartment.
4. All exposed edges of glass shall meet FMVSS requirements.
5. A tinted and shaded windshield with 73% light transmitted and a six-inch shaded band across the top shall be installed at the factory. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturers one-piece windshield may be equipped with an O.E.M. shade band windshield with a band of approximately 4 inches in height.

6. All windows in the passenger compartment shall be tinted with 28% light transmitted. The driver's compartment side window and entrance door windows shall be tinted with 70- 75% light transmitted.

Windshield Washers

A windshield washer system shall be provided that will service the entire wiped surface area.

Windshield Wipers

1. A windshield wiping system, two speed or variable speed, with an intermittent feature shall be provided. The wipers shall meet the requirements of FMVSS 104.
2. The wipers shall be operated by one or more air or electric motors of sufficient power to operate the wipers. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-piece windshield may be equipped with two wipers driven by either one or two electric motors.

Wiring

1. All wiring shall conform to current standards of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
2. Circuits
 - A. Wiring shall be arranged in circuits as required with each circuit protected by a circuit breaker or electronic protection device. A system of color and number coding shall be used and an appropriate identifying diagram shall be provided to the end user along with the wiring diagram provided by the chassis manufacturer. **A system of color and number coding shall be used on buses. The following body interconnecting circuits shall be color-coded as noted:**

<u>Function</u>	<u>Color</u>
Left Rear Directional Light	Yellow
Right Rear Directional Light	Dark Green
Stoplights	Red
Back-up Lights	Blue
Taillights	Brown
Ground	White
Ignition Feed, Primary Feed	Black

The color of cables shall correspond to SAE J1128.

- B. Wiring shall be arranged in at least six regular circuits as follows:
 - (1) Head, tail, stop (brake) and instrument panel lamps.
 - (2) Clearance and step well lamps. The step well lamp shall be actuated when the service door is opened.

- (3) Dome lamp.
 - (4) Ignition and emergency exits signal.
 - (5) Turn signal lamps.
 - (6) Alternately flashing signal lamps.
- C. Any of the above combination circuits may be subdivided into additional independent circuits.
 - D. Each heater and defroster shall have its own circuit breakers or other equivalent technology.
 - E. Whenever possible, all other electrical functions (such as sanders and electric-type windshield wipers) shall be provided with independent and properly protected circuits.
 - F. Each body circuit shall be coded by number or letter on a diagram of circuits and shall be attached to the body in readily accessible location.
 - G. There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. The switch shall be labeled and alternately colored. This switch shall be an on/off-type that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. Noise suppression switch on Type AI buses shall be limited to bus body accessories.
- 3. The entire electrical system of the body shall be designed for the same voltage as the chassis on which the body is mounted.
 - 4. All wiring shall have an amperage capacity equal to or exceeding the designed load. All wiring splices are to be done at an accessible location and noted as splices on the wiring diagram.
 - 5. A body-wiring diagram of easily readable size shall be furnished with each bus body or affixed in an area convenient to the electrical accessory control panel.
 - 6. The body power wire shall be attached to a special terminal on the chassis.
 - 7. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet.
 - 8. Wires and tubing shall be enclosed within body panels.

SECTION IV – (SPECIAL NEEDS) SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction

Equipping buses to accommodate students with special needs is discretionary depending upon the needs of the passengers. While one bus may be fitted with a lift, another may have seat belts installed to secure child seats. Buses so equipped are not to be considered a separate class of school bus, but simply a regular school bus, which is equipped for special accommodations.

The specifications in this section are intended to be supplementary to specifications in the chassis and body sections. In general, specially equipped buses shall meet all the requirements of the preceding sections plus those listed in this section. It is recognized by the entire industry that the field of special transportation is characterized by varied needs for individual cases and by a rapidly emerging technology for meeting those needs. A flexible, “common sense”, approach to the adoption and enforcement of specifications for these vehicle, therefore, is prudent.

By federal regulation, buses, including school buses, are defined as vehicles designed to carry eleven or more (passengers including the driver). Vehicles designed with 10 or fewer passenger positions (including the driver) cannot be certified as buses. For this reason, the federal vehicle classification Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle, or MPV, must be used by manufacturers for these vehicles in lieu of the School Bus. In determining passenger capacity, wheelchair positions are counted as passenger positions. This classification system, while requiring compliance with a less stringent set of Federal Standards for MPV’s does not preclude state or local agencies or these specifications from requiring compliance of school bus-type MPV’s with the more stringent Federal Standards for school buses.

The following standards address modifications as they pertain to school buses that, with a standard seating arrangement prior to modification, would accommodate more than 10 persons. If by addition of a power lift, mobile seating device positions or other modifications, the capacity is reduced such that vehicles become MPV’s, the intent of these standards is to have these vehicles be required to meet the same standards they would have had to meet prior to such modifications, and such MPV’s are included in all references to school buses and requirements for school buses which follow:

Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus

A specially equipped school bus is any school bus that is primarily designed, equipped, or modified to accommodate students with special needs.

General Requirements

1. School buses designed for transporting students with special transportation needs shall comply with these specifications and with FMVSS applicable to their GVWR category.
2. Any school bus to be used for the transportation of children who are confined to a wheelchair or other mobile positioning device, or who require life support equipment which prohibits use of the regular service entrance, shall be equipped with a power lift, unless a ramp is needed for unusual circumstances related to passenger needs.

3. School buses used to transport children confined to wheelchairs or other mobile positioning devices shall meet either item A or B below.

A. Type C and D buses with wheelchair positions mounted forward of the rear axle shall have a 30-inch aisle to both front entrance and rear emergency exit door.

B. Type C and D buses equipped with a rear-mounted wheelchair lift, and wheelchair seating positions in the rear shall have air-ride suspension on the rear. School buses using this configuration must employ 3-2 (39"-30") seating to allow access to the front door exit in case of emergency.

Type A school buses 14,500 lbs GVWR and below are exempt from these requirements.

Air Conditioning

Special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. **Refer to page 14, School Bus Body Standards, for minimum air conditioning standards.**

Aisles

All buses equipped with a power lift shall provide sufficient aisle space to enable emergency evacuation through front and rear exits. For specific requirements refer to 3A and 3B in the General Requirements above.

Communication System

Each special needs bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Crash Barriers

1. Crash barrier shall be placed between the lift and any seat position (bench seat or wheelchair position). Stanchions are not acceptable.
2. There shall be a padded crash barrier approximately 8 inches in front of the forward edge of the seat cushion of all passenger seats that do not have another seat approximately 27 inches in front of them. There shall be a padded crash barrier or seat in front of any wheelchair position unless it is contiguous with and behind another wheelchair position. The forward-most barrier on both sides of the bus shall have a full-width, aluminized courtesy panel extending to the floor.

Evacuation Blanket

A minimum of two fire-retardant, evacuation blankets, Tie Tech Evacuation Transporter Part # 1013, or prior approved equal, and storage pouch shall be provided. **The location to secure the evacuation blanket shall be easily accessible and determined by the purchaser at the time of the bid.**

Glazing

Tinted glazing may be installed in all doors, windows and windshield consistent with federal, state, and local regulations.

Identification

Buses with power lifts used for transporting physically handicapped students shall display three universal handicapped symbols located below the windowpane. Such emblems shall be white on blue background, shall not exceed 12 inches in size, and shall be of a high-intensity retroreflectorized material meeting U. S. Department of Transportation FHWA FP-85 Standards. Symbols shall be located on the lift door, the rear of the bus, and the front left side of the bus.

Passenger Capacity Rating

In determining the passenger capacity of a school bus for purposes other than actual passenger load (i.e., vehicle classification, or various billing/reimbursement models), any location in a school bus intended for securing an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid during vehicle operations may be regarded as four designated seating positions. Similarly, each lift area may be regarded as four designated seating positions.

Power Lift

1. The option shall be provided to the local purchaser to have the lift located either in front of or behind the rear wheels, on the right side of the bus, but confined within the bus body when not extended.
2. All lifts shall be fully automatic with sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility user to reach a securement location.
3. The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least 6 (six), based on the ultimate strength of the material. Non-working parts, such as the platform, frame, and attachment hardware, which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least 3 (three), based on the ultimate strength of the material.
4. The lifting mechanism and platform shall be able to lift a minimum of 800 pounds.
5. Controls shall be provided that enable the operator to activate the lift mechanism from either inside or outside the bus. The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, transmission, or door, as required by FMVSS 403 and 404. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.

6. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied. No manual emergency operation shall require more than 2 (two) minutes to lower an occupied wheelchair to ground level.
7. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches per second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.
8. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the platform during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the platform is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform, which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position, shall have a barrier a minimum 1 and 1/2 inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier), which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically raise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the platform is more than 3 inches above the roadway or sidewalk and the platform is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged, or disengaged by the lift operator, provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.
9. The platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over 1/4 inch high and shall be slip resistant. The platform shall have a minimum clear width of 28 and 1/2 inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the platform surface to 30 inches above the surface of the platform, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface of the platform.
10. Any openings between the platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed 5/8 inches in width. When the platform is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and the vehicle floor shall not exceed 1/2 inches horizontally and 5/8 inches vertically.
11. The outboard entrance ramp or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp and the transition plate from the inboard edge of the platform to the vehicle floor shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of three inches, and the transition

from roadway or sidewalk to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to 1/4 inches.

Thresholds between 1/4 inch and 1/2 inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.

12. The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than three degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll or pitch) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 60 pounds applied through a 26" by 26" test pallet at the centroid of the platform.
13. No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches per second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches per second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3 g.
14. The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchair and mobility aid users.
15. Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces, or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The platform may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.
16. Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1 and 1/4 inches and 1 and 1/2 inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than 1/8 inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1 and 1/2" knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle. Any wheelchair frame utilizing a horizontal overhead support shall have padding at least 1" in thickness extending the full width of support.
17. A re-settable circuit breakers or other equivalent technology shall be installed between the power source and the lift motor if electrical power is used. It shall be located as close to the power source as possible, but not within the passenger/driver compartment.
18. Lift design shall prevent excessive pressure that could damage the lift system when the platform is fully lowered or raised, or that could jack the vehicle.

19. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a lift:
 - A. A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - B. Detailed instructions regarding use of the lift and readily visible when the lift door is open, including a diagram showing the proper placement and positioning of wheelchair/mobility aids on lift.
20. The lift manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the lift. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
21. Each lift shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses. In addition, the lift manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request of the original titled purchaser, shall provide a Notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the lift system meets all the applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses.

Ramp

Emergency ramps may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Regular Service Entrance

1. Steps
 - A. The first step at the service door shall be not less than 10 inches and not more than 14 inches from the ground when measured from the top of the step based on standard chassis specifications.
 - B. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.
5. At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test.
6. An assist rail shall be provided on the right-hand side.

Restraining Devices

1. On power-lift equipped vehicles, seat frames may be equipped with attachments or devices to which belts, restraining harnesses or other devices may be attached. Attachment framework or anchorage devices, if installed, shall conform to FMVSS 210.
2. Seat belt assemblies are optional. Seat belt assemblies may be installed on special needs buses. If seat belt assemblies are installed on special needs buses, they shall be of the lap/shoulder belt configuration. Seat belt assemblies shall be installed by the manufacturer, and must conform to FMVSS 209.
3. Child restraint systems, which are used to facilitate the transportation of children who in other modes of transportation would be required to use a child, infant, or booster seat, shall conform to FMVSS 213 and 222.
4. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "**Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-Age Children in School Buses.**"

Seating Arrangements

Flexibility in seat spacing to accommodate special circumstances shall be permitted to meet passenger requirements. All seating shall be forward facing. **Floor plans for special needs buses shall be designed with emphasis on placing wheelchair positions forward of the rear axle.**

Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant

For purposes of better understanding the various aspects and components of this section, the term securement or phrase securement system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s), which secure the wheelchair/mobility aid. The term restraint or phrase restraint system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s) used to restrain the occupant of the wheelchair/mobility aid. The phrase securement and restraint system is used to refer to the total system, which secures and restrains both the wheelchair/mobility aid and the occupant.

1. Securement and restraint system--general
 - A. The Wheelchair/Mobility Aid Securement and Occupant Restraint System shall be designed, installed, and operated to accommodate passengers in a forward-facing orientation within the bus and shall comply with all applicable requirements of FMVSS 222. Gurney-type devices shall be secured parallel to the side of each bus.
 - B. The securement and restraint system, including the system track, floor plates, pockets, or other anchorages shall be provided by the same manufacturer, or be certified to be compatible by manufacturers of all equipment/systems used.
 - C. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device and an occupant restraint share a common anchorage, including occupant restraint designs that attach the occupant

restraint to the securement device or the wheelchair/mobility aid, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the loads of both the securement device and occupant restraint applied simultaneously, in accordance with FMVSS 222 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).

- D. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) is shared with an occupant restraint, the wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a force twice the amount as specified in Section 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- E. The bus body floor and sidewall structures where the securement and restraint system anchorages are attached shall have equal or greater strength than the load requirements of the system(s) being installed.
- F. The occupant restraint system shall be designed to be attached to the bus body either directly or in combination with the wheelchair/mobility aid securement system, by a method, which prohibits the transfer of weight or force from the wheelchair/mobility aid to the occupant in the event of an impact.
- G. When an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the securement and restraint system shall limit the movement of the occupied wheelchair/mobility aid to no more than 2 inches in any direction under normal driving conditions.
- H. The securement and restraint system shall incorporate an identification scheme, which will allow for the easy identification of the various components and their functions. It shall consist of one of the following, or combination thereof:
 - (1) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement (webbing or strap assemblies) and the occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be of contrasting color or color shade.
 - (2) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assemblies) and occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be clearly marked to indicate the proper wheelchair orientation in the vehicle, and the name and location for each device or belt assembly; i.e., front, rear, lap belt, shoulder belt.
- I. All attachment or coupling devices designed to be connected or disconnected frequently shall be accessible and operable without the use of tools or other mechanical assistance.
- J. The securement and restraint system hardware and components shall be free of sharp or jagged areas and shall be of a non-corrosive material or treated to resist corrosion in accordance with Section 4.3(a) of FMVSS 209.

- K. The securement and restraint system shall be located and installed such that when an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured, it does not block access to the lift door or emergency door.
 - L. A device for storage of the securement and restraint system may be provided. When the system is not in use, the storage device shall allow for clean storage of the system, shall keep the system securely contained within the passenger compartment, shall provide reasonable protection from vandalism, and shall enable the system to be readily accessed for use.
 - M. The entire securement and restraint system, including the storage device, shall meet the flammability standards established in FMVSS 302.
 - N. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) and restraint belt assembly shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable FMVSS requirements. In addition, the system manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request by the original titled purchaser, shall provide a notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system meets all of the requirements as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - O. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a securement and restraint system:
 - (1) A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - (2) Detailed instructions regarding use, including a diagram showing the proper placement of the wheelchair/mobility aids and positioning of securement devices and occupant restraints, including correct belt angles.
 - P. The system manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
2. Wheelchair/mobility aid securement system
- A. Each securement system location shall consist of a minimum of four anchorage points. A minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in front of the wheelchair/mobility aid and a minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in the rear. The securement anchorages shall be attached to the floor of the vehicle and shall not interfere with passenger movement or present any hazardous condition.
 - B. Each securement system location shall have a minimum clear floor area of

30" x 48". Additional floor area may be required for some applications. Consultation between the user and the manufacturer is recommended to ensure adequate area is provided.

- C. The securement system shall secure common wheelchair/mobility aids and shall be able to be attached easily by a person having average dexterity and who is familiar with the system and wheelchair/mobility aid.
 - D. As installed, each securement anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222. When more than one securement device share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the force indicated above, multiplied by the number of securement devices sharing that anchorage.
 - E. Each securement device, if incorporating webbing or a strap assembly, shall comply with the requirements for Type 1 safety belt systems, in accordance with Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - F. The securement system shall secure the wheelchair/mobility aid in such a manner that the attachments or coupling hardware will not become detached when any wheelchair/mobility aid component deforms, when one or more tires deflate, and without intentional operation of a release mechanism (e.g., a spring clip on a securement hook).
 - G. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 2,500 pounds when tested in accordance with FMVSS 209.
 - H. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall provide a means of adjustment of manufacturer's design, to remove slack from the device or assembly.
 - I. Each securement device, webbing, or strap assembly shall be of the automatic, retractable type.
3. Occupant restraint system
- A. A Type II-A occupant restraint system, which meets all applicable requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210, shall provide for restraint of the occupant.
 - B. The occupant restraint system shall be made of materials, which do not stain, soil, or tear an occupant's clothing, and which are resistant to water damage and fraying.
 - C. Each restraint system location shall have not less than one anchorage, of manufacturer's design, for the upper end of the upper torso restraint.

- (1) The anchorage for each occupant's upper torso restraint shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 1,500 pounds (6,672 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
- D. Each wheelchair/mobility aid location shall have not less than two floor anchorages for the occupant pelvic and the connected upper torso restraint.
- (1) Each floor anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - (2) When more than one occupant restraint share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) multiplied by the number of occupant restraints sharing the common anchorage in accordance with FMVSS 222.
- E. Each floor and wall anchorage which secures the occupant restraint to the vehicle and which is not permanently attached, shall be of a "positive latch" design, and shall not allow for any accidental disconnection.

Special Light

Doorways, in which lifts are installed, shall have, lighting as required by FMVSS 403 and 404.

Special Service Entrance

1. Power lift equipped bodies shall have a special service entrance to accommodate the power lift. Door materials, panels and structural strength shall be equivalent to the conventional service and emergency doors. Color, rub rail extensions, lettering and other exterior features shall match adjacent sections of the body.
2. The special service entrance and door shall be located on the right side of the bus and shall be designed so as not to obstruct the regular service entrance. All doors shall have positive fastening devices to hold doors in the open position.
3. Each door shall have windows, set in a waterproof manner, which are visually similar in size and location to adjacent non-door windows. Glazing shall be of same type and tinting (if applicable) as standard fixed glass in other body location.
4. A drip molding shall be installed above the opening to effectively divert water from entrance.
5. Door posts and headers from entrance shall be reinforced sufficiently to provide support and strength equivalent to the areas of the side of the bus not used for special service entrance.

6. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with a device that will actuate a visible signal located in the driver's compartment when the door is open and ignition is in "on" position.
7. A switch shall be installed so that the lifting mechanism will not operate when the lift platform door is closed.
8. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of the door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

Support Equipment and Accessories

1. Each bus shall contain at least two belt cutters properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into his/her driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
2. Special equipment or supplies which are used on the bus for mobility assistance, health support, or safety purposes shall meet any local, federal, or engineering standards which may apply, including proper identification.

Equipment which may be used for these purposes includes, but is not limited to:

- A. Wheelchairs and other mobile seating devices (see section on Securement System for Mobile Seating Devices/Occupant).
 - B. Crutches, walkers, canes, and other ambulating devices.
 - C. Medical support equipment. This may include respiratory devices such as oxygen bottles (which should be no larger than 22 cubic feet for liquid oxygen and 38 cubic feet for compressed gas), or ventilators. Tanks and valves should be located and positioned to protect them from direct sunlight, bus heater vents, or other heat sources. Other equipment may include intravenous and fluid drainage apparatus. Appropriate medical placarding, if needed, shall be added by the LEA.
3. All portable equipment and special accessory items, including the equipment listed above, shall be secured at the mounting location to withstand a pulling force of five times the weight of the item, or shall be retained in an enclosed, latched compartment. The compartment shall be capable of withstanding forces applied to its interior equal to five times the weight of its contents without failure to the box's integrity and securement to the bus. Exception: If these standards provide specific requirements for securement of a particular type of equipment, the specific standard shall prevail (i.e., wheelchairs).

Technology and Equipment, New

It is the intent of these specifications to accommodate new technologies and equipment that will better facilitate the transportation of students with special needs. When a new technology, piece of equipment or component is desired to be applied to the school bus it must meet the following criteria:

- A. The technology, equipment, or component shall not compromise the effectiveness or integrity of any major safety system. (Examples of safety systems include, but are not limited to, compartmentalization, the eight-lamp warning system, emergency exits and the approved color scheme.
- B. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not diminish the safety of the interior of the bus.
- C. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not create additional risk to students who are boarding or exiting the bus or are in or near the school bus loading zone.
- D. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not require undue additional activity and/or responsibility for the driver.
- E. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall generally increase efficiency and/or safety of the bus, generally provide for a safer or more pleasant experience for the occupants and pedestrians in the vicinity of the bus or shall generally assist the driver and make his/her many tasks easier to perform.
- F. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

SECTION V – ALTERNATIVE FUEL STANDARDS

1. **School systems considering the use of bio-diesel fuels or other alternative fuels such as liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), compressed natural gas (CNG, electric, or hybrid electric shall secure written approval from the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130 prior to the buses being bid.** Written requests must, at a minimum, provide the SDE with detailed specifications including the specific design, performance criteria, fuel designation (B-5 or B-20) and safety specifications regarding the alternative fuel.

Fuel blends containing used cooking oil will not be allowed.

2. The guidelines contained herein shall pertain to school buses approved by the Alabama State Department of Education to operate on alternative-fuel sources.
 - A. Any company or individual providing alternative-fuel school buses to school systems shall provide appropriate certifications as well as, maintenance, repair and trouble-shooting information and safety training for each system. All maintenance on alternative-fuel buses shall performed by personnel who are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency for the alternative fuel.
 - B. These companies or individuals shall submit to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130, documentation certifying that the requirements of 1-A have been met.

SECTION VI - OPTIONS

School systems should contact the their state school bus inspector or the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section prior to the purchase and/or installation of any optional or after-market equipment. This is to ensure that the equipment and/or its installation is in compliance with the current Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses.

Locking Fuel Compartment Door

Provide at the option of the purchaser a lock and key to secure the fuel compartment door.

Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment

Provide at the option of the purchaser a storage compartment located in the driver's compartment to house the emergency equipment. It shall be a locked compartment with a warning buzzer attached so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked.

SECTION VII - MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS (MFSAB)

DEFINITION:

A Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB) is a school bus constructed to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) and Alabama Minimum School Bus Specifications. It must be purchased or leased as a new bus and may only be used for extracurricular activities. **These buses may not be used to transport students to and from schools or between schools for the purpose of attendance.**

The following exceptions to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for regular route buses shall be allowed for these vehicles.

Identification:

1. The bus body shall bear the words “**ACTIVITY BUS**” in a contrasting color at least 8 inches high in the area where “school bus” is normally positioned. Lettering and numbering shall conform to FMVSS and Alabama Minimum Specifications and shall meet reflectivity standards. Bus numbering on this bus may be of a contrasting color.
2. The name of the school system shall be displayed in at least five-inch letters on both sides of the bus in the beltline area. **NO SIGNS OR LOGOS** shall be applied to any area of the bus including the bumpers. The name of the school may be displayed in the beltline area. No signs, logos, or other items shall be displayed on the windows of the bus.

Color:

The local school with school system approval may determine the color of the activity bus. The color scheme may utilize any combination of up to **THREE** colors. This combination may be in addition to an optional white roof. The color National School Bus Yellow (SBMTC-008 Publication) shall not be used as a part of the color scheme.

School systems and/or vendors shall submit preliminary color schemes to the Alabama Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section for approval **prior to the purchase or manufacture** of a Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB).

Seating:

Transit style seats, which meet all aspects of FMVSS 222 and 302, may be used in lieu of regular school bus seats.

Lighting and Warning Devices:

All activity buses shall meet state and federal standards for normal school bus lighting and warning device requirements with the following exceptions:

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with alternately flashing amber or red signal lamps used for loading and unloading students.

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with stop arm signals or crossing control arms.

INSPECTIONS:

Annual inspection by Alabama Department of Education (SDE) state school bus inspectors and monthly inspections by local school bus inspectors shall be performed on all Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) as required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

REGULATIONS:

These buses shall be owned by the local school system or leased from private school bus transportation contractors. All Alabama laws, Rules of the State Board of Education, and other applicable regulations pertaining to the operation of school buses and certification of school bus drivers shall apply to Multifunctional School Activity Buses.



Disposal of Used School Buses



The procedures outlined in this document should be used in order to assure the proper disposal of school buses that are sold or otherwise removed from your school system's school bus fleet.

Alabama law requires that school buses be equipped with signal lamps and other visual signals and markings that clearly identify the vehicle as a school bus. School buses are also equipped with specialized equipment in order to help protect students, school bus drivers, and motorists. These visual markings, signals, and other specialized equipment, which include amber and red flashing lights, stop signs, warning signs on the rear of the bus, school bus lettering, and crossing control arms, are peculiar to school buses and may not be used on other vehicles, except as provided under Alabama law. Accordingly, the disposal of school buses requires measures above and beyond those necessary for the disposal of other school system vehicles.

To avoid possible liability, improve security, and also ensure compliance with the law, the following procedures should be followed when disposing of buses **that will no longer be used as school buses**:

1. Disable the overhead amber and red flashing lamps and stop arm used when loading and unloading students.
2. Disable the crossing control arm.
3. Paint out all references to the entire name of the system on the sides of the bus, not just the name of the county or city.
4. Paint out the words "SCHOOL BUS" on the **front and rear** of the bus.
5. Remove the Alabama State Inspection Sticker from the windshield.
6. Remove the county or municipal tag from the vehicle before the sale.

If the bus is sold to another school system, private school, or other agency that will continue to use the vehicle as a school bus, only the name of your system, the state inspection sticker, and the tag should be removed. If the bus is sold or traded to a dealer only state inspection sticker and the tag should be removed. The school bus dealer will remove the name of the school system.

Questions regarding the proper disposal of used school buses should be addressed to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama at 334-242-9730.

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS
QUICK REFERENCE CHART

****TYPE A-I SCHOOL BUS****

Type A-I and A-II buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
All type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

****TYPE A-II SCHOOL BUS****
(Over 14,500 pounds)

CAPACITY	BRAKE LINING SIZE	GAWR FRONT	GAWR REAR	GVWR TOTAL	TIRE SIZE
10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply

Type A-II school buses exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have air brakes.

****TYPE C SCHOOL BUS****

10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply
48-54	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	16,000	25,000	10R x 22.5 10 ply
55-72	4" Front 7" Rear	9,000	17,500	26,500	10R x 22.5 12 ply

Type C school buses exceeding 72 capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

****TYPE C-1 SCHOOL BUS****

10-36	Four-wheel disc	6,000	13,500	19,000 maximum	225 x 70R 19.5 - 12 Ply
-------	-----------------	-------	--------	----------------	-------------------------

****TYPE D FRONT ENGINE****

10-53	4" Front 6" Rear	10,800	17,000	27,800	10R x 22.5 10 ply
54-66	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	17,000	28,000	10R x 22.5 10 ply
68-78	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	20,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

****TYPE D REAR ENGINE****

42-66	5" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply
68-78	6" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	12,000	21,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

Type D school buses exceeding 84-capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses



Alabama Department of Education
Division of Administrative and Financial Services
Pupil Transportation Section
Montgomery, Alabama
334-242-9730

Joseph B. Morton
State Superintendent of Education

Warren Craig Pouncey
Assistant State Superintendent of Education
Administrative and Financial Services

Joe Lightsey
Director of Pupil Transportation

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses
Changes Document

Changes to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses 2009 occur on the following pages and headings. All changes appear in italics with the exception of deletions. For noted deletions refer to the 2009 specifications for comparison.

NOTE: Page numbers in 2010 specifications and 2009 specifications may not coincide.

Page	Section	General Description of Change
<i>20</i>	<i>Emergency Equipment</i>	<i>Wording clarification concerning placement of emergency equipment</i>
<i>21</i>	<i>Floor & Floor Coverings</i>	<i>Item #1 New language details acceptable burn rate of flooring materials. Same as National Specifications and Procedures.</i>
<i>22</i>	<i>Handrails</i>	<i>New language allows right-side handrail at option of local system</i>
<i>25</i>	<i>Lamps & Signals</i>	<i>New language allows optional driver's dome light at discretion of local system</i>
<i>27</i>	<i>Lamps & Signals</i>	<i>New item #11 allows optional rear light systems with approval of State Department of Education</i>
<i>30</i>	<i>Seats & Crash Barriers</i>	<i>Item #6 removes outdated language concerning seat-covering materials</i>
<i>40</i>	<i>Evacuation Blanket</i>	<i>Changes part # of required special needs evacuation device</i>
<i>44</i>	<i>Regular Service Entrance</i>	<i>Item 4A language change requires a right-side assist rail on special needs buses</i>
<i>45</i>	<i>Restraining Devices</i>	<i>Item #2 Clarification of seat belt assembly use on special needs buses</i>
<i>52</i>	<i>Alternative Fuel Source Standards</i>	<i>New language Item 1A requires approval of Alabama State Department of Education prior to the use of hybrid, compressed natural gas, or liquid propane gas propulsion systems.</i>
<i>55</i>	<i>Disposal of Used School Buses</i>	<i>Wording change to require only the removal of the state inspection sticker and the tag if a bus is sold or traded to a school bus dealer.</i>



INTRODUCTION

Alabama law (32-5-8) requires the Alabama State Board of Education to adopt minimum standards to govern the specifications for all new school buses and the overall operation of all school buses in the state of Alabama. This responsibility also extends to the inspection of school buses being sold and operated in the state of Alabama. The primary reason for the development of specifications and the inspection of school buses is to enhance the safety of our school buses. We must ensure that Alabama school buses continue to provide the safest ride available for our most precious cargo—our children.

My deepest thanks are extended to each member of the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) School Bus Specifications Committee for their service, hard work, and commitment to the task. Special thanks are also extended to Specifications Committee Chairperson, Greg Ray. For many years, his experience, dedication, and leadership have helped to ensure a successful meeting as well as exceptional specifications. School bus specifications always begin as a product of many individual thoughts and ideas. However, they culminate in standards, which help assure the safest school buses possible for Alabama's students as well as vehicles, which provide a true value for Alabama's taxpayers.

Special thanks must also be expressed to Alabama's school bus dealers, their school bus manufacturers and the many vendors and others in the school bus industry that assist in the SDE and the Committee in the development of these standards. Without their participation, the specifications process would be significantly weakened.

The Minimum Specifications for Alabama School Buses become effective on April 1, 2009. If you have questions or recommendations regarding any of the specifications in this document, please contact Mr. Ray or any member of the specifications committee. Committee members are listed on the following page.

Joe Lightsey, Director
Pupil Transportation
Alabama State Department of Education
Montgomery, Alabama 36130
334-242-9730
joel@alsde.edu

The Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses can also be found on the Alabama State Department of Education website at www.alsde.edu. Look under “Sections” for Pupil Transportation, then “Publications”.

Alabama Department of Education (SDE)
School Bus Specifications Committee
January 2009

Vernon Ash
vash@mcps.com
Mobile County Schools
3274 International Drive
Mobile, AL 36606
(251) 221-5242

Harvey Barger
hbarger@tcss.net
Tuscaloosa County Schools
3700 68th Avenue
Northport, AL 35476
(205) 342-2636

Joey Barnett
jbarnett@mcbe.net
Marion County Schools
188 Winchester Drive
Hamilton, AL 35570
(205) 921-3771

Roosevelt Carter
rcarter@madison.k12.al.us
Madison County Schools
146 Shields Road
Huntsville, AL 35811
(256) 859-9447

Jerry Cataldo
Jerry.cataldo@trussvillecityschools.com
Trussville City Schools
113 N. Chalkville Road
Trussville, AL 35173
(205) 228-3033

Jerry Davidson
j davidson@Shelbyed.k12.al.us
Shelby County Schools
P. O. Box 1910
Columbiana, AL 35051
(205) 682-7133

Obie Fuller
obeyonly1@yahoo.com
Chambers County Schools
Box 408-D
Lafayette, AL 36862
(334) 864-7143

David Gibson
dgibson@pcboe.net
Phenix City Schools
P. O. Box 460
Phenix City, AL 36867

Leslie Mathison
mathison.leslie@aidb.state.al.us
AIDB
P. O. Box 698
Talladega, AL 35160
(256) 761-3443

Jim Moore
jmoore@hoover.k12.al.us
Hoover City Schools
1070 Buccaneer Drive
Hoover, AL 35244
(205) 439-1120

Fay Parker
fay.parker@lcschools.org
Lauderdale County Schools
P. O. Box 278
Florence, AL 35631
(256) 760-1338

A. J. Price
aprice@alex.k12.al.us
Alexander City Schools
375 Lee Street
Alex City, AL 35010
(256) 234-5074

Turner Oliver
olivert@pcboe.org
Pickens County Schools
P. O. Box 32
Carrollton, AL 35447
(205) 367-8244

Harold Pearson
pearsonssr@powernet.org
Cherokee County Schools
130 E. Main Street
Centre, AL 35960
(256) 927-2671

Jeff Snider
jsnider@jefcoed.com
Jefferson County Schools
2513 Cedar Hill Drive
Birmingham, AL 35217
(205) 379-4605

Joe Lightsey
joel@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Jerome Cook
cook8500@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Jeff Duke
papajd@charter.net
State Department of Education

Brad Holley
bholley@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Dennis Johnson
djohnson@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Greg Ray
gwrap@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Sammy Weatherspoon
ginger1235601@yahoo.com
State Department of Education

Jerry Lassiter
jlassiter@alsde.edu
State Department of Education

Joe Beams
joebeams@aol.com
State Department of Education

Cathy Staggs
ctstagg@bellsouth.net
State Department of Education

Ray Jones
No email
State Department of Education

ALABAMA
SCHOOL BUS INSPECTION
HANDBOOK



PREPARED BY
ALABAMA DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
DIVISION OF ADMINISTRATIVE AND FINANCIAL SERVICES
TRANSPORTATION SECTION
MONTGOMERY, ALABAMA

The **Alabama School Bus Inspection Handbook** was developed by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE) Pupil Transportation Section as a standard for school bus safety inspections at the local school system level. This handbook is provided as a guideline for local school system school bus inspectors, shop foremen, technicians, maintenance supervisors, and transportation directors in conducting the monthly inspections required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

The goal of this handbook is to provide uniform standards for state and local school bus inspections. The manual also identifies the critical items to be inspected on Alabama school buses, how they are to be inspected, and which items should remove a school bus from service until the item is repaired (“out of service” items).

Copies of the handbook have been distributed to all local school systems.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
<u>SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS</u>	1
<u>SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS</u>	3
Air Cleaner.....	3
Axles.....	3
Brakes.....	3
Bumper (Front).....	5
Certification.....	5
Color.....	5
Directional Lights.....	6
Drive Shaft.....	6
Electrical System.....	6
Engine.....	7
Exhaust System.....	7
Fenders, Hoods.....	8
Frame.....	9
Fuel Tank.....	9
Governor.....	10
Heating System, Provision for.....	10
Horn.....	10
Instruments & Instrument Panel.....	10
Oil Filter.....	11
Openings.....	11
Passenger Load.....	11
Retarder System (Optional).....	11
Road Speed Control	11
Shock Absorbers.....	12
Springs/Suspension Systems	12
Steering Gear.....	12
Tires and Rims.....	12
Transmission.....	13
Turning Radius.....	13
Undercoating.....	13
Weight Distribution.....	13

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

PAGE

Air Conditioning.....	14
Aisle.....	14
Back-up Warning Alarm.....	14
Battery/Batteries.....	15
Bumper (Front).....	15
Bumper (Rear).....	15
Ceiling.....	15
Certification.....	15
Chains (Tire).....	16
Color.....	16
Communication Systems	16
Construction.....	16
Crossing Control Arm.....	16
Defrosters.....	17
Doors.....	17
Emergency Exits.....	18
Emergency Equipment.....	20
Fire Extinguishers.....	20
First-Aid Kit.....	20
Body Fluid Clean-up Kit.....	21
Warning Devices.....	21
Fire Suppression	21
Floor and Floor Coverings.....	21
Handrail(s)	22
Heaters.....	22
Hinges	23
Identification.....	23
Inside Height.....	24
Insulation.....	24
Interior.....	24
Lamps and Signals.....	25
Metal Treatment.....	27
Mirrors.....	27
Mounting.....	28

<u>SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS (Continued)...</u>	PAGE
Noise Suppression Switch.....	28
Overall Length.....	28
Overall Width.....	28
Public Address System	28
Retroreflective Material.....	29
Rub Rails.....	29
Seat Belt for Driver.....	30
Seat and Crash Barriers.....	30
Steering Wheel (See Chassis Standards).....	32
Steps.....	32
Step Treads.....	32
Stirrup Step.....	32
Stop Arm Signal.....	33
Stop Arm Signal-Rear (Optional)	33
Storage Compartment.....	33
Sun Shield.....	33
Tailpipe.....	33
Traction-Assisting Devices.....	33
Trash Container and Holding Device.....	34
Undercoating.....	34
Ventilation.....	35
Video Surveillance Equipment.....	35
Wheel Housing.....	35
Windshield and Windows.....	36
Windshield Washers.....	36
Windshield Wipers.....	36
Wiring.....	36

SECTION IV - SPECIAL NEEDS SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction.....	39
Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus	39
General Requirements.....	39
Air Conditioning.....	40
Aisles.....	40

Communication System	40
Crash Barriers	40
Evacuation Blanket.....	40
Glazing.....	40
Identification	40
Passenger Capacity Rating.....	41
Power Lift.....	41
Ramp.....	44
Regular Service Entrance.....	44
Restraining Devices.....	44
Seating Arrangements.....	45
Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant.....	45
Special Light.....	49
Special Service Entrance.....	49
Support Equipment and Accessories.....	50
Technology and Equipment New.....	50
<u>SECTION V - ALTERNATE FUEL SOURCE STANDARDS</u>	52
<u>SECTION VI - OPTIONS</u>	52
Locking Fuel Compartment Door	52
Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment.....	52
<u>SECTION VII – MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS</u>	53
Definition	53
Identification	53
Color	53
Seating	53
Lighting and Warning Devices.....	54
Inspections	54
Regulations	54
<u>DISPOSAL OF USED SCHOOL BUSES</u>	55
<u>SECTION VIII – QUICK REFERENCE CHART</u>	56

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS FOR SCHOOL BUSES
EFFECTIVE April 1, 2009

SECTION I - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Standards

1. All school buses ordered by local education agencies beginning **April 1, 2009**, shall (1) meet the applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS), and (2) meet Alabama minimum specifications for school buses. In the event of a conflict between the requirements of an applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard, as referred to in this section, and the Alabama minimum specifications, the requirements of the FMVSS shall control. **School buses not meeting minimum specifications will not be certified by the Alabama State Department of Education (SDE). Under unusual circumstances and with adequate justification, exceptions to these specifications may be granted by the SDE director of pupil transportation.**

Certification

2. All school bus manufacturers shall certify to the SDE, in the form of a **durable, legible** certification label mounted in the driver's compartment in the vehicle, that all school buses meet or exceed all standards as specified herein and are in compliance with the applicable FMVSS. All manufacturers shall certify to the State of Alabama and local education agencies that all components on school buses are new from bumper to bumper at time of delivery. All chassis and body information shall appear on this certification label.

Used School Buses

3. Used school buses purchased for use by a school system in Alabama shall meet all of the legal Federal and Alabama requirements for school buses that were in effect on the date the vehicle was manufactured. *It is recommended that school systems contact the SDE Pupil Transportation prior to the purchase of any used school bus.*

Bid Requirements

4. In order to be in compliance with the State Bid Law, school bus purchases shall be by competitive bidding. Bid forms to the body manufacturer shall contain certain options required by the chassis manufacturer, which may result in changes in normal Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or alterations to the body. For special needs buses, the school bus body manufacturer shall submit floor plans which include dimensions at the time bid quotations are submitted showing:
 1. Location of the emergency door, emergency windows and roof hatches.
 2. Aisle and staging areas and seat spacing.

3. Track locations and/or wheelchair securement positions.
4. Location of air conditioning evaporator(s) **for all buses** ordered with air conditioning.
5. **Service Manual/Diagnostic Equipment**
Body and/or chassis suppliers, including integral (forward control) suppliers, shall provide each school district purchasing school buses with one complete set of the most current service manuals, as specified by the school system, available to include both body and chassis at no additional cost upon delivery of bus. Provisions for manuals and diagnostic equipment, including, but not limited to code books, software, and training, etc, shall be agreed upon during the pre-bid process. Diagnostic equipment cannot be used to determine low bidder.

6. **New Technology**

New technology not in the present specifications shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

7. **School Bus Definitions**

School bus capacity is determined based on body size before modifications are made.

TYPE A: A Type A school bus is a conversion or body constructed upon a van-type or cutaway front-section vehicle with a left side driver's door designed for carrying more than 10 persons. This definition shall include two classifications: Type A-I with a GVWR of 10,000 or under; and Type A-II, with a GVWR over 10,000 pounds. All Type A buses shall have dual rear wheels. **Type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.**

Type A buses exceeding a GVWR of 14,500 pounds shall have air brakes.

TYPE B: A Type B school bus is a conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section vehicle chassis, or stripped chassis, with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels. All Type B buses 14,500 pounds or under shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

TYPE C: A Type C school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The entire engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.

Type C buses may not exceed 72-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.

TYPE C1 A Type C1 school bus is a body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a GVWR of more than 10,000 pounds and a maximum of 19,000 pounds and

designed for carrying a maximum of 36 persons. This is a special category of a Type C school bus designed to be an alternate to a Type A1, Type A2. **This bus shall not exceed a maximum capacity of 36 persons.**

TYPE D: A Type D school bus is a body installed upon a chassis, with the engine mounted in the front, midship, or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds and designed for carrying more than 10 persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or midship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels. **Type D buses may not exceed 84-passenger capacity without prior, written SDE approval.**

SECTION II - SCHOOL BUS CHASSIS STANDARDS

Air Cleaner

1. The engine intake air cleaner shall be furnished and properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

The intake air system for diesel engines shall have an air cleaner restriction indicator properly installed by the chassis manufacturer to meet engine specifications.

Axles

1. The front and rear axles and suspension systems shall have a gross axle weight rating (GAWR) at ground commensurate with the respective front and rear weight loads of the bus loaded to the rated passenger capacity.
2. Vehicle minimum axle capacities at ground when loaded shall meet the body manufacturer's GVWR specified by the FMVSS. Axle assemblies shall have minimum capacities at ground as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
3. Front wheel bearings must be oil filled on all Type C and D buses.

Brakes

1. A braking system, including service brake and parking brake, shall be provided and shall comply with all CDL pretrip inspection requirements. All Type A-1 and A-II school buses below 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications. Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.
2. Buses using air in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals located within the interior of the driver compartment and clearly audible and visible to the driver, that will give a continuous warning when the air pressure available in the system for braking is 60 psi (pounds per square inch) or less. An air pressure gauge shall be provided in the instrument panel capable of complying with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.

3. Antilock brake systems for either air or hydraulic brakes shall include control of all axles in compliance with FMVSS 105 or 121.

A. Air brakes shall be installed on **all** chassis exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR.

Exception: Type C-1 school buses between 10,000 pounds GVWR and 19,000 pounds GVWR are exempt from air brake requirements, but shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

All air-operated brake systems shall:

- (1) Meet all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) for air brakes.
- (2) Be S-cam type brakes on all wheels. The camshaft, when applying brakes, shall rotate in the same direction as the wheels. Automatic slack adjusters shall be the same design on all wheels. Dust covers shall be installed on all wheels unless deleted through local option at the time of the bid.
- (3) Have at least a 12 CFM air compressor.
- (4) Be equipped with a parking and emergency brake. A manual control, clearly identified, shall be within easy reach of the driver. The parking brake valve shall comply with CDL pretrip inspection requirements.
- (5) Have brake lining sizes as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet.
- (6) Have a reservoir capacity, which is equal to or greater than two (2) times total volume of all brake activators at full travel.
- (7) Have air dryers installed. (Bendix AD-9, Midland DA33100 or prior written approved equal). Air dryers shall be serviceable at the local level.

B. Buses using a hydraulic assist-booster in the operation of the brake system shall be equipped with warning signals, readily audible and visible to the driver, that will provide continuous warning in the event of a loss of fluid flow from the primary source, or loss of electric source powering the back-up system.

- (1) The system shall be equipped with a source of hydraulic pressure, automatically initiated upon loss of power from primary source, and operating independently of the primary power source.
- (2) All brake systems shall be designed to permit visual inspection of brake lining wear without the removal of any chassis components.

Bumper, Front

1. The front bumper shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer for all school bus types, unless there is specific agreement between the chassis manufacturer and the body manufacturer. When Type D chassis are supplied to a body company by a chassis manufacturer, the body company shall supply the front bumper as part of the body installation.
2. The front bumper shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material at least 3/16 inch thick, not less than 8 inches wide (high) and shall extend beyond forward-most part of the body, grille, hood, and fenders and shall extend to the outer edges of the fenders at the bumper's top line. Bumpers on Type A buses may be built to manufacturers' specifications.
3. Tow eyes or hooks shall be furnished and attached so as not to project beyond the front bumper. Tow eyes or hooks, attached to the frame chassis, shall be furnished by the chassis manufacturer. This installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's standards. Type A buses are exempt from tow hook requirements.
4. The bumper shall be designed or reinforced so that it will not deform, when the bus is lifted by a chain that is passed under the bumper (or through the bumper if holes are provided for this purpose) and attached to both tow eyes. For the purpose of meeting this standard, the bus shall be empty and positioned on a level, hard surface, and both tow eyes shall share the load equally. Front bumper shall not be deformed when lifted by a bumper jack positioned on the bumper attachment points.

Certification

The chassis manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Color

1. The chassis, including the front bumper, shall be black. The hood, cowl and fenders shall be in national school bus yellow. The hood may be painted with non-reflective paint.
2. Wheel rims shall be painted black, gray, or yellow on all buses.
3. Multifunctional School Activity Buses shall be exempt from these requirements. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Directional Lights

1. Each Type C chassis may be equipped with Type A front directional lights of the two-faced type mounted on the top of the fender and the hood side panel, or have an amber turn signal and marker light that is an integral part of the headlight assembly. This turn signal/marker light shall be seen from the front and the side of the vehicle.

Drive Shaft

1. Torque capacity of the drive shaft assembly shall at least equal maximum engine torque as developed through lowest transmission gear reduction.
2. Each drive shaft shall be equipped with protective metal guard or guards to reduce the possibility of it whipping through the floor or dropping to ground if broken. (Body manufacturer is responsible for Mini Bus.)

Electrical System

1. Battery
 - A. The storage batteries shall have a minimum total of 1,500 cold cranking amps at 0 degrees Fahrenheit. Type A buses shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
 - B. Since all batteries in Type, C, and D buses are to be located in a sliding tray, the battery shall be temporarily mounted on the chassis frame by the chassis manufacturer.

In these cases, the final location of the battery and the appropriate cable lengths shall be according to the current SBMTC Design Objectives.

2. Alternator
 - A. All Type A and B buses up to 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall have a minimum 130 amperes alternator.
 - B. All C and D buses over 15,000 lbs. GVWR shall be equipped with a heavy-duty truck or bus-type alternator capable of producing a minimum output rating of 185 amperes; The alternator shall be capable of producing a minimum of 50 percent of its maximum rated output at the engine manufacturer's recommended idle speed.
 - C. All C and D, buses equipped with an air conditioner or electrical power lift shall have a minimum 200 amperes alternator.
 - D. A direct-drive alternator is permissible in lieu of a belt drive. A belt drive shall be capable of handling the rated capacity of the alternator with no detrimental effect on other driven components.
 - E. Refer to SBMTC Design Objectives, most current edition, for estimating required alternator capacity.
3. Wiring
 - A. All wiring shall conform to current applicable recommended practices of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
 - (1) All wiring shall use standard colors and number coding and each chassis shall be delivered with a wiring diagram that coincides with the wiring of the chassis.

All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet or loom.

B. The chassis manufacturer shall install a readily accessible terminal strip or plug on the body side of the cowl, or at an accessible location in the engine compartment of vehicles designed without a cowl, that shall contain the following terminals for the body connections:

- (1) Main 100-amp body circuits
- (2) Tail lamps
- (3) Right turn signal
- (4) Left turn signal
- (5) Stop lamps
- (6) Back-up lamps
- (7) Instrument panel lights (rheostat controlled)

C. Daytime running lamps shall be provided.

4. Circuits

A. An appropriate identifying diagram (color and number coded) for electrical circuits shall be provided to the body manufacturer for distribution to the end user.

Engine Fire Extinguisher (Optional)

See Fire Suppression System page 21.

Engine

1. All buses shall be equipped with diesel engines with a minimum horsepower as follows:

29 to 60 passengers – 170 hp motor minimum

65 passengers and above – 210 hp motor minimum

Type D buses 78 passengers and above – 230 hp minimum

Type A buses under 29 passenger – manufacturer's specifications

2. The engine heater may be installed as per the manufacturer's specifications.

Exhaust System

1. The exhaust pipe, muffler/ after treatment device, and tail pipe shall be outside the bus body and securely attached to the bus frame. The chassis manufacturer shall furnish an exhaust system with a tail pipe of sufficient length to exit the rear of the bus or at the left side of the bus body no more than 18 inches forward of the front edge of the rear wheelhouse opening. If designed to exit on the side of the bus, the tailpipe shall extend to the skirtline with a turndown angle of approximately 45 degrees. With the exception of special needs buses, Type A vehicles may have the manufacturers standard exhaust system.

The bus shall not automatically begin to regenerate the diesel particulate filter while the bus is not moving. The switch to regenerate the diesel particulate filter shall not be visible or accessible to the driver.

2. The muffler and the tail pipe shall be constructed of aluminized, or equivalent corrosion resistant material. The tailpipe shall be made of at least 16 gauge material and shall be mounted in such a way that it will not cause damage to brake lines
3. The muffler/ after treatment device, and exhaust pipe shall be properly insulated from the fuel tank, lines, and connections by a protective shield at any point where it is 4 inches or less from fuel tank, lines or connections.
4. The tailpipe on all special needs vehicles shall be routed to the left of the left frame rail to allow for the installation of a lift on the right side of the vehicle.
5. No exhaust pipe shall exit beneath an emergency exit or the fuel fill.
6. On all Type C and D buses, the tailpipe shall exit at the bottom edge of the rear bumper or through the rear bumper. If tailpipe exits through the rear bumper sufficient clamps or brackets must be provided to eliminate rattles. If the tailpipe exits beneath the rear bumper, it shall be turned down approximately 45 degrees and positioned in such a way that it cannot be crushed beneath the rear bumper.

The opening in the tailpipe shall direct all exhaust gases clear of the perimeter of the bus body. Manufacturers must make reasonable efforts to ensure that exhaust gases will not produce burns on students or other individuals present.

Fenders, Hoods

1. The total spread of outer edges of front fenders, measured at the fender line, shall exceed the total spread of the front tires when the front wheels are in a straight-ahead position.
2. Front fenders shall be properly braced and free from any body attachments.
3. A fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite tilt hood shall be provided. The hood opening and closing effort shall be minimized to aid the driver with pre-trip inspections and service. If the hood is not designed to remain secure in the open position, a safety prop will be required. The wiring harness shall be a “quick disconnect” type to aid with servicing.

Frame

1. The frame or equivalent shall be of such design and strength characteristics as to correspond at least to standard practice for trucks of the same general load characteristics, which are used for highway service.
2. Any secondary manufacturer that modifies the original chassis frame shall guarantee the performance of workmanship and materials resulting from such modification.

3. Any frame modification shall not be for the purpose of extending the wheelbase.
4. Holes in top or bottom flanges or side units of the frame, and welding to the frame, shall not be permitted except as provided or accepted by the chassis manufacturer.
5. Frame lengths shall be provided in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.

Fuel Tank

1. All Types C, and D chassis above 170-inch wheelbase shall have a minimum 60-gallon fuel tank with a 55-gallon actual draw. The tank shall be filled and vented to the outside of the body, the location of which shall be so that accidental fuel spillage will not drip or drain on any part of the exhaust system. **Type C-1 school buses are exempt from this requirement.**
2. No portion of the fuel system, which is located to the rear of the engine compartment, except the filler tube, shall extend above the top of the chassis frame rail. Fuel lines shall be mounted to obtain maximum possible protection from the chassis frame.
3. Fuel filters shall be installed as per manufacturer's specifications. Fuel filtration shall include water detection and separation. At least one fuel filter shall have a replaceable spin-on or cartridge-type element.
4. Fuel tank installation shall be in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives for location on the chassis right frame rail or between frame rails; the filler tube shall be located on the right side of the bus.
5. Type A buses may meet manufacturer's specifications.
6. The fuel tank on vehicles constructed with a power lift unit may be mounted on left chassis rail or behind rear wheels.
7. Installation of alternative fuel tanks shall comply with all applicable fire codes.
8. On Types C, and D vehicles, fuel tanks shall have interior baffles to help prevent buses from fuel starvation on inclines.

Governor

1. An engine governor is permissible. When it is desired to limit road speed, a road speed governor should be installed.
2. An electronic engine speed limiter shall be provided and set to limit engine speed not to exceed the maximum revolutions per minute as recommended by the engine manufacturer. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Heating System, Provision for

1. The chassis engine shall have plugged openings for the purpose of supplying hot water for the bus heating system. The opening shall be suitable for attaching a pipe thread/hose connector. The engine shall be capable of supplying water having a temperature of at least 170 degrees Fahrenheit at a flow rate of 50 pounds/per minute at the return end of 30 feet of one inch inside diameter automotive hot water heater hose (SBMI Standard No. 001--Standard Code for Testing and Rating Automotive Bus Hot Water Heating and Ventilating Equipment).

Horn

Buses shall be equipped with a horn or horns of standard make with each horn capable of producing a complex sound in bands of audio frequencies between 250 and 2,000 cycles per second and tested per the Society of Automotive Engineers Standard J--377. There shall be no air horns.

Instruments and Instrument Panel

1. Chassis shall be equipped with the following instruments and gauges (lights in lieu of gauges are not acceptable except as noted):
 - A. Speedometer
 - B. Odometer shall show accrued mileage to six digits not including tenths.
 - C. Tachometer
 - D. Voltmeter
 - (1) An ammeter with graduated charge and discharge with the ammeter and its wiring compatible with generating capacities is permitted in lieu of a voltmeter
 - E. Oil-pressure gauge
 - F. Water temperature gauge
 - G. Fuel gauge
 - H. Upper beam headlight indicator
 - I. Air brake indicator gauge
 - (1) A light indicator in lieu of a gauge is permitted on vehicles equipped with hydraulic-over-hydraulic brake system.
 - J. Turn signal indicator
 - K. Glow-plug indicator light where appropriate
 - L. A twelve-volt accessory outlet with cover
2. All instruments shall be easily accessible for maintenance and repair.

3. Instruments and gauges shall be mounted on the instrument panel in such a manner that each is clearly visible to the driver while in a normal seated position in accordance with current SBMTC Design Objectives.
4. The instrument panel shall have lamps of sufficient candlepower to illuminate all instruments and gauges and the shift selector indicator for an automatic transmission.

Oil Filter

An Oil filter with replaceable element shall be provided and connected by flexible oil lines if it is not of built-in or engine-mounted design. The oil filters shall have a capacity of at least one (1) quart.

Openings

All openings in the floorboard or firewall between the chassis and the passenger-carrying compartment, such as for gearshift selector and parking brake lever, shall be sealed.

Passenger Load

1. Actual GVW is the sum of the chassis weight, plus the body weight, plus the driver's weight, plus total seated pupil weight. For purposes of calculation, the driver's weight is 150 pounds. For purposes of calculation, the pupil weight is 120 pounds per pupil.
2. Actual GVW shall not exceed the chassis manufacturer's GVWR for the chassis, nor shall the actual weight carried on any axle exceed the chassis manufacturer's Gross Axle Weight Rating. (GAWR)

Retarder System (Optional)

A retarder system, if used, shall limit the speed of the fully loaded school bus at 19.0 mph or 30 km/hr on a 7% grade for 3.6 miles or 6 km.

Road Speed Control

When it is necessary to control vehicle maximum speed, a vehicle speed limiter shall be utilized. For Type C and D buses, and where feasible on Type A buses, bus road speed shall not exceed a maximum of 70 miles per hour.

Shock Absorbers

Buses shall be equipped with front and rear double-action shock absorbers compatible with the manufacturer's rated axle capacity at each wheel location.

Springs/Suspension Systems

1. The capacity of the springs or suspension assemblies shall be commensurate with the chassis manufacturer's GVWR.
2. Front springs shall be of the leaf type, shall have a stationary eye at one end, and shall be protected by a wrapper leaf in addition to the main leaf. Rear leaf springs shall be of the progressive type.

3. Air ride suspension may be used on the front and rear of Type C and D buses in lieu of leaf-type springs. Body and chassis parts must clear tires with air bags in fully deflated condition or steering wheel turned fully to the left or right. If brake dust covers are used, inspection holes of adequate size and location for easily viewing brake linings shall be provided.

Steering Gear

1. The steering gear shall be approved by the chassis manufacturer and designed to assure safe and accurate performance when the vehicle is operated with maximum load and at maximum speed.
2. If external adjustments are required, the steering mechanism must be accessible to accomplish the same.
3. No changes shall be made in the steering apparatus, which are not approved by the chassis manufacturer.
4. There shall be a clearance of at least two inches between the steering wheel and the cowl, instrument panel, windshield, or any other surface.
5. Power steering is required and shall be of the integral type with integral valves.
6. The steering system shall be designed to provide a means for lubrication of all wear-points, if wear-points are not permanently lubricated.
7. The steering wheel shall meet manufacturer's specifications.

Tires and Rims

1. Radial tubeless tires and rims of proper size and tires with a load rating commensurate with chassis manufacturer's GVWR shall be provided. Hubcaps are not permitted.
2. Dual rear tires shall be provided on all school buses.
3. All tires on any given vehicle shall be of the same size and the load range of said tires shall meet or exceed the gross axle weight rating as required by FMVSS 120. Low profile tires are acceptable. However, they must meet the load range and ply requirements as shown on the chart on the last page of this booklet. It is recommended that dish-type rims be used with low profile tires.
4. If the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire and rim assembly, it shall be of the same size as those mounted on the vehicle.
5. If a tire carrier is required, it shall be suitably mounted in an accessible location outside the passenger compartment.

Transmission

An automatic transmission shall be required on all buses. Type A buses may be built to manufacturer's specifications. Types C, and D buses must have a PTS 2500 series or prior approved equal. The automatic transmission shall have at least four forward-gear ratios, plus integral torque converter. The transmission shift quadrant shall provide at least four forward drive ranges plus neutral and reverse ranges. Within the range selected, ratio changes shall be effected automatically and at full engine power if desirable, and without use of an engine disconnect clutch. A PTS3000 or prior approved equal is required for chassis over 33,000 pounds GVWR.

Type C-1 school buses may use Allison PTS 1000 or PTS 2200 automatic transmission or prior approved equal.

Turning Radius

1. Chassis with a wheelbase of 264 inches or less shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 42 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.
2. Chassis with a wheelbase of 265 inches or more shall have a right and left turning radius of not more than 44 and 1/2 feet, curb-to-curb measurement.

Undercoating

The chassis manufacturer, or agent thereof, shall coat the undersides of steel or metallic-constructed front fenders with rust-proofing compound for which compound manufacturers have issued notarized certification of compliance to the chassis builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C520B using modified test.

Weight Distribution

The weight distribution of a fully loaded bus on a level surface shall be such as not to exceed the manufacturer's front gross axle rating and rear gross axle weight rating.

SECTION III - SCHOOL BUS BODY STANDARDS

Air Conditioning

All special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. Other buses **may** be equipped with an air conditioning unit at the discretion of the local school system. For all buses equipped with air conditioning, evaporator placement shall be agreed upon by school system and dealer prior to bid award. Refer to Page 2 Bid Requirements item # 4.

All buses ordered with air conditioning shall meet the following minimum specifications:

1. Floor--All flooring shall be 5/8-inch exterior-grade plywood over steel flooring.
2. All buses shall have a white roof.
3. Windows--All passenger windows shall be tinted with 28% light transmission.
4. All buses shall meet insulation standards as per Alabama bus specifications.
5. **Optional** mud flaps to protect the condenser may be installed.

Minimum Btu air conditioning system per passenger size:

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------|
| 1. 10-30-passenger | 40,000 Btu |
| 2. 31-48-passenger | 53,000 Btu |
| 3. 49-60-passenger | 78,000 Btu |
| 4. 61-84-passenger | 100,000 Btu |

Aisle

1. All emergency doors shall be accessible by a 12-inch minimum aisle. The aisle shall be unobstructed at all times.
2. Seat backs shall be slanted sufficiently to give aisle clearance of 15 inches at the tops of seat backs.

Back-Up Warning Alarm

An automatic, audible alarm with a minimum of 87dbA and maximum of 112dbA shall be installed behind the rear axle and shall comply with the Society of Automotive Engineers published Back-up Alarm Standards (SAE 994). The alarm shall have a protective deflector shield.

Battery/Batteries

1. Batteries are to be furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
2. When the battery/batteries is mounted as described in the Chassis Standard, the body manufacturer shall securely attach the battery on a slide-out or swing-out tray in a closed, vented compartment in the body skirt, so that the battery is accessible for convenient servicing from the outside. The battery compartment door or cover shall be hinged at the front and secured by an adequate and conveniently-operated latch or other type fastener.

Bumper (Front)

On a Type D school bus, if the chassis manufacturer does not provide a bumper, it shall be provided by the body manufacturer. The bumper will conform to the standards in the chassis section.

Bumper (Rear)

1. Bumpers shall be of pressed steel channel or equivalent material, at least 3/16-inch thick, and shall be a minimum of 9-1/2 inches wide (high) on all Types C, and D buses. Type A buses shall have a minimum of an 8-inch rear bumper.
2. Bumpers shall be wrapped around the back corners of the bus. It shall extend forward at least 12 inches, measured from the rear-most point of the body at the floor line.
3. Bumpers shall be attached to the chassis frame in such a manner that it may be easily removed. It shall be so braced as to withstand impact from a rear or side impact. It shall be so attached as to discourage hitching of rides.
4. Bumpers shall extend at least one inch beyond rear-most part of body surface measured at the floor line.
5. Tow eyes or hooks may be furnished on the rear and attached so they do not project beyond the rear bumper. The installation shall be in accordance with the chassis manufacturer's specifications.
6. The bottom of the rear bumper shall not be more than 30 inches above ground level.

Ceiling

See Insulation and Interior, Body Standard.

Certification

The body manufacturer shall certify to the SDE and local education agency having pupil transportation jurisdiction that their product meets minimum standards on items not covered by certification issued under requirements of the National Traffic and Motor Vehicle Safety Act.

Chains (Tire)

See Wheel Housing Body Standard.

Color

1. The school bus body shall be painted National School Bus Yellow.
2. The body exterior paint trim, bumper, lamp hoods and lettering shall be black.
3. The roof of the bus must be painted white not to extend below the drip rails on the sides of the body.

4. Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) shall be exempt from this requirement. (See MFSAB specifications on page 51.)

Communication Systems

Each bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Construction

1. Construction shall be of prime commercial quality steel or other material with strength at least equivalent to all-steel as certified by the bus body manufacturer. All such construction materials shall be fire resistant.
2. Construction shall be dust proof and watertight, so the bus does not leak under normal operating conditions.
3. Body joints present in that portion of a Type A school bus body furnished exclusively by the body manufacturer shall conform to the performance requirements of FMVSS 221, "School Bus Body Joint Strength." This does not include the body joints created when body components are attached to components furnished by the chassis manufacturer.
4. Type A school bus bodies shall be equipped with restraining barriers conforming to FMVSS 222, "School Bus Passenger Seating--Crash Protection," Sections 5.2 and 5.3.

Crossing Control Arm

1. Buses shall be equipped with a crossing control arm mounted on the right side of the front bumper, which shall not open more than 90 degrees.
2. All components of the crossing control arm and all connections shall be weatherproofed.
3. The crossing control arm shall incorporate system connectors (electrical or air) at the gate and shall be easily removable to allow for towing of the bus.
4. The crossing control arm shall meet or exceed SAE Standard J1133.
5. The crossing control arm shall be constructed of non-corrosive or nonferrous material or treated in accordance with the body sheet metal standard (see Metal Treatment).
6. There shall be no sharp edges or projections that could cause hazard or injury to students.
7. The crossing control arm shall extend at least 70" from the front bumper when in the extended position.

8. The crossing control arms shall extend simultaneously with the stop arm(s) by means of the stop arm controls. An automatic recycling interrupt switch shall be installed to allow the driver to deactivate the control arm when necessary.
9. An electromagnetic device or a stowed bracket shall be installed to stabilize the arm when in the stored position.
10. Crossing control arm shall be Specialty Manufacturing Company, Part #58600, Transpec 4000 series, or prior approved equal.

Defrosters

1. The windshield defroster and defogging system shall provide defogging of the entire windshield, driver's side window, and entrance door glasses by utilizing hot air taken from the heater core with vents across the entire windshield.
2. The defrosting system shall conform to Society of Automotive Engineers' Standards J381 and J382.
3. The defroster and defogging system shall be capable of furnishing heated outside ambient air.
4. Auxiliary fans are not considered defrosting or defogging systems.
5. Portable heaters shall not be used.

Doors

1. Service Door:
 - A. The service door shall be in the driver's control, and designed to afford easy release and provide a positive latching device on manual operating doors to prevent accidental opening. When a hand lever is used, no part shall come together that will shear or crush fingers. Manual door controls shall not require more than 25 pounds of force to operate at any point throughout the range of operation.
 - B. The service door shall be located on the right side of the bus, opposite and within direct view of the driver.
 - C. The service door shall have a minimum horizontal opening of 24 inches and a minimum vertical opening of 68 inches.
 - D. The service door shall be a split type, both sections opening outward.
 - E. Lower, as well as upper door panels, shall be of approved safety glass. The bottom of each lower glass panel shall not be more than 10 inches from the top surface of the bottom step. The top of each upper glass panel shall not be more than 6 inches from the top of the door.

- F. Vertical closing edges on split type entrance doors shall be equipped with flexible material to protect the children's fingers.
- G. There shall be no door to the left in driver compartment on Types C or D vehicles.
- H. All doors shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.
- I. If air or electric doors are used, the amber warning lights shall be activated from a momentary switch. A three-position switch shall activate the sequence as follows:
 - Position One – door closed; lights off.
 - Position Two – activate red lights, stop arm, and crossing control arm.
 - Position Three – red lights activated, door open, stop arm activated, and crossing control arm activated.

Emergency Exits

1. Emergency Door:
 - A. The emergency door shall be hinged on the right side if in the rear end of bus and on the front side if on left or right side of the bus. It shall open outward and be labeled inside to indicate how it is to be opened. If double emergency doors are used on Type A vehicles, they shall be hinged on the outside edge and shall have a three-point fastening device. A device shall be used that holds the door open to prevent the emergency door from closing during emergencies and school bus evacuation drills. If emergency door locks are used, the vehicle ignition must be disabled until the emergency door lock is deactivated.
 - B. The upper portion of the emergency door shall be equipped with approved safety glazing, the exposed area of which shall be at least 400 square inches. The lower portion of the rear emergency door on Types C, and D vehicles shall be equipped with a minimum of 350 square inches of approved safety glazing.
 - C. There shall be no steps leading to an emergency door.
 - D. The words **EMERGENCY DOOR**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed at the top of or directly above the emergency door or on the door in the metal panel above the top glass, both inside and outside of the bus. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT** in letters at least 2 inches high shall be placed on the exterior body directly above each emergency window.
 - E. The emergency door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of each door opening. Padding shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick, and extend the full width of the door opening.

F. The side emergency door, if installed, must meet the requirements as set forth in FMVSS 217 (a), regardless of its use with any other combination of emergency exits.

(1) A left side emergency door shall have a 20 inch unobstructed passageway and no flip seat is to be used. A barrier shall be used just before the door opening.

G. There shall be no obstruction higher than 1/4 inch across the bottom of any emergency door opening.

2. Additional Emergency Exits:

A. All school buses shall be equipped with emergency exits in the following capacity vehicles:

- 0 to 54 passenger: one emergency window exit per side and one roof hatch located midpoint.
- 55 and above passenger: two emergency window exits per side, and two roof hatches.

B. Each emergency exit shall comply with FMVSS 217. These emergency exits are in addition to the rear emergency door or exit. Roof hatches must be Transpec Standard Vent, Model 1970, Specialty Manufacturing 8600, 8900, or 9000 series or prior approved equal.

(1) Emergency exit windows shall be as evenly spaced as possible under FMVSS 217 guidelines and shall not be obstructed by any devices.

C. In addition to the audible warning required on emergency doors by FMVSS 217, additional emergency exits shall also be like protected. Warnings for these exits shall be clearly audible to the bus driver.

D. School bus emergency exits shall be marked with a minimum one inch wide strip of retroreflective tape red, white or yellow in color, to be placed around the outside perimeter of the emergency exit opening, not the emergency exit itself. The words **EMERGENCY EXIT**, in letters at least two inches high, shall be placed on the body directly above each emergency window.

Emergency Equipment

All emergency equipment shall be installed forward of the front barriers with the exception of the warning devices.

1. Fire Extinguishers:

A. The bus shall be equipped with at least one pressurized, dry chemical fire extinguisher complete with hose to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., approval.

A pressure gauge shall be mounted on the extinguisher and easily read without moving the extinguisher from its mounted position.

The bracket shall be a heavy-duty, snap-in, spring type. Band type holders are not acceptable. Fire extinguisher brackets shall be Brooks Equipment Company # 4SC or Ridgeway Bus Products # 51-05 or prior approved equal.

- B. The fire extinguisher shall have a capacity of **five pounds** with an Underwriters Laboratories total rating of 2A10BC or greater. The operating mechanism shall be sealed with a type of seal that will not interfere with the use of the fire extinguisher.
 - C. Fire extinguishers must comply with State Fire Codes.
2. First-Aid Kit:
- A. Bus shall have a removable, moisture-proof and dust-proof first-aid kit stored in a metal container and mounted with a separate bracket in an accessible place in driver's compartment. This place shall be marked to indicate its location. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable.
 - B. Contents shall include:
 - 2 1" x 2 1/2 yards adhesive tape rolls
 - 24 sterile gauze pads 3" x 3"
 - 100 3/4" x 3" adhesive bandages
 - 8 2" bandage compress
 - 10 3" bandage compress
 - 2 2" x 6" sterile gauze roller bandages
 - 2 non-sterile triangular bandages approximately 40" x 36" x 54" with
 - 2 safety pins
 - 3 sterile gauze pads 36" x 36"
 - 3 sterile eye pads
 - 1 pair rounded-end scissors
 - 1 pair latex gloves
 - 1 mouth-to-mouth airway
3. Body Fluid Clean-up Kit:
- A. Each bus shall have a removable and moisture-proof body fluid clean-up kit stored in a metal container. Strap-type mounting brackets are not acceptable. It shall be properly mounted and identified as a body fluid clean-up kit. Must meet OSHA regulations.
4. Warning Devices:
- A. Each school bus shall contain at least three (3) reflectorized triangle road warning devices mounted in an accessible place in the driver's compartment or outside storage compartment. The mounting location in Type A vehicles is optional. These devices must meet requirements in FMVSS 125.

Fire Suppression (Optional)

When a fire suppression system is used, nozzles for suppression systems shall be located in the engine compartment, under the bus, in the electrical panel, or under the dash, but shall not be located in the passenger compartment. The system must include a light or buzzer to alert the driver that the system has been activated.

Floor and Floor Coverings

1. The floor in the underseat area, including the tops of the wheel housing, driver's compartment and toe board, shall be covered with a rubber floor covering or equivalent, having a minimum overall thickness of 1/8 inch *and a calculated burn rate of 0.1 or less using the test measures, procedure and formulas in FMVSS 302 Flammability of Interior Materials.*
2. The floor covering in the aisle shall be of aisle-type rubber or equivalent, wear resistant, and ribbed. The minimum overall thickness shall be 3/16 inch measured from tops of ribs.
3. The floor covering must be permanently bonded to the floor and must not crack when subjected to sudden changes in temperature. Bonding or adhesive material shall be waterproof and shall be of a type recommended by the manufacturer of the floor-covering material. All seams must be sealed with waterproof sealer.
4. For Type C and D school buses, the manufacturer shall provide a screw-down plate to access fuel tank sending unit that is secured and insulated. The plate shall be mounted so that access is readily available to repair personnel and so that the floor covering is not disturbed during the repair process.
5. The floor shall be of metal or alloy at least equal in strength to 14-gauge prime commercial quality steel and so constructed that exhaust gases cannot enter the passenger compartment.
6. All closures between the bus body and the engine compartment shall be fitted with gas-tight gaskets and pedal openings shall be closed bellows type, gas-tight boots.
7. There shall be a plate, of adequate size, provided to allow for transmission access or service.

Handrail(s)

At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test. *A right-hand side assist rail may be provided at the discretion of the local school system.*

Heaters

1. The heating system shall be capable of maintaining the temperature throughout the bus of not less than 55 degrees Fahrenheit during average minimum January temperatures as established by the U. S. Department of Commerce, Weather Bureau, for the area in which the vehicle is to be operated. Shall be capable of defrosting the total windshield area and the service door glass within thirty minutes after initial start with engine at idle speed. The system shall exceed SAE standards J-381 and J-382 performance requirements. **Fuel-fired auxiliary heaters will not be allowed.**

Heater performance shall be measured by the following:

A temperature measurement shall be taken at three locations within the body. These locations to be over the center aisle, thirty-six inches above the floor. The first location is to be thirty-nine inches from the windshield; the second location midpoint of the passenger compartment and the third will be thirty-nine inches from the rear emergency door.

After soaking the bus at twenty degrees F. for fifteen (15) hours, the bus will be started and after thirty (30) minutes, the temperature at each measuring point shall be fifty-five (55) degrees F.

2. If only one heater is used, it shall be a fresh-air or combination fresh-air and recirculation type.
3. If more than one heater is used, additional heaters shall be a recirculating-air type.
4. All heaters installed by body manufacturers shall bear a name plate that shall indicate the heater rating in accordance with SBMI Standard No. 001, with said plate to be affixed by the heater manufacturer which shall constitute certification that the heater performance is as shown on the plate.
5. Heater hoses shall be adequately supported to guard against excessive wear due to vibration. The hoses shall not dangle or rub against the chassis or sharp edges and shall not interfere with or restrict the operation of any engine function.
Heater hoses shall conform to the Society of Automotive Engineers' Standard J20c.
Heater lines on the interior of the bus shall be shielded to prevent scalding of the driver or passengers.
6. Each hot water system installed by a body manufacturer shall include one shut-off valve in the pressure line and one shut-off valve in the return line with both valves at or near the engine in an accessible location.
7. There shall be a water flow-regulating valve, or an electronic valve actuator, installed in the pressure line for convenient operation by the driver while seated.

8. Accessible bleeder valves shall be installed in an appropriate place in the return lines of body company-installed heaters to remove air from the heater lines.
9. Access panels shall be provided to make heater motors, cores, and fans readily accessible for service. An outside access panel may be provided for the driver's heater.

Hinges

All exterior metal door hinges which do not have stainless steel, brass, or nonmetallic hinge pins or other designs that prevent corrosion shall be designed to allow lubrication to be channeled to the center 75% of each hinge loop without disassembly.

Identification

1. School bus bodies shall bear the words, **SCHOOL BUS**, in eight-inch black letters on National School Bus Yellow, on the front and back of the bus (lettering between flasher lights). (See page 51 for Multifunctional School Activity Bus identification requirements.) The name of the school system shall be on each side of the bus in at least 5-inch, black standard, unshaded letters. Lettering shall conform to "Series B" of Standard Alphabets for Highway Signs. Each bus shall be numbered on both sides, front left side and the rear, before being put into service. Bumper numbers may be white or yellow. An agreement between manufacturer and purchaser shall be reached at time order is placed as to who will put the numbers on the buses. Any other numbering shall be optional.
2. Only signs and lettering approved by state law or regulation, limited to the name of the owner or operator and any marking necessary for identification, shall appear on the bus.
3. School bus bodies shall display a high quality 6" x 9" warning sticker on permanent, adhesive, vinyl, bumper-sticker material. To increase visibility, this sticker shall be mounted just under the first or second rub rail at left side of the passenger entrance door. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

UNAUTHORIZED ENTRY ILLEGAL

Any person who attempts to enter a school bus without prior authorization of the driver or other appropriate school official and refuses to leave will be subject to prosecution that may result in fines of up to \$2,000 and up to one year in jail.

Alabama Code Sections 13A-10-2, 13A-7-4

6. Driver Alert Transpec Model 7500 or prior approved equal electronic signage warning traffic when the school bus stops to load or unload students and at railway grade crossings is required.
7. A high quality, 4" x 6", permanent, adhesive, vinyl, warning sticker prompting drivers that driver seat belt use is mandatory on all school buses shall be affixed in the driver compartment in a highly visible location. This sticker shall be worded as follows:

DRIVER SEAT BELT USE REQUIRED

Driver seat belt use is required at all times when driving this vehicle. Failure to do so could result in disciplinary action up to and including suspension or revocation of your Alabama School Bus Driver Certificate or termination.

Alabama Code Section 16-27-6.

Unauthorized Entry Decals and Driver Seat Belt Use Decals are provided by the Alabama State Department of Education.

Inside Height

The inside body height shall be 72 inches or more, measured metal to metal, at any point on the longitudinal center line from the front vertical bow to the rear vertical bow. The inside body height of Type A buses shall be 62 inches or more.

Insulation

1. Ceilings and walls shall be insulated with proper material to deaden sound and reduce vibration to a minimum. If thermal insulation is specified, it shall be fire-resistant and approved by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. If buses are equipped with air conditioning, walls and ceilings must be insulated to improve air conditioner efficiency.
2. If floor insulation is required, it shall be either 5-ply nominal 19/32 inches thick plywood, or a material of equal or greater strength and insulation R value, and it will equal or exceed properties of exterior-type softwood plywood, C-D Grade as specified in standard issued by U. S. Department of Commerce. When plywood is used, all exposed edges shall be sealed.

Interior

1. The interior of the bus shall be free of all unnecessary projections, which include luggage racks and attendant handrails, likely to cause injury. This standard requires inner lining on ceilings and walls. If the ceiling is constructed to contain lapped joints, the forward panel shall be lapped by the rear panel and exposed edges shall be beaded, hemmed, flanged, or otherwise treated to minimize sharp edges.
2. The driver's area forward of the foremost padded barriers will permit the mounting of required safety equipment and vehicle operation equipment.
3. Every school bus shall be constructed so that the noise level taken at the ear of the occupant nearest to the primary vehicle noise source shall not exceed 85 dbA when tested.
4. Any added equipment shall be flush mounted with the exception of the video system.

Lamps and Signals

1. Interior lamps shall be provided which adequately illuminate aisle and step well. Step well lights shall be illuminated by a service door operated switch, to illuminate only when headlights and clearance lights are on and the service door is opened. *An optional driver dome light with a separate switch may be installed at the discretion of the local school system.*
2. Clearance lamps shall automatically illuminate when the headlights are in the “on” position.
3. L.E.D. lighting shall be used in all exterior body lamps and signals. Eight-way flashing lights and stop arm shall be strobe-type L.E.D. Manufacturers’ front chassis lamps are exempt from this requirement.
4. Definition--School bus alternately flashing red and amber signal lamps are lamps mounted at the same horizontal level, intended to identify the vehicle as a school bus and to inform other users of the highway that such vehicle is preparing to stop, or is stopped, on the roadway to take on or to discharge schoolchildren.
 - A. Master switches will not be allowed on the eight-way, alternately flashing signal lamps.
 - B. Buses shall be equipped with two red lamps and two amber lamps at the rear of the vehicle and two red lamps and two amber lamps at the front of the vehicle. One amber lamp shall be located near each red signal lamp at the same level, but closer to the vertical centerline of the bus.
 - C. The signaling system, including red and amber signal lamps and a stop arm with alternating flashing lamps, shall be so designed and wired as to have the following characteristics:
 - (1) When the entrance door is closed, a manual push button may be depressed and the amber pilot light and amber warning lights will flash.
 - (2) When the entrance door is opened, the amber pilot and amber warning lights will go off, and the red pilot and red warning lights will flash; also, the stop arm will be extended and lights on the stop arm will flash.
 - (3) On closing the entrance door, all lights will go out and the stop arm retract automatically.
 - (4) If the entrance door is opened without depressing the manual push button, no lights will flash, nor will the stop arm be extended.

- D. The area around the lenses of alternately flashing signal lamps shall have a readily visible black border for contrast purposes. Hoods/guards may be provided over front and rear amber warning lights and red warning lights.
5. Bus body shall be equipped with amber rear turn signal lamps at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round, a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area. These signal lamps must be connected to the chassis hazard-warning switch to cause simultaneous flashing of signal lamps when needed as a vehicular traffic hazard warning.
 6. Rear directional lights shall be mounted not more than 15 inches from the plane of the side of the body, and not more than 14 inches below the glass in the rear of the body. All buses shall have side turn indicators on both sides located within six inches of the floor line.
 7. Buses shall be equipped with two red, brake/tail combination lights at least seven inches in diameter, or if in a shape other than round a minimum of 38 square inches of illuminated area and shall be mounted on the rear of the bus just inside the turn signal lamps.
 - A. Type A conversion vehicle lamps must be 21 square inches in the lens area. Two combination lamps with a minimum diameter of four inches, or if a shape other than round, a minimum 12 square inches of illuminated area shall be placed on the rear of the body between the beltline and the floor line. The rear license plate lamp may be combined with one lower tail lamp. Stop lamps shall be activated by the service brakes and shall emit a steady light when illuminated.
 - B. In addition to these requirements, all lamps and signals shall comply with applicable SAE specifications.
 8. On all buses equipped with a monitor for the front and rear lamps of the school bus, the monitor shall be mounted in full view of the driver. If the full circuit current passes through the monitor, each circuit shall be protected by a fuse or circuit breakers or other equivalent technology against any short circuit or intermittent shorts.
 9. A white flashing strobe light shall be installed on the roof of a school bus not to exceed 1/3 the body length forward from the rear of the roof edge. This light shall have a single white lens emitting light 360 degrees around its vertical axis and may not extend above the roof more than the maximum legal height. A manual switch and a pilot light of low intensity must be included to indicate when the light is in operation. The pilot light shall be incorporated into the switch.
 10. If alternating headlights are used (i.e., wig-wag), they must operate in conjunction with the red overhead flashers and stop arm.
 11. *As an option, other lighting devices may be used with prior approval from SDE.*

Metal Treatment

1. All metal used in construction of a bus body shall be zinc-coated or aluminum-coated or treated by an equivalent process before the bus is constructed. Included are such items as structural members, inside and outside panels, door panels and floor sills. Excluded are such items as door handles, grab handles, interior decorative parts and other interior plated parts.
2. In addition to the above requirements, all metal parts that will be painted shall be chemically cleaned, etched, zinc-phosphate-coat and zinc-chrome or epoxy primed or conditioned by equivalent process.
3. In providing for these requirements, particular attention shall be given to lapped surfaces, welded connections of structural members, cut edges punched or drilled hole areas in sheet metal, closed or box sections, unvented or undrained areas and surfaces subjected to abrasion during vehicle operation.
4. As evidence that the above requirements have been met, samples of materials and sections used in construction of the bus body, when subjected to 1,000-hour salt spray test as provided for in latest revision of ASTM Standard B-117 "Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing" shall not lose more than 10 percent of its material by weight.

Mirrors

1. Interior mirrors shall be either clear laminated glass or clear view glass bonded to a backing, which retains the glass in the event of breakage. Mirrors shall have rounded corners and protected edges. Type A buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 16" mirror and Type C, and D buses shall have a minimum of a 6" x 30" mirror. It shall be securely attached on the windshield header and so located as to give the driver a clear view of the entire interior of the bus and the road behind.
2. Each school bus shall be equipped with a system of exterior mirrors as defined in FMVSS 111.
 - A. Rear vision mirrors shall be capable of providing a view along the left and right sides of the vehicle which will provide the driver with a view of the rear tires at ground level, a minimum distance of 200 feet to the rear of the bus and at least 12 feet perpendicular to the side of the bus at a distance of 32 feet back from the front bumper.
 - B. The cross view mirror system shall provide the driver with indirect vision of an area at ground level from the front bumper forward and the entire width of the bus to a point where the driver can see by direct vision. The cross view system shall also provide the driver with direct vision of the area at ground level around the left and right front corners of the bus to include the tires and service entrance on all types of buses to a point where it overlaps with the rear vision mirror system. A metal reinforcement plate shall be installed under the hood area of fiberglass or other reinforced resin composite hoods in order to reinforce cross view mirror mounting base area.
 - C. This system of mirrors shall be easily adjustable but be rigidly braced to reduce vibration.

3. Heated and/or remote controlled external, rearview mirrors may be used.

Mounting

1. The chassis frames shall support the rear body cross member. The bus body shall be attached to the chassis frame at each main floor sill, except where chassis components interfere, in such a manner as to prevent shifting or separation of the body from the chassis under severe operating conditions.
2. Insulation material shall be placed at all contact points between the body and chassis frame on Types A, C and D buses, and shall be so attached to the chassis frame or body that it will not move under severe operating conditions.

Noise Suppression Switch

There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. This switch or switch background shall be red or yellow and labeled. This switch shall be an on/off-type (not momentary) that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. For Type A buses, all radios or communication devices shall be ordered as a body accessory and must be wired thru the noise suppression switch.

Overall Length

The overall length of the bus shall not exceed 45 feet excluding accessories.

Overall Width

The overall width of the bus shall not exceed 102 inches excluding accessories.

Public Address System

Buses may be equipped with a public address system having interior and exterior speakers. Interior speakers shall be flush mounted with bulkhead. No internal speakers other than the driver's communication systems may be installed within four feet of the driver's seat back in its rearmost, upright position.

Retroreflective Material

1. The front and/or rear bumper may be marked diagonally 45 degrees down to the centerline of the pavement with 2" x 1/4" wide strips of non-contrasting retroreflective material.
2. The rear of the bus body shall be marked with strips of retroreflective National School Bus Yellow (NSBY) material to outline the perimeter of the back of the bus using material which conforms with the requirements of FMVSS 571.131 (Table I). The perimeter marking of rear emergency exits per FMVSS 217 and/or the use of retroreflective SCHOOL BUS signs partially accomplish the objective of this requirement. To complete the perimeter marking of the back of the bus, strips of at least one-inch retroreflective NSBY material shall be applied horizontally above the rear windows and above the rear bumper, extending from the rear emergency exit perimeter marking outward to the left and rear corners of the bus. Vertical strips shall be applied at the corners connecting these horizontal strips.

3. **SCHOOL BUS** signs, if not of a lighted design, shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material comprising a background for lettering of the front and/or rear **SCHOOL BUS** signs.
4. The sides of the bus body shall be marked with retroreflective NSBY material at least one inch in width, extending the length of the bus body and located (vertically) between the floor line and the belt line.

Rub Rails

1. There shall be one rub rail located on each side of the bus approximately at seat level which shall extend from the rear side of the entrance door completely around the bus body (except emergency door or any maintenance access door) to a point of curvature near the outside cowl on the left side.
2. There shall be one additional rub rail located approximately at the floor line which shall cover the same longitudinal area as the upper rub rail, except at the wheel housing, and shall extend only to radii of the right and left rear corners.
3. Rub rails above the floor line shall be attached at each body post and all other upright structural members.
4. Each rub rail shall be 4 inches or more in width in their finished form, shall be of 16-gauge metal or other suitable material of equivalent strength, suitable to protect body side panels from damage. Rub rails shall be constructed in a corrugated or ribbed fashion.
5. Rub rails shall be applied to the outside of the body or outside body posts. Pressed-in or snap-on rub rails do not satisfy this requirement. For Type A1 vehicles using a chassis manufacturer's body, or for Types A2, C, and D buses using rear luggage or rear engine compartments, rub rails need not extend around rear corners.
6. The bottom edge of the body side skirts shall be stiffened by application of a rub rail, or the edge may be stiffened by providing a flange or other stiffeners.

Seat Belt for Driver

1. The driver's seat shall be equipped with the seat belt anchored to the floor, housed in scabbard and equipped with an emergency locking retractor (one side only). The driver's seat shall be equipped with a Type II occupant protection (lap and shoulder belt). Adjustability of the mounting point for the driver's seat belt pillar loop shall be provided to accommodate all heights and weights of bus drivers without interference with the driver's face or neck. The requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210 shall be met. Integrated seat belts in the driver's seat may be used at the discretion of the local school system.

2. Buses equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts for student seating shall contain at least two belt cutters. One belt cutter must be properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into the driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
3. **The driver's seat belt shall be high visibility orange or lime green in color on all buses except Type A. All Type C and D buses must be equipped with a continuous audible and visual warning signal activated when the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the ignition is in the on position. The warning signal shall be different from low air or emergency exit buzzer. Type A buses must be equipped with warning buzzers as per manufacturer's standard.**

Seats and Crash Barriers

All Type A1 buses, 14,500 pounds GVWR and under shall be equipped with lap/shoulder belts and must meet FMVSS 209 requirements.

1. Seats shall be spaced to obtain a minimum of 24-inch hip-to-knee room measured horizontally at the seat cushion level at the transverse centerline of the seat. In making this measurement from the back of the seat cushion to the back of the seat or barrier in front, upholstery may be placed against padding both forward and rear but padding may not be compressed. Greater seat spacing may be specified on local bids not to exceed the maximum allowable per FMVSS 222.
2. In determining seating capacity of standard school buses, the allowable average rump width shall be 13 inches where a 3-3 seating plan is used, and thirteen (13) or 15 inches where 3-2 seating plan is used on specially-equipped buses.
3. All seats shall be bench style, forward facing and have a minimum depth of 15 inches. No transit or activity seat will be used. There shall be no armrest on student seats. No bus shall be equipped with jump seats or portable seats.
4. All seat frames attached to the seat rail shall be fastened with two (2) bolts, washers and nuts or flange-headed nuts. Each seat leg shall be secured to the floor by a minimum of two (2) bolts, washers and nuts. Flange-head nuts may be used in lieu of nuts and washers, or seats may be track-mounted in conformance with FMVSS 222. If track seating is installed, the manufacturer shall supply minimum and maximum seat spacing dimensions applicable to the bus, which comply with FMVSS 222. This information shall be on a label permanently affixed to the bus.
5. The forward most pupil seat on the right side of the bus shall be located so as not to interfere with the driver's vision, not farther forward than the barrier behind the driver or the rear of the driver's seat when adjusted to its rear-most position.

6. All seats and backs shall be a standard color unless changed by purchaser. Seat and back cushions of all seats shall be designed to safely support the designated number of passengers under normal road conditions encountered in school-bus service. *All seat coverings shall meet FMVSS regulations and School Bus Manufacturer Technical Council Guidelines.*
7. The driver seat shall be of the high back, air ~~or~~ mechanical suspension, box pedestal-type with a minimum seat back adjustment of 15 degrees and with a head restraint to accommodate a 95 percentile adult male (95 percentile adult male as defined in FMVSS 208). The driver's seat shall be secured with nuts, bolts, and washers or flanged-headed nuts. The driver's seat shall have a minimum distance between the steering wheel and seatback of not less than eleven inches, with a minimum aft adjustment of six inches. The seat shall be contoured with adequate padding and support on the sides and shall have a cloth cover. It shall be designed to provide lumbar support and shall be positioned on the centerline of the steering wheel.
8. All restraining barriers and passenger seats shall be constructed with materials that, at a minimum, meet the criteria contained in the School Bus Seat Upholstery Fire Resistant Test.
9. A driver storage pouch shall be provided on the front of the barrier behind driver's seat. This pouch shall be fire resistant and the same color as the bus seats.

Crash barriers shall be placed behind the driver's seat and step well. An aluminized courtesy panel on the right side of the bus shall extend to the floor and to the wall. Stanchions are not acceptable.

Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-age Children in School Buses.

Steering Wheel

See Chassis Standard.

Steps

1. The first step at the service door shall be no less than 10 inches and no more than 14 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step. Ground clearance shall be no less than 10 inches.
 - A. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground measured from the top of the first step.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by the thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.

4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.

Step Treads

1. All steps, excluding the floor line platform area, shall be covered with a 3/16-inch pebble-tread-type, rubber floor covering or other materials equal in wear and abrasion resistance to top grade rubber.
2. The backing of the step tread may be a minimum 24-gauge cold roll steel or polymer and shall be permanently bonded to ribbed rubber; the grooved design shall be such that said grooves run at 90-degree angles to the long dimension of the step treads.
3. A three-sixteenth-inch ribbed step tread shall have a 1 and 1/2 inch white nosing as an integral piece without any joint.
4. The rubber portion of step treads shall have the following characteristics:
 - A. Special compounding for good abrasion resistance and high coefficient of friction.
 - B. Flexibility so that it can be bent around a 1/2 inch mandrel both at 130 degrees Fahrenheit and 20 degrees Fahrenheit without breaking, cracking, or crazing.
 - C. Show a durometer hardness of 85 to 95.

Stirrup Step

There shall be one stirrup step on all Types C, and D buses on each side of the front of the body for use in cleaning the windshield and lamps. There shall be one handle on each side, at least eight inches in length suitably located for the driver to use while cleaning the windshield and lamps. The stirrup steps and the handles shall be of rust-resistant material. Transit buses shall have provisions for cleaning the windshield. Toe eyes in the bumper with a handle(s), above the windshield, are acceptable.

Stop Arm Signal

All stop arm signals shall be of the strobe-type and have high-intensity, retroreflective coating. The stop signal - arm(s) shall comply with the requirements of FMVSS 131.

Stop Arm Signal - Rear (Optional)

A rear stop arm is permissible when used in conjunction with the original stop arm. The rear stop arm location on dual stop arm-equipped buses shall be on the left side of the bus, as close as is practical to the left rear corner of the body. Airlines, if used, must not be readily accessible to students inside or outside of the bus.

Storage Compartment

A lockable, waterproof, exterior storage compartment shall be located on the bus body on the right side of the bus. The minimum size of the storage compartment shall be 12 inches high, 15 inches deep, and 25 inches wide and shall be marked "storage". Alternate storage compartment locations should be specified in local school system bid specifications. For Type A buses unable to meet this requirement, an appropriate waiver must be secured from the Alabama Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section. If the storage compartment location cannot be on the right side, the alternate location must be approved by the school system during the bid process.

All lockable interior storage compartments containing emergency equipment shall be equipped with a warning buzzer installed so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked. All such compartments shall be clearly labeled as to containing emergency equipment.

Sun Shield

Each Type C and D school bus shall have an interior adjustable sun visor with minimum measurements of 6 inches by 30 inches. It shall be installed in a position convenient for use by the driver, anchored on both ends, and shall be tinted transparent plastic or phlex-o-glass. On all Type A buses, the sun shield shall be the manufacturer's standard. An additional sun shield may be added over the left side driver window at option of the local school system.

Tailpipe

See Chassis Standard.

Traction-Assisting Devices

1. Where required or used, sanders shall:
 - A. Be of the hopper cartridge-valve type.
 - B. Have a metal hopper with all interior surfaces treated to prevent condensation of moisture.
 - C. Be of at least 100-pound (grit) capacity.
 - D. Have a cover on the filler opening of the hopper, which screws into place, sealing the unit airtight.
 - E. Have discharge tubes extending to the front of each rear wheel under the fender.
 - F. Have no-clogging discharge tubes with slush-proof, non-freezing rubber nozzles.
 - G. Be operated by an electric switch with a telltale pilot light mounted on the instrument panel.
 - H. Be exclusively driver controlled.
 - I. Have a gauge to indicate the hopper needs refilling when it is down to one quarter full.
2. Automatic traction chains may be installed.

Trash Container and Holding Device

1. Where required or used, the trash container shall:
 - A. Be of fire resistant polyethylene or equivalent material.
 - B. Be no greater than 14-quart capacity.
 - C. Be secured by a holding device that is designed to prevent movement and allow easy removal and replacement.
 - D. Be installed in an accessible location in the driver's compartment, not obstructing passenger use of the service door or access to emergency equipment.

Undercoating

1. The entire underside of the bus body, including floor sections, the cross member and below floor line side panels, shall be coated with rust-proofing the compound for which compound manufacturer has issued notarized certification of compliance to the bus body builder that the compound meets or exceeds all performance and qualitative requirements of paragraph 3.4 of Federal Specification TT-C-250b using modified test procedures for the following requirements*:
 - A. Salt spray resistance-pass modified to 5% salt and 1000 hours.
 - B. Abrasion resistance-pass.
 - C. Fire resistance-pass.

*Test panels are to be prepared in accordance with paragraph 4.6.12 of TT-C-520b with the modified procedure requiring that the test be made on a 48-hour air-cured film at a thickness recommended by the compound manufacturer.

2. The undercoating compound shall be applied with suitable airless or conventional spray equipment to recommend film thickness and shall show no evidence of voids in cured film.

Ventilation

1. Auxiliary fans if installed shall meet the following requirements:
 - A. Fans for left and right sides shall be placed in a location where they can be adjusted for maximum effectiveness and do not obstruct vision to any mirror. **NOTE:** All Type A buses may be equipped with one fan.
 - B. Fans shall be a nominal 6" diameter.
 - C. Fan blades shall be covered with a protective cage. Each fan shall be controlled by a separate switch.
2. The body shall be equipped with a suitably controlled ventilating system of sufficient capacity to maintain the proper quantity of air under operating conditions, without having to open windows except in extremely warm weather.

3. A static-type, non-closeable exhaust ventilator shall be installed in the roof.

Video Surveillance Equipment

1. Video equipment may be installed at the discretion of the local school system. If installed, video equipment shall be digital with a minimum of two camera positions. One camera position must show driver compartment.
2. While video equipment does not have to be flush mounted, positioning of video surveillance equipment shall not interfere with the safe operation of the bus or student safety. It is recommended that the SDE be contacted prior to the installation of new video equipment.

Wheel Housing

1. The wheel-housing opening shall allow for easy tire removal and service.
2. The wheel housing shall be attached to the floor sheets in such a manner as to prevent any dust, water or fumes from entering the body. The wheel housing shall be constructed of at least 16-gauge steel or other material of equal tensile strength.
3. The inside height of the wheel housing above the floor line shall not exceed 12 inches.
4. The wheel housing shall provide clearance for installation and use of tire chains on single and dual (if so equipped) power-driving wheels.
5. No part of a raised wheel housing shall extend into the emergency door opening.

Windshield and Windows

1. All glass in the windshield, the windows, and doors shall be of approved safety glass so mounted that a permanent mark is visible and of sufficient quality as to prevent distortion of view in any direction.
2. Glass in the windshield shall be heat absorbent, laminated plate. The windshield shall be large enough to permit the driver to see the roadway clearly, shall be slanted to reduce glare, and shall be installed between the front corner posts that are so designed and placed as to afford minimum obstruction to the driver's view of the roadway.
3. All full side windows shall open vertically so as to provide an unobstructed opening of not less than 9 inches high and 22 inches wide, obtained by lowering the window. Windows shall be a split-sash type and so installed as to provide an emergency exit. There shall be no horizontal, transit or activity-style windows in the student compartment.
4. All exposed edges of glass shall meet FMVSS requirements.
5. A tinted and shaded windshield with 73% light transmitted and a six-inch shaded band across the top shall be installed at the factory. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturers one-piece windshield may be equipped with an O.E.M. shade band windshield with a band of approximately 4 inches in height.

6. All windows in the passenger compartment shall be tinted with 28% light transmitted. The driver's compartment side window and entrance door windows shall be tinted with 70- 75% light transmitted.

Windshield Washers

A windshield washer system shall be provided that will service the entire wiped surface area.

Windshield Wipers

1. A windshield wiping system, two speed or variable speed, with an intermittent feature shall be provided. The wipers shall meet the requirements of FMVSS 104.
2. The wipers shall be operated by one or more air or electric motors of sufficient power to operate the wipers. Type A-I and A-II buses utilizing the chassis manufacturer's one-piece windshield may be equipped with two wipers driven by either one or two electric motors.

Wiring

1. All wiring shall conform to current standards of the Society of Automotive Engineers.
2. Circuits
 - A. Wiring shall be arranged in circuits as required with each circuit protected by a circuit breaker or electronic protection device. A system of color and number coding shall be used and an appropriate identifying diagram shall be provided to the end user along with the wiring diagram provided by the chassis manufacturer. **A system of color and number coding shall be used on buses. The following body interconnecting circuits shall be color-coded as noted:**

<u>Function</u>	<u>Color</u>
Left Rear Directional Light	Yellow
Right Rear Directional Light	Dark Green
Stoplights	Red
Back-up Lights	Blue
Taillights	Brown
Ground	White
Ignition Feed, Primary Feed	Black

The color of cables shall correspond to SAE J1128.

- B. Wiring shall be arranged in at least six regular circuits as follows:
 - (1) Head, tail, stop (brake) and instrument panel lamps.
 - (2) Clearance and step well lamps. The step well lamp shall be actuated when the service door is opened.

- (3) Dome lamp.
 - (4) Ignition and emergency exits signal.
 - (5) Turn signal lamps.
 - (6) Alternately flashing signal lamps.
- C. Any of the above combination circuits may be subdivided into additional independent circuits.
 - D. Each heater and defroster shall have its own circuit breakers or other equivalent technology.
 - E. Whenever possible, all other electrical functions (such as sanders and electric-type windshield wipers) shall be provided with independent and properly protected circuits.
 - F. Each body circuit shall be coded by number or letter on a diagram of circuits and shall be attached to the body in readily accessible location.
 - G. There shall be a manual noise suppression switch installed in the control panel. The switch shall be labeled and alternately colored. This switch shall be an on/off-type that deactivates all body equipment that produces noise including at least the am/fm radio, heaters, air conditioners, fans and defrosters. This switch shall not deactivate safety systems such as windshield wipers, lighting or warning systems. Noise suppression switch on Type AI buses shall be limited to bus body accessories.
- 3. The entire electrical system of the body shall be designed for the same voltage as the chassis on which the body is mounted.
 - 4. All wiring shall have an amperage capacity equal to or exceeding the designed load. All wiring splices are to be done at an accessible location and noted as splices on the wiring diagram.
 - 5. A body-wiring diagram of easily readable size shall be furnished with each bus body or affixed in an area convenient to the electrical accessory control panel.
 - 6. The body power wire shall be attached to a special terminal on the chassis.
 - 7. All wires passing through metal openings shall be protected by a grommet.
 - 8. Wires and tubing shall be enclosed within body panels.

SECTION IV – (SPECIAL NEEDS) SCHOOL BUS STANDARDS

Introduction

Equipping buses to accommodate students with special needs is discretionary depending upon the needs of the passengers. While one bus may be fitted with a lift, another may have seat belts installed to secure child seats. Buses so equipped are not to be considered a separate class of school bus, but simply a regular school bus, which is equipped for special accommodations.

The specifications in this section are intended to be supplementary to specifications in the chassis and body sections. In general, specially equipped buses shall meet all the requirements of the preceding sections plus those listed in this section. It is recognized by the entire industry that the field of special transportation is characterized by varied needs for individual cases and by a rapidly emerging technology for meeting those needs. A flexible, “common sense”, approach to the adoption and enforcement of specifications for these vehicle, therefore, is prudent.

By federal regulation, buses, including school buses, are defined as vehicles designed to carry eleven or more (passengers including the driver). Vehicles designed with 10 or fewer passenger positions (including the driver) cannot be certified as buses. For this reason, the federal vehicle classification Multipurpose Passenger Vehicle, or MPV, must be used by manufacturers for these vehicles in lieu of the School Bus. In determining passenger capacity, wheelchair positions are counted as passenger positions. This classification system, while requiring compliance with a less stringent set of Federal Standards for MPV’s does not preclude state or local agencies or these specifications from requiring compliance of school bus-type MPV’s with the more stringent Federal Standards for school buses.

The following standards address modifications as they pertain to school buses that, with a standard seating arrangement prior to modification, would accommodate more than 10 persons. If by addition of a power lift, mobile seating device positions or other modifications, the capacity is reduced such that vehicles become MPV’s, the intent of these standards is to have these vehicles be required to meet the same standards they would have had to meet prior to such modifications, and such MPV’s are included in all references to school buses and requirements for school buses which follow:

Definition – Specially Equipped School Bus

A specially equipped school bus is any school bus that is primarily designed, equipped, or modified to accommodate students with special needs.

General Requirements

1. School buses designed for transporting students with special transportation needs shall comply with these specifications and with FMVSS applicable to their GVWR category.
2. Any school bus to be used for the transportation of children who are confined to a wheelchair or other mobile positioning device, or who require life support equipment which prohibits use of the regular service entrance, shall be equipped with a power lift, unless a ramp is needed for unusual circumstances related to passenger needs.

Air Conditioning

Special needs buses shall be equipped with air conditioning. **Refer to page 14, School Bus Body Standards, for minimum air conditioning standards.**

Aisles

All school buses equipped with a power lift shall provide a minimum 30-inch aisle from any wheelchair position to front entrance and rear emergency exit door.

Communication System

Each special needs bus shall be equipped with a two-way, voice communication system capable of providing communication with the operational base. Where technologically feasible, the communication system shall also communicate with 911 operators. CB radio systems will not meet this requirement. **It is the responsibility of the local school system to comply with this specification.**

Crash Barriers

1. Crash barrier shall be placed between the lift and any seat position (bench seat or wheelchair position). Stanchions are not acceptable.
2. There shall be a padded crash barrier approximately 8 inches in front of the forward edge of the seat cushion of all passenger seats that do not have another seat approximately 27 inches in front of them. There shall be a padded crash barrier or seat in front of any wheelchair position unless it is contiguous with and behind another wheelchair position. The forward-most barrier on both sides of the bus shall have a full-width, aluminized courtesy panel extending to the floor.

Evacuation Blanket

A minimum of two fire-retardant, evacuation blankets, Tie Tech *Evacuation Transporter Part # 1013*, or prior approved equal, and storage pouch shall be provided. **The location to secure the evacuation blanket shall be easily accessible and determined by the purchaser at the time of the bid.**

Glazing

Tinted glazing may be installed in all doors, windows and windshield consistent with federal, state, and local regulations.

Identification

Buses with power lifts used for transporting physically handicapped students shall display three universal handicapped symbols located below the windowpane. Such emblems shall be white on blue background, shall not exceed 12 inches in size, and shall be of a high-intensity retroreflectorized material meeting U. S. Department of Transportation FHWA FP-85 Standards. Symbols shall be located on the lift door, the rear of the bus, and the front left side of the bus.

Passenger Capacity Rating

In determining the passenger capacity of a school bus for purposes other than actual passenger load (i.e., vehicle classification, or various billing/reimbursement models), any location in a school bus intended for securing an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid during vehicle operations may be regarded as four designated seating positions. Similarly, each lift area may be regarded as four designated seating positions.

Power Lift

1. The option shall be provided to the local purchaser to have the lift located either in front of or behind the rear wheels, on the right side of the bus, but confined within the bus body when not extended.
2. All lifts shall be fully automatic with sufficient clearances to permit a wheelchair or other mobility user to reach a securement location.
3. The design load of the lift shall be at least 600 pounds. Working parts, such as cables, pulleys, and shafts, which can be expected to wear, and upon which the lift depends for support of the load, shall have a safety factor of at least 6 (six), based on the ultimate strength of the material. Non-working parts, such as the platform, frame, and attachment hardware, which would not be expected to wear, shall have a safety factor of at least 3 (three), based on the ultimate strength of the material.
4. The lifting mechanism and platform shall be able to lift a minimum of 800 pounds.
5. Controls shall be provided that enable the operator to activate the lift mechanism from either inside or outside the bus. The controls shall be interlocked with the vehicle brakes, transmission, or door, as required by FMVSS 403 and 404. The lift shall deploy to all levels (i.e., ground, curb, and intermediate positions) normally encountered in the operating environment. Where provided, each control for deploying, lowering, raising, and stowing the lift and lowering the roll-off barrier shall be of a momentary contact type requiring continuous manual pressure by the operator and shall not allow improper lift sequencing when the lift platform is occupied. The controls shall allow reversal of the lift operation sequence, such as raising or lowering a platform that is part way down, without allowing an occupied platform to fold or retract into the stowed position.
6. The lift shall incorporate an emergency method of deploying, lowering to ground level with a lift occupant, and raising and stowing the empty lift if the power to the lift fails. No emergency method, manual or otherwise, shall be capable of being operated in a manner that could be hazardous to the lift occupant or to the operator when operated according to manufacturer's instructions and shall not permit the platform to be stowed or folded when occupied. No manual emergency operation shall require more than 2 (two) minutes to lower an occupied wheelchair to ground level.
7. Platforms stowed in a vertical position, and deployed platforms when occupied, shall have provisions to prevent their deploying, falling, or folding any faster than 12 inches per second or their dropping of an occupant in the event of a single failure of any load carrying component.

8. The lift platform shall be equipped with barriers to prevent any of the wheels of a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the platform during its operation. A movable barrier or inherent design feature shall prevent a wheelchair or mobility aid from rolling off the edge closest to the vehicle until the platform is in its fully raised position. Each side of the lift platform, which extends beyond the vehicle in its raised position, shall have a barrier a minimum 1 and 1/2 inches high. Such barriers shall not interfere with maneuvering into or out of the aisle. The loading-edge barrier (outer barrier), which functions as a loading ramp when the lift is at ground level, shall be sufficient when raised or closed, or a supplementary system shall be provided, to prevent a power wheelchair or mobility aid from riding over or defeating it. The outer barrier of the lift shall automatically raise or close, or a supplementary system shall automatically engage, and remain raised, closed, or engaged at all times that the platform is more than 3 inches above the roadway or sidewalk and the platform is occupied. Alternatively, a barrier or system may be raised, lowered, opened, closed, engaged, or disengaged by the lift operator, provided an interlock or inherent design feature prevents the lift from rising unless the barrier is raised or closed or the supplementary system is engaged.
9. The platform surface shall be free of any protrusions over 1/4 inch high and shall be slip resistant. The platform shall have a minimum clear width of 28 and 1/2 inches at the platform, a minimum clear width of 30 inches measured from 2 inches above the platform surface to 30 inches above the surface of the platform, and a minimum clear length of 48 inches measured from 2 inches above the surface of the platform to 30 inches above the surface of the platform.
10. Any openings between the platform surface and the raised barriers shall not exceed 5/8 inches in width. When the platform is at vehicle floor height with the inner barrier (if applicable) down or retracted, gaps between the forward lift platform edge and the vehicle floor shall not exceed 1/2 inches horizontally and 5/8 inches vertically.
11. The outboard entrance ramp or loading-edge barrier used as a ramp and the transition plate from the inboard edge of the platform to the vehicle floor shall not exceed a slope of 1:8, measured on level ground, for a maximum rise of three inches, and the transition from roadway or sidewalk to ramp may be vertical without edge treatment up to 1/4 inches.

Thresholds between 1/4 inch and 1/2 inch high shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1:2.
12. The lift platform (not including the entrance ramp) shall not deflect more than three degrees (exclusive of vehicle roll or pitch) in any direction between its unloaded position and its position when loaded with 60 pounds applied through a 26" by 26" test pallet at the centroid of the platform.

13. No part of the platform shall move at a rate exceeding 6 inches per second during lowering and lifting an occupant, and shall not exceed 12 inches per second during deploying or stowing. This requirement does not apply to the deployment or stowage cycles of lifts that are manually deployed or stowed. The maximum platform horizontal and vertical acceleration when occupied shall be 0.3 g.
14. The lift shall permit both inboard and outboard facing of wheelchair and mobility aid users.
15. Lifts shall accommodate persons using walkers, crutches, canes or braces, or who otherwise have difficulty using steps. The platform may be marked to indicate a preferred standing position.
16. Platforms on lifts shall be equipped with handrails on two sides, which move in tandem with the lift, and which shall be graspable and provide support to standees throughout the entire lift operation. Handrails shall have a usable component at least 8 inches long with the lowest portion a minimum 30 inches above the platform and the highest portion a maximum 38 inches above the platform. The handrails shall be capable of withstanding a force of 100 pounds concentrated at any point on the handrail without permanent deformation of the rail or its supporting structure. The handrails shall have a cross-sectional diameter between 1 and 1/4 inches and 1 and 1/2 inches or shall provide an equivalent grasping surface, and have eased edges with corner radii of not less than 1/8 inch. Handrails shall be placed to provide a minimum 1 and 1/2" knuckle clearance from the nearest adjacent surface. Handrails shall not interfere with wheelchair or mobility aid maneuverability when entering or leaving the vehicle. Any wheelchair frame utilizing a horizontal overhead support shall have padding at least 1" in thickness extending the full width of support.
17. A re-settable circuit breakers or other equivalent technology shall be installed between the power source and the lift motor if electrical power is used. It shall be located as close to the power source as possible, but not within the passenger/driver compartment.
18. Lift design shall prevent excessive pressure that could damage the lift system when the platform is fully lowered or raised, or that could jack the vehicle.
19. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a lift:
 - A. A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - B. Detailed instructions regarding use of the lift and readily visible when the lift door is open, including a diagram showing the proper placement and positioning of wheelchair/mobility aids on lift.

20. The lift manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the lift. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.
21. Each lift shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses. In addition, the lift manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request of the original titled purchaser, shall provide a Notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the lift system meets all the applicable requirements of the current National Standards for School Buses.

Ramp

Emergency ramps may be used with prior approval from the SDE.

Regular Service Entrance

1. Steps
 - A. The first step at the service door shall be not less than 10 inches and not more than 14 inches from the ground when measured from the top of the step based on standard chassis specifications.
 - B. Type D vehicles shall have the first step at the service door 12 to 16 inches from the ground.
2. The service door entrance shall use a three-step step well. Risers shall be of equal height and depth. When a plywood floor is used on steel, the differential may be increased by thickness of plywood.
3. Steps shall be enclosed to prevent accumulation of ice and snow.
4. Steps shall not protrude beyond the side bodyline.
5. *At least one handrail shall be installed. The handrail(s) shall assist passengers during entry or exit, and shall be designed to prevent entanglement as evidenced by the passage of the NHTSA string and nut test.*
7. *An assist rail shall be provided on the right-hand side.*

Restraining Devices

1. On power-lift equipped vehicles, seat frames may be equipped with attachments or devices to which belts, restraining harnesses or other devices may be attached. Attachment framework or anchorage devices, if installed, shall conform to FMVSS 210.

2. *Seat belt assemblies are optional.* Seat belt assemblies *may be* installed on special needs buses. If seat belt assemblies are installed on special needs buses, they shall be of the lap/shoulder belt configuration. Seat belt assemblies shall be installed by the manufacturer, and must conform to FMVSS 209.
3. Child restraint systems, which are used to facilitate the transportation of children who in other modes of transportation would be required to use a child, infant, or booster seat, shall conform to FMVSS 213 and 222.
4. Passenger seats designed to accommodate a child or infant carrier seat shall comply with FMVSS 225. These seats shall be in compliance with NHTSA's "**Guidelines for the Safe Transportation of Pre-School-Age Children in School Buses.**"

Seating Arrangements

Flexibility in seat spacing to accommodate special circumstances shall be permitted to meet passenger requirements. All seating shall be forward facing. **Floor plans for special needs buses shall be designed with emphasis on placing wheelchair positions forward of the rear axle.**

Securement and Restraint System for Wheelchair/Mobility Aid and Occupant

For purposes of better understanding the various aspects and components of this section, the term securement or phrase securement system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s), which secure the wheelchair/mobility aid. The term restraint or phrase restraint system is used exclusively in reference to the device(s) used to restrain the occupant of the wheelchair/mobility aid. The phrase securement and restraint system is used to refer to the total system, which secures and restrains both the wheelchair/mobility aid and the occupant.

1. Securement and restraint system--general
 - A. The Wheelchair/Mobility Aid Securement and Occupant Restraint System shall be designed, installed, and operated to accommodate passengers in a forward-facing orientation within the bus and shall comply with all applicable requirements of FMVSS 222. Gurney-type devices shall be secured parallel to the side of each bus.
 - B. The securement and restraint system, including the system track, floor plates, pockets, or other anchorages shall be provided by the same manufacturer, or be certified to be compatible by manufacturers of all equipment/systems used.
 - C. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device and an occupant restraint share a common anchorage, including occupant restraint designs that attach the occupant restraint to the securement device or the wheelchair/mobility aid, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the loads of both the securement device and occupant restraint applied simultaneously, in accordance with FMVSS 222 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).

- D. When a wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) is shared with an occupant restraint, the wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a force twice the amount as specified in Section 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209 (see Sections 2 and 3 of this section).
- E. The bus body floor and sidewall structures where the securement and restraint system anchorages are attached shall have equal or greater strength than the load requirements of the system(s) being installed.
- F. The occupant restraint system shall be designed to be attached to the bus body either directly or in combination with the wheelchair/mobility aid securement system, by a method, which prohibits the transfer of weight or force from the wheelchair/mobility aid to the occupant in the event of an impact.
- G. When an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the securement and restraint system shall limit the movement of the occupied wheelchair/mobility aid to no more than 2 inches in any direction under normal driving conditions.
- H. The securement and restraint system shall incorporate an identification scheme, which will allow for the easy identification of the various components and their functions. It shall consist of one of the following, or combination thereof:
 - (1) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement (webbing or strap assemblies) and the occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be of contrasting color or color shade.
 - (2) The wheelchair/mobility aid securement device (webbing or strap assemblies) and occupant restraint belt assemblies shall be clearly marked to indicate the proper wheelchair orientation in the vehicle, and the name and location for each device or belt assembly; i.e., front, rear, lap belt, shoulder belt.
- I. All attachment or coupling devices designed to be connected or disconnected frequently shall be accessible and operable without the use of tools or other mechanical assistance.
- J. The securement and restraint system hardware and components shall be free of sharp or jagged areas and shall be of a non-corrosive material or treated to resist corrosion in accordance with Section 4.3(a) of FMVSS 209.
- K. The securement and restraint system shall be located and installed such that when an occupied wheelchair/mobility aid is secured, it does not block access to the lift door or emergency door.

- L. A device for storage of the securement and restraint system may be provided. When the system is not in use, the storage device shall allow for clean storage of the system, shall keep the system securely contained within the passenger compartment, shall provide reasonable protection from vandalism, and shall enable the system to be readily accessed for use.
- M. The entire securement and restraint system, including the storage device, shall meet the flammability standards established in FMVSS 302.
- N. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) and restraint belt assembly shall be permanently and legibly marked or incorporate a non-removable label or tag which states that it conforms to all applicable FMVSS requirements. In addition, the system manufacturer, or an authorized representative, upon request by the original titled purchaser, shall provide a notarized Certificate of Conformance, either original or photocopied, which states that the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system meets all of the requirements as specified in FMVSS 222.
- O. The following information shall be provided with each vehicle equipped with a securement and restraint system:
 - (1) A phone number where information can be obtained about installation, repair, and parts. (Detailed written instructions and a parts list shall be available upon request.)
 - (2) Detailed instructions regarding use, including a diagram showing the proper placement of the wheelchair/mobility aids and positioning of securement devices and occupant restraints, including correct belt angles.
- P. The system manufacturer shall make available training materials to ensure the proper use and maintenance of the wheelchair/mobility aid securement and occupant restraint system. These may include instructional videos, classroom curriculum, system test results, or other related materials.

2. Wheelchair/mobility aid securement system

- A. Each securement system location shall consist of a minimum of four anchorage points. A minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in front of the wheelchair/mobility aid and a minimum of two anchorage points shall be located in the rear. The securement anchorages shall be attached to the floor of the vehicle and shall not interfere with passenger movement or present any hazardous condition.
- B. Each securement system location shall have a minimum clear floor area of 30" x 48". Additional floor area may be required for some applications. Consultation between the user and the manufacturer is recommended to ensure adequate area is provided.

- C. The securement system shall secure common wheelchair/mobility aids and shall be able to be attached easily by a person having average dexterity and who is familiar with the system and wheelchair/mobility aid.
 - D. As installed, each securement anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222. When more than one securement device share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding the force indicated above, multiplied by the number of securement devices sharing that anchorage.
 - E. Each securement device, if incorporating webbing or a strap assembly, shall comply with the requirements for Type 1 safety belt systems, in accordance with Sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4(a) of FMVSS 209.
 - F. The securement system shall secure the wheelchair/mobility aid in such a manner that the attachments or coupling hardware will not become detached when any wheelchair/mobility aid component deforms, when one or more tires deflate, and without intentional operation of a release mechanism (e.g., a spring clip on a securement hook).
 - G. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 2,500 pounds when tested in accordance with FMVSS 209.
 - H. Each securement device (webbing or strap assembly) shall provide a means of adjustment of manufacturer's design, to remove slack from the device or assembly.
 - I. Each securement device, webbing, or strap assembly shall be of the automatic, retractable type.
3. Occupant restraint system
- A. A Type II-A occupant restraint system, which meets all applicable requirements of FMVSS 209 and 210, shall provide for restraint of the occupant.
 - B. The occupant restraint system shall be made of materials, which do not stain, soil, or tear an occupant's clothing, and which are resistant to water damage and fraying.
 - C. Each restraint system location shall have not less than one anchorage, of manufacturer's design, for the upper end of the upper torso restraint.
 - (1) The anchorage for each occupant's upper torso restraint shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 1,500 pounds (6,672 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.

- D. Each wheelchair/mobility aid location shall have not less than two floor anchorages for the occupant pelvic and the connected upper torso restraint.
- (1) Each floor anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) when applied as specified in FMVSS 222.
 - (2) When more than one occupant restraint share a common anchorage, the anchorage shall be capable of withstanding a minimum force of 3,000 pounds (13,344 Newtons) multiplied by the number of occupant restraints sharing the common anchorage in accordance with FMVSS 222.
- E. Each floor and wall anchorage which secures the occupant restraint to the vehicle and which is not permanently attached, shall be of a “positive latch” design, and shall not allow for any accidental disconnection.

Special Light

Doorways, in which lifts are installed, shall have, lighting as required by FMVSS 403 and 404.

Special Service Entrance

1. Power lift equipped bodies shall have a special service entrance to accommodate the power lift. Door materials, panels and structural strength shall be equivalent to the conventional service and emergency doors. Color, rub rail extensions, lettering and other exterior features shall match adjacent sections of the body.
2. The special service entrance and door shall be located on the right side of the bus and shall be designed so as not to obstruct the regular service entrance. All doors shall have positive fastening devices to hold doors in the open position.
3. Each door shall have windows, set in a waterproof manner, which are visually similar in size and location to adjacent non-door windows. Glazing shall be of same type and tinting (if applicable) as standard fixed glass in other body location.
4. A drip molding shall be installed above the opening to effectively divert water from entrance.
5. Door posts and headers from entrance shall be reinforced sufficiently to provide support and strength equivalent to the areas of the side of the bus not used for special service entrance.
6. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with a device that will actuate a visible signal located in the driver’s compartment when the door is open and ignition is in “on” position.
7. A switch shall be installed so that the lifting mechanism will not operate when the lift platform door is closed.

8. Special service entrance door shall be equipped with padding at the top edge of the door opening. Pad shall be at least three inches wide and one inch thick and extend the full width of the door opening.

Support Equipment and Accessories

1. Each bus shall contain at least two belt cutters properly secured in a location within reach of the driver while belted into his/her driver's seat. The belt cutter shall be durable, designed to eliminate the possibility of the operator or others being cut during use, and must have a full handgrip.
2. Special equipment or supplies which are used on the bus for mobility assistance, health support, or safety purposes shall meet any local, federal, or engineering standards which may apply, including proper identification.

Equipment which may be used for these purposes includes, but is not limited to:

- A. Wheelchairs and other mobile seating devices (see section on Securement System for Mobile Seating Devices/Occupant).
 - B. Crutches, walkers, canes, and other ambulating devices.
 - C. Medical support equipment. This may include respiratory devices such as oxygen bottles (which should be no larger than 22 cubic feet for liquid oxygen and 38 cubic feet for compressed gas), or ventilators. Tanks and valves should be located and positioned to protect them from direct sunlight, bus heater vents, or other heat sources. Other equipment may include intravenous, and fluid drainage apparatus. Appropriate medical placarding, if needed, shall be added by the LEA.
3. All portable equipment and special accessory items, including the equipment listed above, shall be secured at the mounting location to withstand a pulling force of five times the weight of the item, or shall be retained in an enclosed, latched compartment. The compartment shall be capable of withstanding forces applied to its interior equal to five times the weight of its contents without failure to the box's integrity and securement to the bus. Exception: If these standards provide specific requirements for securement of a particular type of equipment, the specific standard shall prevail (i.e., wheelchairs).

Technology and Equipment, New

It is the intent of these specifications to accommodate new technologies and equipment that will better facilitate the transportation of students with special needs. When a new technology, piece of equipment or component is desired to be applied to the school bus it must meet the following criteria:

- A. The technology, equipment, or component shall not compromise the effectiveness or integrity of any major safety system. (Examples of safety systems include, but are not limited to, compartmentalization, the eight-lamp warning system, emergency exits and the approved color scheme.

- B. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not diminish the safety of the interior of the bus.
- C. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not create additional risk to students who are boarding or exiting the bus or are in or near the school bus loading zone.
- D. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall not require undue additional activity and/or responsibility for the driver.
- E. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall generally increase efficiency and/or safety of the bus, generally provide for a safer or more pleasant experience for the occupants and pedestrians in the vicinity of the bus or shall generally assist the driver and make his/her many tasks easier to perform.
- F. The technology, piece of equipment or component shall have prior written approval from the SDE School Bus Specifications Committee.

SECTION V – *ALTERNATIVE FUEL STANDARDS*

1. School systems considering the use of bio-diesel fuels *or other alternative fuels such as liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), compressed natural gas (CNG), electric, or hybrid electric* shall secure written approval from the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130 *prior to the buses being bid. Written requests must, at a minimum, provide the SDE with detailed specifications including the specific design, performance criteria, fuel designation (B-5 or B-20) and safety specifications regarding the alternative fuel.*

Fuel blends containing used cooking oil will not be allowed.

2. *The guidelines contained herein shall pertain to school buses approved by the Alabama State Department of Education to operate on alternative-fuel sources.*
 - A. *Any company or individual providing alternative-fuel school buses to school systems shall provide appropriate certifications as well as, maintenance, repair and troubleshooting information and safety training for each system. All maintenance on alternative-fuel buses shall performed by personnel who are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency for the alternative fuel.*
 - B. These companies or individuals shall submit to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama, 36130, documentation certifying that the requirements of 1-A have been met.

SECTION VI - OPTIONS

School systems should contact the their state school bus inspector or the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section prior to the purchase and/or installation of any optional or after-market equipment. This is to ensure that the equipment and/or its installation is in compliance with the current Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses.

Locking Fuel Compartment Door

Provide at the option of the purchaser a lock and key to secure the fuel compartment door.

Storage Compartment for Required Emergency Equipment

Provide at the option of the purchaser a storage compartment located in the driver's compartment to house the emergency equipment. It shall be a locked compartment with a warning buzzer attached so as to activate when the ignition switch is on and the compartment is locked.

SECTION VII - MULTIFUNCTIONAL SCHOOL ACTIVITY BUS (MFSAB)

DEFINITION:

A Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB) is a school bus constructed to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS) and Alabama Minimum School Bus Specifications. It must be purchased or leased as a new bus and may only be used for extracurricular activities. **These buses may not be used to transport students to and from schools or between schools for the purpose of attendance.**

The following exceptions to the Alabama Minimum Specifications for School Buses for regular route buses shall be allowed for these vehicles.

Identification:

1. The bus body shall bear the words “**ACTIVITY BUS**” in a contrasting color at least 8 inches high in the area where “school bus” is normally positioned. Lettering and numbering shall conform to FMVSS and Alabama Minimum Specifications and shall meet reflectivity standards. Bus numbering on this bus may be of a contrasting color.
2. The name of the school system shall be displayed in at least five-inch letters on both sides of the bus in the beltline area. **NO SIGNS OR LOGOS** shall be applied to any area of the bus including the bumpers. The name of the school may be displayed in the beltline area. No signs, logos, or other items shall be displayed on the windows of the bus.

Color:

The local school with school system approval may determine the color of the activity bus. The color scheme may utilize any combination of up to **THREE** colors. This combination may be in addition to an optional white roof. The color National School Bus Yellow (SBMTC-008 Publication) shall not be used as a part of the color scheme.

School systems and/or vendors shall submit preliminary color schemes to the Alabama Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section for approval **prior to the purchase or manufacture** of a Multifunctional School Activity Bus (MFSAB).

Seating:

Transit style seats, which meet all aspects of FMVSS 222 and 302, may be used in lieu of regular school bus seats.

Lighting and Warning Devices:

All activity buses shall meet state and federal standards for normal school bus lighting and warning device requirements with the following exceptions:

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with alternately flashing amber or red signal lamps used for loading and unloading students.

Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) may not be equipped with stop arm signals or crossing control arms.

INSPECTIONS:

Annual inspection by Alabama Department of Education (SDE) state school bus inspectors and monthly inspections by local school bus inspectors shall be performed on all Multifunctional School Activity Buses (MFSAB) as required by Alabama law and the Rules of the Alabama State Board of Education.

REGULATIONS:

These buses shall be owned by the local school system or leased from private school bus transportation contractors. All Alabama laws, Rules of the State Board of Education, and other applicable regulations pertaining to the operation of school buses and certification of school bus drivers shall apply to Multifunctional School Activity Buses.



Disposal of Used School Buses



The procedures outlined in this document should be used in order to assure the proper disposal of school buses that are sold or otherwise removed from your school system's school bus fleet.

Alabama law requires that school buses be equipped with signal lamps and other visual signals and markings that clearly identify the vehicle as a school bus. School buses are also equipped with specialized equipment in order to help protect students, school bus drivers, and motorists. These visual markings, signals, and other specialized equipment, which include amber and red flashing lights, stop signs, warning signs on the rear of the bus, school bus lettering, and crossing control arms, are peculiar to school buses and may not be used on other vehicles, except as provided under Alabama law. Accordingly, the disposal of school buses requires measures above and beyond those necessary for the disposal of other school system vehicles.

To avoid possible liability, improve security, and also ensure compliance with the law, the following procedures should be followed when disposing of buses **that will no longer be used as school buses**:

1. Disable the overhead amber and red flashing lamps and stop arm used when loading and unloading students.
2. Disable the crossing control arm.
3. Paint out all references to the entire name of the system on the sides of the bus, not just the name of the county or city.
4. Paint out the words "SCHOOL BUS" on the **front and rear** of the bus.
5. Remove the Alabama State Inspection Sticker from the windshield.
6. Remove the county or municipal tag from the vehicle before the sale.

If the bus is sold to another school system, private school, or other agency that will continue to use the vehicle as a school bus, only the name of your system, the state inspection sticker, and the tag should be removed. *If the bus is sold or traded to a dealer only state inspection sticker and the tag should be removed. The school bus dealer will remove the name of the school system.*

Questions regarding the proper disposal of used school buses should be addressed to the Alabama State Department of Education, Pupil Transportation Section, Montgomery, Alabama at 334-242-9730.

ALABAMA MINIMUM SPECIFICATIONS
QUICK REFERENCE CHART

****TYPE A-I SCHOOL BUS****

Type A-I and A-II buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall be built to manufacturer's specifications.
All type A buses under 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have four-wheel disc brakes.

****TYPE A-II SCHOOL BUS****
(Over 14,500 pounds)

CAPACITY	BRAKE LINING SIZE	GAWR FRONT	GAWR REAR	GVWR TOTAL	TIRE SIZE
10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply

Type A-II school buses exceeding 14,500 pounds GVWR shall have air brakes.

****TYPE C SCHOOL BUS****

10-47	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	14,200	23,200	10R x 22.5 10 ply
48-54	4" Front 6" Rear	9,000	16,000	25,000	10R x 22.5 10 ply
55-72	4" Front 7" Rear	9,000	17,500	26,500	10R x 22.5 12 ply

Type C school buses exceeding 72 capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.

****TYPE C-1 SCHOOL BUS****

10-36	Four-wheel disc	6,000	13,500	19,000 maximum	225 x 70R 19.5 - 12 Ply
-------	-----------------	-------	--------	----------------	-------------------------

****TYPE D FRONT ENGINE****

10-53	4" Front 6" Rear	10,800	17,000	27,800	10R x 22.5 10 ply
54-66	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	17,000	28,000	10R x 22.5 10 ply
68-78	5" Front 7" Rear	11,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 14 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	13,000	20,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

****TYPE D REAR ENGINE****

42-66	5" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply
68-78	6" Front 7" Rear	12,000	19,000	30,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply
79-84	6" Front 8" Rear	12,000	21,000	33,000	11R x 22.5 16 ply

Type D school buses exceeding 84-capacity shall have prior, written SDE approval.